

**CATALOGUE OF EDGED ARMS AND ARMOUR
IN THE
SALARJUNG MUSEUM, HYDERABAD**

Dedicated to

BERND AUGUSTIN

*Hamburg, West Germany
who served as the motive force
behind this catalogue*

**CATALOGUE OF EDGED ARMS AND ARMOUR
IN THE
SALARJUNG MUSEUM, HYDERABAD**

AUTHOR
DR. G.N. PANT

INTRODUCTION
DR. M.L. NIGAM

SALARJUNG MUSEUM, HYDERABAD

© Salarjung Museum, Hyderabad

Dr. Gayatri Nath Pant (b. 1940)
First Published, 1989

Published by Salarjung Museum, Hyderabad and photocomposed by Navchetan Photoset (Pvt.) Ltd.
1E/2, Jhandewalan Extension, New Delhi and printed by Navjeevan Printers
1E/2, Jhandewalan Extension, New Delhi.

CONTENTS

	Dedication	
	List of Plates	
	Introduction	1
1.	Bows, Arrows & Quivers	13
2.	Sword	26
3.	Dagger	98
4.	Maces, Battle-axes and Spears	165
5.	Other Weapons	182
6.	Shields	195
7.	Armour	205
	Glossary	217

LIST OF PLATES

S.No. of the Catalogue	Museum No.	Description
1	137/LIV	Cross Bow
3	284/LIV	Steel Bow
117	228/LIV-A	<i>Talwâr</i>
157	92/LIV-A	<i>Sosun-pullâ</i>
169	157/LIV	<i>Firangî</i>
182	176/LVI	<i>Pattâ</i>
185	241/LIV-A	<i>Pattâ</i>
194	313/LIV-A	Fencing Sword
220	369/LIV	<i>Pulovar</i>
223	59/LIII	<i>Khândâ</i>
234	68/LIII	<i>Zulfîqâr</i>
237	276/LIV-A	<i>Yâtâghan</i>
238	288/LIV-A	<i>Yâtâghun</i>
239	318/LIV-A	<i>Saif</i>
243	367/LIV	<i>Nâgan</i>
301	171/LIV	<i>Kard</i>
316	187/LIV	<i>Kard</i>
332	230/LIV	<i>Kard</i>
340	110/LIV-A	<i>Jambiâ</i>
342	112/LIV-A	<i>Jambiâ</i>
373	168/LIV-A	<i>Jambiâ</i>
379	180-LIV-A	<i>Jambiâ</i>
398	8/LV	<i>Jamadhur</i>
419	60/LV	<i>Jamadhur</i>
421	135/LIV-A	<i>Jamadhur</i>
464	97/LIV	<i>Kindjal</i>
467	377/LIV	<i>Kindjal</i>
473	130/LIV-A	<i>Peshqabz</i>
481	222/LIV	<i>Peshqabz</i>
500	10/LIII	<i>Khanjarali</i>
512	20/LIII	<i>Chilânum</i>
513	21/LIII	<i>Badâ Jamadâdû</i>
519	55/LIII	<i>Bhuj</i>
520	22/LVI	<i>Mace</i>

526	82/LIII	<i>Gurz</i>
530	215/LIV-A	<i>Gurz</i>
534	24/LVI	<i>Tabar</i>
542	172/LVI	<i>Tabar</i>
544	215/LIV	<i>Tabar</i>
562	53/LIII	<i>Sāng</i>
567	107/LVI	Elephant-goad
568	301/LIV-A	<i>Zafar Takiyū</i>
571	306/LIV-A	<i>Zafar Takiyū</i>
577	298/LIV-A	<i>Pushtakhār</i>
581	263/LIV-A	<i>Mārū</i>
594	71/LV	<i>Khukarī</i>
598	316/LIV-A	Rod
599	361/LIV-A	Lock (Scorpion-shaped)
601	70.21	<i>Panjā</i>
603	25/LVI	Shield
607	125/LVI	Shield
614	217/LVI	Shield
619	173/LIV-A	Helmet
622	94/LVI	Arm Guard
623	115/LVI	Arm Guard
629	203/LIV-A	<i>Chār-āinā</i>
630	140/LIV	<i>Chār-āinā</i>
631	343/LIV-A	<i>Chār-āinā</i>
644	340/LIV	<i>Chār-āinā</i>
648	245/LVI	Coat of Mail

INTRODUCTION

The story of the development of metallic arms and armour in India forms an interesting study. The prehistoric man in India produced hand-axes, choppers and arrow-heads, made of stone, to protect himself from the external dangers. The stone was gradually replaced by metals owing to their durability and malleable quality. The excavations at Harappā and Mohen-jo-dāro have shown that the "arms and utensils of stone continued to be used side by side with those of copper or bronze"¹. The metallic blades of swords and daggers excavated from the Indus Valley sites are datable to the 3rd millennium B.C.

A number of copper celts, harpoons, hooked spear-heads, antennae swords and daggers found in hoards have been reported from Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Madhya Pradesh, West Bengal, Orissa and Andhra Pradesh. Heine-Geldern, dating these weapons from approximately 1200 to 1000 B.C., attributes them to the Aryans and other associated tribes who invaded India². B.B.Lal has, however, attributed the authorship of these 'copper hoards' to the ancestors of aboriginal proto-Australoids of India³. The Aryans, apart from their knowledge of copper, were also acquainted with iron before they entered India and there seems to be no reason why they should not have selected iron instead of pure copper to manufacture their weapons and tools⁴. It is, therefore, more plausible to agree with Lal that the aforesaid copper hoards belonged to the aboriginal proto-Australoids of India, represented today by the Muñdas and Santhāl tribes.

There exists some similarity amongst the 'antennae' swords found in certain parts of Iran and India. As Banerjee puts it, "Antennae swords of a comparable shape have been found in the Koban region of Upper Iran with a difference in that the hilt and handle are separate pieces that have been joined subsequently, beside being of plain cross-section as compared to the ridged one of the Indian specimens and having a hole in addition. These are made of bronze within India but outside the Ganga plain some have appeared also at Kallur in Andhra Pradesh"⁵.

The three 'antennae' swords, found from Kallur, are now exhibited in the State Museum, Hyderabad⁶. The largest of the three swords (measuring: hilt 9.5 cm, blade length 85.0 cm, blade width 6.5 cm) has an antennae hilt and a leaf-shaped blade tapering to the point. The blade is straight and double-edged with a mid-rib. The hilt and blade are made of one single piece. Another sword (measuring: hilt 8.0 cm, blade length 65.5 cm and blade width 5.5 cm) bears almost a similar description. But the third and the smallest one (measuring: hilt 8.0 cm, blade length 57.0 cm, and blade width 4.5 cm) differs from the above two specimens. The blade, although double-edged, is spoon-shaped resembling a modern *khāndā*. Immediately below the hilt is a small hole which might have been used to insert a thread to hang it with the waist. It has a mid-rib. These swords have been dated back to the Chalcolithic Age.

The classification of copper hoards in the Indian sub-continent shows that the 'antennae' swords and daggers have been recovered from Fatehgarh and Bithur in Uttar Pradesh, Kalur in Deccan and Mehsana in Gujarat. A dagger with antennae hilt was found from Chandoli in Maharashtra. The blades of the above swords are straight and leaf-shaped with hilts emerging out in "T" shape. It is somewhat surprising to note that the implements of 'copper hoard' did not influence the later iron tools and weapons of the Aryans. The occurrence of iron with the Painted Grey Ware has been noticed from the sites like Hastināpura, Ālmgīrpur, Kauśāmbī and Ujjain in North India. There the objects made of iron are mainly the spear-heads, arrow-heads and knives, etc. However, the swords and daggers do not commonly figure amongst the so far recovered iron objects of the early Iron Age in India.

It will be interesting to examine the early Vedic literature to know about the Aryan stock of arms and armour. There are numerous references in the *Rigveda* to *asi* which was a powerful weapon for sacrificing the bulls into bits⁷. It must have therefore been a ritualistic sword to be used in animal sacrifice. Similarly, the term *svadhiti* denotes to be an iron axe used for the clearance of forests⁸. Thus the *svadhiti* must have been a very strong sword or axe to produce hard strokes in cutting the trees and animals. The blades of these swords were made of iron. Another weapon, *pavi* was hard like the *vajra* and sharp like *kṣhura* (razor)⁹. It was the favourite weapon of Indra and also of the gods Maruts. There are references in the *Rigveda* to *parashu* (battle-axe), *bāna* (arrow), *dhanuṣa* (bow), and *khadga* (straight sword), etc. The literary data thus indicates that the Aryans had a fairly advanced knowledge of metallurgy.

Although the excavations of the early Aryan sites have yielded only a few specimens of swords and daggers yet there are a good number of iron weapons which have come out of the Megalithic sites of South India. The arrow-heads, adages, spears, choppers, daggers and swords have been unearthed from Brahmagiri, Māskī, Pochampad, Nāgārjunakondā, Yelleswaram and Paddabankur, etc. The three very interesting swords were excavated from the megalithic site of Ādichanallur in Tamilnadu. All the three swords have long, straight, spoon-shaped blades which can be considered as prototypes of the Indian *khāndā*. The ordinary hilts of the three swords exhibit the earliest form of pommel and quillons which had yet to be developed. Some of the early Nair Temple swords seem to have been developed out of these original prototypes.

In the Iron Age, copper lost much of its significance. However, the sparing use of copper lingered on for some time, probably to economise iron which was still a newly discovered and rare commodity. This point has adequately been made clear by the discovery of 'Pochampad Daggers' where the copper and iron are used side by side¹⁰. The iron swords from Ādichanallur are of different pattern; here the tang of the blade was inserted into the handle which was a separate piece of wood. The swords, daggers, knives, lances, battle-axes, javelins, spear-heads and axes were manufactured in whole of South India. The most striking improvement till then was an improvised handle or hilt. The battle-axes, axes and adzes were provided with cross-straps to hold the handle firmly. The spear-heads and arrow-heads are invariably found with sockets to fit into a handle. The noteworthy change in the technique of manufacture of these arms presents a clear-cut departure from the earlier tradition where antennae hilt, formed an inseparable part of the blade.

Kauṭilya in his *Arthasāstra* describes the three main varieties of swords, namely *nistrimśa*, *mandalāgra* and *asiyaṣṭī*. The *nistrimśa*, which denoted the standard length of 30 inches, does not seem to be represented at Amarāvati whereas *mandalāgra*, a sword with round tipped blade, and *asiyaṣṭī*, having a straight tipped blade, are found there. The blades of the swords depicted at Amarāvati exhibit a good variety. The blades with rounded tips look like that of a *khāndā*. The leaf-shaped tapering blades at Amarāvati may be taken to be *paṭṭās*. The sheaths with fastening straps and covering the blades are hanging at the left side of warriors. The hilts of swords have either a circular or square pommel. But the shields represented at Amarāvati are in no way circular. They are either star-shaped or oblong.

Thus the plastic art of early historic period of India would suggest that the *khāndā* and *paṭṭā* are indigenous types of Indian swords. The straight, leaf-shaped blade of Indian *paṭṭā* was subsequently modified into a spoon-shaped blade during the latter half of 1st millennium B.C. The blades, either with forward or backward curves representing modern *talwār*, had not yet come into vogue.

The sculptural depiction of arms and armour in early Buddhist art at Bharhut, Bodhgayā and Sānchī invariably exhibit short swords with straight and rounded tip blades. However, the first clear-cut departure from the earlier form of Indian sword is found in the stone carving of Ajantā and Ellorā caves which exhibit a flowing forward curve of the blade. According to Rawson, these miniature swords, carved in the rock-cut caves of Ajantā and Ellorā, can be taken to be the precursors of Rājput *sosunpaṭṭā*¹¹. Similarly, the forward curve in the middle of the blades of some of the swords depicted at Ellorā can be considered to be prototypes of South Indian flamboyant sword. The swords and daggers of the subsequent periods, such as *adya kattī* sword of Tamilnadu, *sailābā* of Hyderabad, *hukarī*, *korā* and *dāo* of north-eastern regions might also fall under this very category¹².

A detailed description of indigenous arms and armour of early medieval era of North Indian history can be had from the literary treatise *Prithvīrāja Rāsō* which throws adequate light on the cultural ethos of Rājput period. The names of Indian weapons mentioned in the aforesaid treatise seem to be of Indian origin as many of them cease to occur in the subsequent works of Islamic period of Indian history.

It is interesting to note that the names of weapons, as mentioned in the *Prithvīrāja Rāsō*, are different from those given in the *Āin-i-Akbarī* which was composed by Abul Fazl during the reign of Mughal emperor Akbar. The arms and armour mentioned in the *Prithvīrāja Rāsō* are more Sanskritised to suggest their indigenous origin. It is commonly known that the armies of early Islamic rulers, including the Mughals, initially carried Turkish, Central Asian and Persian types of arms and armour. The blades of early Islamic swords and daggers are long and curved whereas the Hindu swords initially did not carry curved blades. A study of arms and armour mentioned in the *Prithvīrāja Rāsō* would provide the names of traditional weapons used in India prior to the spread of Islam.

No doubt, some of the terms like *silah*, *silahdāru* and *zirah-bakhtar* (armour), etc., which are of Persian origin, also occur side by side in the text, which may be accounted for an alien influence that had infiltrated into Indian vocabulary by the time the *Prithvīrāja Rāsō* was composed¹³. At the same time the *Āyudha Shālā* mentioned in the *Prithvīrāja Rāsō* should be taken as indigenous term for Indian arsenal. Apart from the variety of swords

described in the *Prithavīrāja Rāsō*, the other weapons such as the *sāng*, (long iron lance), *gurz* (club), *jamadhara* (a type of dagger), *nézā* (spear), *aṅkusha* (goad), *parashu* (battle-axe), *kaṭār* (dagger), *kunta* (spear), *hari-hatha* (*bagha-nakha* of the subsequent period), *chhuri* (knife), *guṭṭī* (sword-stick) and *dhal* (shield), etc., are also mentioned which were commonly used in the Rajput army. The officer-in-charge of cavalry is called as *sāhani*. The variety of swords mentioned therein are the *khudga*, *tēghā*, *lohāṭṭī*, *vaddhalī* (sharp-edged sword), *dodhāra* (double-edged sword), *nirāasi* (sword with watered blade), *aṇiyāri* (dented sword), *paṭṭā* and the South Indian *kaṭṭī*.

It is worth noting here that the famous Persian sword *shamshīr* with a long, backward-curved blade, which was commonly used in all Islamic countries, is not mentioned in the *Prithavīrāja Rāsō*. Further, the names of the swords such as the *khudga*, *tēghā*, *vaddhalī*, *nirāasi* (watered sword), *aṇiyāri* (dented sword), *paṭṭā*, *kaṭṭī* and the daggers like *jamadhara* (*yamadhara*), *hari-hathā*, meaning thereby the lion's-paw (*bughanakha* of the subsequent period) and the *guṭṭī* (sword-stick with a concealed blade) are indigenous names referring thereby to the traditional arms of India.

It is beyond our scope to discuss the date of the *Prithavīrāja Rāsō*. Some scholars like Mahmood Shirani do not consider it to be the contemporaneous of Prithavīrāja, the Rājput ruler of the Chauhān dynasty, for the simple reason that the aforesaid work also mentions fire-arms. These scholars still believe that the fire-arms in India were first introduced by Bābur, the founder of the Mughal dynasty in India. This theory is not tenable today in view of the positive evidences brought out by a number of new discoveries. For example, the well known Persian manuscript *Futuh-us-Salātān*, which was written during Bahamanī period in the Deccan provides ample evidence for the use of fire-arms in Deccan, during the rule of Bahamanī dynasty. Further, the *Devasānō Pādō Kalpasūtra*, a manuscript datable to late 15th century A.D. and now preserved in the Devasānō Pādō Bhandār, shows muskets in one of its illustrations¹⁴. The presence of muskets (hand-guns) in one of the paintings of the aforesaid treatise leaves no room for doubt that the fire-arms were known to India in the 15th century A.D., if not earlier.

The text of the *Prithavīrāja Rāsō* does contain some technical terms which are of Persian and Arabic origin but that should not pose much difficulty in accepting its historicity. In fact, the Muslim scholars like Al-Beruni had already come to India which had resulted in great interaction between the Hindu and Islamic cultures. The author of the *Prithavīrāja Rāsō* himself admits it. It is, therefore, natural to find some Persian and Arabic impact on the language used in this treatise. Whatever might be the case, one thing is certain that the *Prithavīrāja Rāsō* can not be ascribed to the Mughal period and the arms and armour mentioned therein speak of the traditional Indian weapons which were in use with the Rājput armies right from the early historic period.

With the advent of Islamic rule in India, the arms and armour underwent a significant change. The innovative zeal of the Islamic rulers, easy availability of the best quality of steel, the artistic excellence of the native craftsmen and the lavish use of gold, the precious and semi-precious stones for ornamentation opened a new era in the development of Indian arms and armour. Besides, the various Islamic forces, coming from the north-westerly countries *viz.*, Arabia, Persia, Turkey and Central Asia, had brought their own weapons

which were ultimately adopted in India. The fusion of the divergent cultures produced a brilliant synthesis in the manufacture of Indian arms and armour wherein new Islamic weapons were, for the first time, introduced on Indian soil and the traditional Hindu arms were also adapted and beautified to suit new requirements. The Persian sword *shamshīr*, Arabian dagger *jambiā* and the hunting knife *qumā*, etc., are mentioned in the early Islamic chronicles of the pre-Mughal era. The Muslim forces, which depended mainly on the extensive use of cavalry in the battle-field, found the Hindu *khāndā*, *paṭṭā*, *śosun-paṭṭā* swords fitting to their needs and the same were adopted with certain modifications.

The Mughal emperors, however, attracted the best artisans from Persia, Central Asia and Turkey who designed the most effective and beautiful arms with utmost perfection. The great Mughal emperor, Akbar, made further innovations and improvements in his arsenals by introducing fresh mechanism and devices to equip himself with the latest and more effective arms. Whereas he relied more on the effectiveness of the Persian sword, *shamshīr*, he laid equal emphasis on the use of Indian *khāndā*. No doubt, the Persian *shamshīr* is mentioned on the top of the list of arms in the *Āin-i-Akbarī* showing its popularity with the Muslim nobility, the next item in the list is Hindu *khāndā*, the traditional double-edged sword of India. The *Āin-i-Akbarī* describes *khāsa* and *kotal* swords which were regularly kept in the harem for the use of the Emperor. The *khāsa* and *kotal*, however, do not appear to be the names of swords, they represent their quality, meaning thereby the specially manufactured swords for the use of the Emperor. The other indigenous weapons which find place in the *Āin-i-Akbarī*, and so also in the *Prithvīrāj Rāsō*, an earlier treatise, are the *guptī*, *śanang*, *jamadhara*, *baghanakha* (*hari-hatha*), *gurz* and *chhurī* (knife), etc. It would further suggest the continuity of some of the early Hindu arms in the Mughal army.

The well known manufacturing centres of arms and armour in India during the Mughal period were Lahore, Gujarat, Patiala in Punjab; Kotah and Bundi in Rajasthan; Gwalior in Central India and Aurangabad in the Deccan. Of course, certain regions had developed their own novelties. For example, the *khāndā* made in Orissa was very popular. *Paṭṭā*, with a highly polished rapier blade and a gauntlet hilt, was in extensive use with the Marāṭhā cavalry. The broad and curved sword, *lēghā*, was favoured equally by the Rājput, Muslim and Marāṭhā soldiers.

In South India too, new changes seem to have occurred in the pattern and designs of arms during the Vijayanagar period. They can be seen in numerous sculptural and pictorial representations. Several new varieties of swords, such as the one with parallel-edge and deeply double-curved blade which terminates in a divided fishtail tip and the other which is straight for two-third of its length and then curved in a sickle-like section with fishtail tip, are often met in the sculptural art of the Virāgal figures in whole of South India. The hilts of the Deccanī arms of earlier period were beaten out of wrought iron.

Besides these new forms, improvement in earlier weapons was also attempted to. For example, the hilt of Indian sword was provided with a knuckle-guard in order to protect the warrior's hand as well as to strengthen the grip. Thus the so called "Hindu basket hilt" with inner padding, which later on became the favourite hilt of the Marāṭhā swords, was a legacy of the Vijayanagar period. The other notable achievement of this period was to provide a pair of seatings which run down the face of the blade to which it is riveted. Thirdly, the

pommel of hilt was surmounted by a long forward-curved spike which was intended for grasping with the left hand and making a two-handed blow. The swords with the aforesaid characteristics can be seen in a painted *Rāmāyaṇa*, now preserved in the State Museum, Hyderabad and which can be dated to the Vijayanagar period.

With the Sultāns of the Deccan too the sword in its multiple forms remained a favourite weapon for the army. Every soldier was expected to attain mastery in the use of sword in battlefield and for that purpose a regular training was deemed necessary right from the childhood. Ferishta, who wrote his chronicles in the Deccan, speaks eloquently of the training in sword-fencing which was known as *yekung*. This art was initially practiced with the help of sticks and later with the sword itself. As Ferishta says, "the practice of *yekung* (single stick) was introduced in the reign of Ahmed Nizām Shāh. In *yekung-bāzī* the sword or stick alone is used. In *doung-bāzī* a shield and a sword or two swords are wielded, one in each hand. The Marāṭhā excelled in this exercise. The Mahomodans of the Deccan were very experts in the use of sword, and particularly in single combat (*yekung*). They generally practise on foot and do not use lance from the horseback hence they are inferior cavalry and their skill is of no avail when acting in masses as infantry, though in private quarrels, and street contentions, they fight like lions."¹⁵

The most celebrated sword of the Deccan was *asil*. As the very name suggests, the sword was made of pure steel and hence it was very flexible and reliable. Jahāngīr in his Memoirs, the *Tuzuk-i-Jahāngīrī*, speaks very high of the South Indian sword *asil* which could be bent and straightened again. Jahāngīr has rated the malleable quality of *asil* with the best swords of Yaman. The *asil* sword, according to Egerton, is a slightly curved sword of watered steel with two grooves. The Mārāṭhā soldiers always carried a pair of swords; one of them hard tempered, consequently brittle and very sharp, called *Sirohi*, the other more tough and less sharp, named *asil*.¹⁶

There were several important centres in whole of the Deccan which manufactured variety of arms and armour to meet the needs of the regular and irregular troops of the native princes. Besides, arms were imported from Persia and other European markets also. Viziānagaram was an important centre which lay under the sway of the Marāṭhās. During the eighteenth century, the smiths of Viziānagaram produced a large number of typical south-easterly weapons which are available in different museums of the world. The two main types of the Marāṭhā weapons i.e., heavy *téghā* with a broad blade and the Indo-Muslim type of hilt and the *paṭṭā*, with long cut and thrust blade mounted with the gauntlet hilt, were manufactured mainly at Viziānagaram. Another form of sword, *kirach*, where the blade is slightly curved forward towards the tip and mounted with the Hindu basket hilt was also manufactured at Viziānagaram¹⁷.

Hyder Ali and Tippoo established factories at Serirangapatanam, Mysore, where iron was smelted for the manufacture of swords and fire weapons. However, unrestricted import of the foreign arms from Persia and other European countries continued. A great emphasis was laid on the ornamentation of arms by the skilled craftsmen of Serirangapatanam. Tippoo, however, attached more importance to fire-arms, some of which were produced in his own capital. He named his factories the *Tara Mandal* which were set at four places viz., Serirangapatanam, Mysore, Chital Durg and Hyder Nagar¹⁸. Buchanan, while passing

through Mysore, noticed five forges near Serirangapatanam where steel was prepared, principally for export. It was used for the manufacture of stone cutters, sword-blades and strings of musical instruments¹⁹. Thus, Serirangapatanam was the famous centre for the large production of fire-arms as well as the swords. The place was equally famous for the ornamentation of sword hilts and gun barrels.

The Āsaf jāhī rulers of Hyderabad, who rose into a formidable force during the 18th century in the Deccan, were equally alive to the pressing needs of their troops. The French traveller, Tavernier, who passed through Hyderabad during the middle of the seventeenth century, writes, "the soldiers do not wear *hangers* or *scimitars* like the Persians but broad swords like the *switzers*, as well for a thrust, as a blow, which they hang in a girdle. The barrels of their muskets are stronger than ours, and much neater, for their iron is better, and not so subject to break. Their cavalry carry bows and arrows, a buckler, and a battle-axe, a head-piece and a jacket of mail that hangs down from the head-piece over the shoulder."²⁰

The hard temper and brittleness of Indian blades, which were made of *faulad*, also necessitated the import of European sword blades. Besides, the Indian blades with a deep backward curve and outer edge were suitable only for cutting but not thrusting. The European blades which were straight and double-edged could be used for both. De Thevenot has described the Indian sword in the following manner, "Their swords are four fingers broad, very thick, and by consequence heavy; they are crooked a little, and cut only on the convex side..... The swords made by the Indians are very brittle; but the English furnish them with good ones brought from England,".

Abdul Aziz has quoted a number of letters, including that of Muqarrab Khān who was the Governor of Cambay, which were placed with East India Company for the supply of *Alemānī* swords. Thus the European blades were in great demand at the beginning of 17th century A.D. The two British firms, *viz.*, 'Roe' and the 'John Company Traders' supplied good blades to the native princes²¹. Egerton has described *Alemānī* sword, 'shaped like the old German Hussar Sabro' thereby meaning the old German sword²².

In the beginning of the nineteenth century, there existed a good deal of variety of patterns of arms in the Sillādārī Regiments of the Hyderabad State as every Barghīr or trooper was asked to provide his own sword. In order to remove this anomaly, a city workshop *Madrasā-i-Sanāe* was established in Hyderabad to supply uniform swords and daggers for the four cavalry regiments of the regular troops of Nizām²³. The other notable arm producing centres in the Nizām's dominions were Gudwal, Wanaparti, Kolapur, Nirmal, Lingampalli, Yelgandel, Warangal, Umirchinta and Aurangabad²⁴. Jagdeopur in the Khammam District was, however, more famous for its highly finished blades. The Konasamudram steel, which was used in the manufacture of such blades, was much prized.

Sword, being the main fighting weapon, was produced in almost all the above centres. Their values varied from five or six rupees to five thousand rupees for each sword, depending upon the quality, history and tradition of the blade²⁵. The two main types of swords *viz.*, *Sirohī* and *asil* were manufactured at Jagdeopur. Apart from the above mentioned local manufacturing centres, the fine variety of blades of swords *i.e.*, Persian, Magribī or Taledo and the Alemān or German were regularly imported from abroad.

Besides swords, a good variety of other arms were also manufactured in Hyderabad State. For instance, the *sailāp*, *jambiā*, *kaṣār*, *peṣhkaḥja*, *bānk*, spear and *mārū* were made at Hyderabad, Gudwal, Warangal, Wanaparti and other places. The best lance-heads, spear-heads and hunting knives were produced by famous Bodh Raj of Aurangabad. There are numerous such specimens bearing the seal of Bodh Raj of Aurangabad in all important arm collections of the Deccan.

The collection of arms and armour in the Salar Jung Museum, Hyderabad, is probably the largest and unique in the country on account of its rare quality and universal character. The collection had acquired international fame even during 19th century A.D. Mrs. Burton, who visited Hyderabad during the last quarter of 19th century, speaks eloquently of the armoury of Sir Salar Jung I. The collection today comprises 1,236 arms datable from 14th to 19th centuries A.D. It is not confined to India alone but it includes arms from countries like England, Germany, Spain, Italy, Turkey, Persia, China and Japan as well.

The collection of Indian arms and armour in this Museum, comprising specimens from the northern and southern regions of the country, has a number of inscribed and historic arms belonging to the rulers especially of the Mughal and the Qutb Shāhī dynasties. The Indian rulers whose names are inscribed on the swords and daggers are the Mughal emperors, Humāyūn (8/LVI-A *teghā*); Jahāngīr (seal of Nūrūddīn 305/LVI); Shāh Jahān (*tabar* LIV/172); Aurangzēb (*zafar takiā* Ḥālmgīr Pādhsāh Gāzī, 304/XLIX, *khāndā*; 241/LIV-A 1111 H. and a jade handled dagger, *paṭṭa*); Bahādur Shāh sword (306/XLIV), Muhammad Shāh Pādshāh Gāzī (291/LIV-A) and the Qutb Shāhī rulers, Abdullāh Qutb Shāh along with his monogram (303/XLIX) and Sultān Abul Hasan Tānā Shāh. Besides the swords of Mīr Ḥālm (55/LIV-A *shamshīr* 1200 A.H.); Mukhtār-ul-Mulk (280/LIV-A, 273/LIV), Rājā Rāo Rambā Bahādur (*āftābgīrī* 1256 A.H. 369/LIV), who were the nobles of the Ḥāsf Jāhī court of the erstwhile Hyderabad State, are also included in the collection.

A good number of arms belonging to the European countries are in the collection. The blades of the Indian swords were meant mainly for hatching and cutting. In view of the hard temper and brittleness, Indian blades were found inferior to the European sword-blades which were more flexible and could also be used for thrusting. Thus the European blades, particularly the German blades, were in great demand in India at least from 1600 A.D. onwards. The two British firms, viz., 'Roe' and the 'John Company Traders' supplied good European blades to the native princes²⁶.

Abdul Aziz has quoted a letter of Muqarrab Khān, the Governor of Cambay, to the East India Company, ordering for the supply of *alemānī* blades or "crooked falchions with thick backs and such as will not stand bent"²⁷. It is thus evident that the Indian rulers were quite eager to purchase European blades which were better suited for the use of cavalry.

Egerton in his *Catalogue of Indian Arms and Armour* has described one *alemānī* sword 'shaped like the old German Hussar Sabre' used probably by Hyder's German cavalry. Hawkins, an emissary of the East India Company, in the court of Jahāngīr, also mentions, "Swords of Alemānī blades with the hilts and scabbards set with diverse sorts of rich stones, of the richest sort"²⁸. It would, thus appear that the native princes imported foreign sword-blades from distant countries in a large quantity. There exist a good number of European swords and sword-blades mounted with Indian hilts in the collection of the Salar Jung

Museum. A sword with fine European blade, Solingen (57/LIV), is presently housed in the collection. Another sword-blade (383/LIV), inscribed with the name of 'Badham Pile and Co. Limited, Rampard Row, Bombay', is also available here.

The Persian swords and daggers in this collection are inscribed with the names of a number of noted Persian swordsmiths. There are very few museums and private collections in the world which have such a wide range of arms made by well known swordsmiths. Among such masters Asad Allāh Isfahānī, the most prominent swordsmith of Persia, the contemporary of Shāh Abbās I, is represented in almost all the major arms collection of the world. The Salar Jung Museum possesses about a dozen swords inscribed with the name of Asad Allāh (149/LIV, 234/LIV, 274/LIV, 277/LIV, 289/LIV, 279/LIV, 123/LIV, 222/LIV, 226/LIV, 275/LIV, 224/LIV). There is, however, no similarity in the forms of swords and even the writings on the blades, attributing them to be the handiwork of Asad Allāh and dedicating them to the monarchs of the Safavid dynasty of Persia *viz.*, Shāh Ismāil, Shāh Abbās, Shāh Sāfi and Shāh Tahmāsp, etc. The dates given in the inscriptions also vary. It appears that the name of the master swordsmith Asad Allāh was used by the subsequent Persian cutlers even after his death to glorify their products²⁹.

Abdullāh Husainī, another Persian swordsmith, is also represented in the Salar Jung Museum (282/LIV). The name of Alī Akbar is inscribed on the Turkish blade of a sword *sailābā* (81/LIV). He appears to be the contemporary of the Turkish ruler, Nāsiruddīn Qajar. The date mentioned on the blade is 1290 H.

The name Muhammad Al-Misrī, probably Egyptian by origin, is also inscribed on one of the swords in the Museum (40/LIV). Besides, the name of Muhammad Hasan is also found on the sword No. 286/LIV. The date mentioned therein is 1102 H. (equivalent to 1691 A.D. wrongly deciphered by Mayor as 1274 H.) He seems to have worked for the Persian monarch, Shāh Abbās.

A very beautiful old *shamshīr* is inscribed with the name of Hājji Sunghur (288/LIV). He seems to have worked during the last quarter of the 16th century. His swords are found in many museums of the world. A sword (232/LIV) is inscribed with the name of Muhammad Muqīm Isfahānī who was the son of Sādiq Isfahānī, who worked during Shāh Ismāil's reign. The date mentioned therein is 1083 H. (equivalent to 1672 A.D.) A sword signed under his name is also found in the Mahārājā collection, of Jaipur. Another sword, signed by Ājam Oghlū (26/LIV), in the collection, has a parallel in the Benaki Museum, Athens.

There are two swords in the collection inscribed with the name of the famous Persian swordsmith, Kalb Alī Isfahānī (235/LIV and 237/LIV). He seems to have worked for the Persian rulers, Shāh Abbās and Shāh Sāfi. A sword (287/LIV) inscribed with the name of Kalb Alī is dedicated to Shāh Sāfi. Another sword in the Salar Jung Museum (No. 255/LIV) is inscribed with the name of Kalb Alī Khurāsānī and the date mentioned is probably 1165 H. (?) His swords are found in various museums and collections of the world, such as the Victoria and Albert Museum, London, the Royal Armory, Stockholm, the Tower of London, London, the Prince of Wales Museum, Bombay, the Benaki Museum, Athens and the Historisches Museum, Bern.

The two inscribed swords made by Kalb Alī and presently housed in the Tsarkoye Selo Museum and the Wallace Collection, London, describe Kalb Alī Isfahānī, as the son of Asad

Allāh Isfahānī. Allāh Isfahānī is said to have worked for Shāh Abbās of Persia. However, in one of the swords, preserved in the Salar Jung Museum, Hyderabad (255/LIV), Kalb Alī is mentioned as Khurāsānī and not Isfahānī which would probably mean that the family, after the death of Asad Allāh, had moved to Khurāsān. Gulām Isfahānī is also represented in the collection by a sword (No. 71/LIV). A Sword (233/LIV) is inscribed with the name of Muhammad Hasan. The name of (Ra) Jab Tusī, said to have worked for Shāh Vilāyat Hussain (Sāfi), is also found on one of the swords (231/LIV).

There is *qumā* made by Muhammad Hādī. A *jambiā* made by Hādī (151/LIV-A) is also housed in the Salar Jung Museum. Another *qumā* is inscribed with the name of Alī Akbar who is mentioned as *qamtarin* meaning humble. Another inscription attributes a dagger, *jambiā* (112/LIV-A) to Alī Akbar; the humble one.

Bāqir seems to have made a *qumā*, presently housed in the Salar Jung Museum. Another *qumā* was made by Abdullāh who is stated to be the son of Amar Hājī. It is dated 1290 A.H. A *yātāghan* inlaid with gold was made by Abdullāh in 1225 A.H. (1810 A.D.) which is now in the collection of the Museum of Islamic Art, Cairo. Another *qumā*, inscribed with the name of Muhammad, is also housed in the Salar Jung Museum. The two daggers (11/LIV and 88/LIV), dated 1003 A.H. are also preserved in the Salar Jung Museum. The names of Osmān Hussain and Bāqir are inscribed on some of the daggers housed in this Museum.

A Turkish sword (31/LIII) records the name of the workshop, *Kārkhānā-i-Sharfī Khān Walī, Daghīstān* where it was manufactured in 1112 A.H.

The enormous variety and collection of arms and armour in the Salar Jung Museum demands an explanation as how and from where Salar Jung III could procure these masterpieces. It may be recalled that the armies of the Mughals always carried their arms and armour during their conquests of Deccan. In fact the first Āsaf Jāh Nizām Mulk was a general of the Mughals and when he took over the *Subédārī* of Deccan he brought a large army to Hyderabad which had earlier served under the Mughals. The soldires of this army had their own arms and armour and they continued to use the same even after they had settled in Deccan. This is how the Mughal and the Rājput arms were introduced in the Deccan on a permanent basis. Besides the army of the last Nizām, Osmān Alī Khān, included contingents from distant parts of the country such as the Rājput regiment, Sikh regiment, Gurkhā regiment, etc., which carried arms and armour of their respective regions. The Nizām's army also included the Siddīs and other foreign troops which brought their own arms and armour.

There are also a very large number of arms and armour belonging to Hyder Alī and Tipoo Sultān in the collection which were brought to Hyderabad as a part of loot by Mir Ālam who had commanded the army of the Nizām in the battle of Serirangapatam. Mir Ālam did not have a son and his property was inherited by an ancestor of Mir Yousuf Alī Khān, Salar Jung III, who married two daughters of Mir Ālam. This is how we find such an amazing variety of South Indian arms and armour in the collection of the Salar Jung Museum.

In the present day world of nuclear arms and computerised missiles the arms and armour forming part of museum collections have no relevance as tools of destruction or as equipment of armies. Yet these visual clues add a new dimension and meaning to history.

They recreate the ethos of the bygone days. Besides, quite a few of them can be treated as excellent works of art.

Dr. G.N.Pant, the author of this catalogue, is a recognised authority on Indian arms and armour having several authentic publications to his credit. He has taken considerable pains in the preparation of this catalogue and I am really thankful to him. I am confident that this catalogue will fulfil a long felt need and provide useful information about the arms and armour in the collection of the Salar Jung Museum.

REFERENCES

1. Mackay, E.J.H., *Further Excavations at Mohen-jo-daro*, vol. I (New Delhi, 1938), p. 467, pl. CXVIII, 9.
2. Heine-Geldern, R., "The Coming of the Aryans and the End of the Harappa Civilization", *Man*, vol. LVI (1956), pp. 136-40.
3. Lal, B.B., "Protohistoric Investigation", *Ancient India*, No. 9, p. 93.
4. Banerjee, N.R., *The Iron Age in India* (New Delhi, 1965), p. 94.
5. *Ibid.*, p. 90.
6. Nigam, M.L., *A Catalogue of Arms and Armour* (Hyderabad, 1975), p. 3, pl. 1.
7. *Rigveda*, X, 79, 6.
8. *Ibid.*, IX, 96, 6.
9. *Ibid.*, I, 166, 10, 174, 4.
10. Nigam, M.L., *op. cit.* (1975), p. 3.
11. Rawson, P.S., *The Indian Sword* (London, 1968).
12. *Ibid.*
13. The author of the *Prithvirāja Rāsō* himself admits that he made use of all the six dialects prevalent in North India at that time and so also the language spoken by the Muslims.
14. Khandalvala Karl J. & Dr. Moti Chandra, *New Documents of Indian Paintings - A Reappraisal*, (Bombay, 1969), p. 30.
15. Ferishta Mahomed Kasim (ed. John Briggs), *History of the Rise of the Mohomedan Power in India* (London, 1829), vol. III, pp. 207-8.
16. Egerton, *Indian and Oriental Armour* (London, 1896), p. 113.
17. Rawson, P.S., *op. cit.* p. 46.
18. *Ibid.*, p. 121.
19. Buchanan, F., *Journey Through Mysore* (London, 1807), vol. II, p. 16.
20. Tavernier, J.B., *Travels in India* (trans. V. Ball), (London, 1889), vol. I, p. 157.
21. Abdul Aziz, *Arms and Jewellery of the Indian Mughals* (Lahore, 1947), pp. 13 to 18.
22. Egerton, *op. cit.* (London, 1896), p. 123.
23. Bilgrami, S.H. & Willmott, C. (compiled), *Historical & Descriptive Sketch of His Highness, The Nizam's Dominions* (Bombay, 1883), vol. I p. 413.
24. *Ibid.*, pp. 404-13.
25. *Ibid.*, p. 405.
26. Abdul Aziz, *op. cit.* (1947), pp. 13-18.
27. *Ibid.*
28. Abdul Aziz, *op. cit.*, p. 525.
29. M.L.Nigam, *Salar Jung Museum Biannual Research Journal* (Hyderabad), vols. VI and VII, pp. 61-65.

CHAPTER I

BOWS, ARROWS AND QUIVERS

ORIGIN

The origin of archery in India can be traced in the small and thin points which have been discovered abundantly during the neolithic¹ period (*circa* 3000 B.C.). These thin, leaf-shaped and triangular points of stone were hafted in bamboo or reed shaft. These arrow-heads of stone were employed in war and chase for a considerable time till they were supplanted by the bronze and copper arrow-heads of the Harappan Culture which flourished between 2350 B.C.—1700 B.C. The Harappan arrow-heads are thin, flat pieces of copper with long narrow barbs and no tang². These were inserted in a split bamboo or wooden shaft. The shafts, overlapping the arrow-head, served as mid-ribs. The average length of the Harappan arrow-head is 1.19 inches, breadth 0.64 inches and thickness 0.07 inches. All these are, more or less, of one type³.

DEVELOPMENT

Of all the weapons mentioned in the Vedic literature⁴, the bow and arrow are the most applauded. The famous battle-hymn of the *Rigvéda* describes the warrior on his chariot⁵ armed with his bow and arrow, and dressed in armour, with a hand-guard called *hastaghna* on the left arm to avoid the friction of the bowstring. No doubt, the Vedic bow was a very simple instrument made of bamboo, cane or wood⁶. It was composed of a stout staff bent into a curved shape and of a bowstring made of strip of cow-hide⁷.

Iron smelting, introduced in India around 1000 B.C., drastically transformed the delicate copper and bronze arrow-heads into hard and sturdy ones, made of iron. The *Rāmāyana* and the *Mahābhārata*, the two epics of the 2nd-1st millennia B.C., teem with references to the bow and arrow. Every knight of note was a distinguished archer, and the best Bowman invariably decided the fate of an armed engagement. Books exclusively devoted to the science of archery, called *Dhanurvéda*,⁸ were composed, training centres (*gurukulas*) were opened, tournaments were organised,⁹ fates of men and nations were decided. Four roles were assigned to archery viz., war, defence, hunting and recreation. This was the age of the elephant archery. On the back of each animal, inside a *howdah* (elephant saddle), sat seven warriors—two were archers, two carried lances, two were swordsmen and one carried the goad.

In 326 B.C. Alexander, the Great, invaded India. The elephants, on which the Indians relied most, were maimed by the arrows, axes and swords of the Greeks and the Indian foot-and-elephant-archers were no match to the horse-archers of Macedonia. Indians were quick to realise the use of horse and thus dawned the era of horse archery. Later, in the 1st century B.C., the stirrups¹⁰ were introduced.

In India, in every war recorded¹¹, either ancient or medieval¹², bows and arrows loom

large. Bow was a weapon *par excellence* and the Bowman constituted an invariable concomitant of the army. When the Muslims invaded India in 711 A.D. they used fire-arrows (*naphthā*) which created havoc. Thereafter there was no looking back and throughout the medieval period the bow was considered a weapon of precision and the effective use of it was a fine art. The twang of the bow in the battle was heard for the last time in 1857 A.D. when many of the Indian archers, though in vain, vehemently opposed the British artillery and fire-arms.

BOW

Bow is the oldest, the most used and most widely distributed of projectile weapons. The earliest Indian bow was a piece of wood tapering on both directions from the middle and having the ends connected by a string shorter than the wood. The shaft of the bow is called 'stave' (*danda*), its outer side is 'back' (*prastha*), and inner side 'belly' (*udara*), the two curved sides are 'limbs', the middle, the 'grip' and the ends the 'tips'. The notches for the strings are called 'nocks'¹³.

SIMPLE BOW

A bow made of a single piece of wood or cane or bamboo is called a 'simple' or 'self bow'. From the earliest time till today such bows have been in use in India. These are very easily available, are easy to make and very often are quite effective. The string in such bows is permanently fixed on the both ends. The stave is saturated with oil and bent to the required shape over fire. The string is then finally fixed. But this practice of keeping the bow permanently strung is very detrimental to the cast of the bow.

HORN BOWS

Every horn bow is a composite bow. In making a bow of horn, whether of a pair of horns or of a single large horn, like that of a buffalo, split up to make the two limbs, the bow when made and unstrung would naturally take the shape of the horns when growing on the animal's head. The only way to get any spring from the bow is to bend it the reverse way of the natural curve¹⁴. A horn bow is made of three substances:

- A. Horn, being a compressible material for the belly.
- B. Wood, as a stiffener, specially for the centre, and for the ears.
- C. Sinews, an elastic stretchable material for the back.

STEEL BOWS

The steel bow was not superior to the composite bow in range and cast still it was a workable weapon and was popular throughout. If properly greased, a steel bow can be preserved for years and when needed put to immediate use. It required no repairs¹⁵. The recoil of metal bow is slow and the drawing of the string of such bow requires more power. Such bows were not suitable for hunting or fishing nor were they found suitable for delicate archery. It was useful for relatively short range use. The steel bow of Mughal Emperor Shah Jahan (1628-1658 A.D.) is displayed in the Dogra Art Gallery, Jammu and that of Bahadur Shah¹⁶, the last ruler of Mughal Dynasty (dethroned 1857 A.D.), is in the Hermitage Museum, Leningrad, U.S.S.R.

MEASUREMENT

Arrian¹⁷ the Greek historian, records that the Indian foot-archers, in the 4th century B.C., carried a 5½ feet long bow. This, the archer rested upon the ground, and pressing against it his left foot, discharged the arrow having drawn the string far backwards. The shaft was three yards long. These long bows were subsequently discarded since they were unwieldy. The medieval bow, as a rule, was four feet long¹⁸. The bamboo and hard wood bows, still used by the aboriginal tribes, are five to six feet long.

GOOD AND BAD BOWS

Features of defective bows have been elucidated. According to the *Dhanurveda*,¹⁹ a defective bow may have an adverse effect, both physically and mentally, and was, therefore, to be avoided. Very old and fragile; pierced, perforated, damaged or repaired; very heavy or very light; burnt or knotted; having poor quality string; and inauspicious bows should never be used. The bows recommended should have proportionately curved limbs; a good grip at the centre; a balanced weight (neither too heavy or too light); some decoration, inscription or ornamentation; a smooth, round and glossy string; an excellent draw weight; the elasticity and auspiciousness.²⁰

CROSS-BOW

Cross-bows called *nālikā* were made of metal. Small arrows ('bolts' or *nāo* or *ardha-nārācha*) were used for this purpose. The total length of these tiny arrows is 6 inches (4½" reed shaft + 1½" head). One cross-bow is displayed in the Alwar Museum, Alwar, Rajasthan and another in the Salar Jung Museum, Hyderabad.

PLETCHERS AND BOWYERS

The fletchers (makers of arrows) and bowyers (makers of bows) were a separate guilds. In the society bow and arrow making, together with the making of other arms and armour, was well established and subjected to state control.²¹

ARROW

PARTS—The main parts of an arrow are (A) point or head (*śraṅga*), (B) shaft (*shatva*), (C) nock (*téjana*), and (D) feathers (*parṇāni*)²². The head (or 'pile') was fastened to the shaft²³ in three ways: (1) by a tang which fitted into the end of the shaft, (2) it was notched at the back and lashed to the shaft, (3) it had a metal socket that fitted over the end of the shaft.

(A) Point

The shape of Indian arrow-head varies almost without limit. Some important types were: broad-headed, circular-headed, crescent-shaped,²⁴ barbed, almond-shaped, trident-shaped, needle-shaped and so on. Each was meant for a specific purpose. For training, practice or for killing birds the headless arrows (*tukkāh*) were employed.

(B) Shaft

The body of the arrow was known as 'stele' or 'shaft'. Most arrows had cylindrical shaft, except when they were made of reed which always had a slight taper. There were

arrows completely of metal and these were called *nārācha*.²⁵

(C) *Nock*

The 'nock' or 'notches' were of two types; the 'plug nock' and the 'splinter nock'. In the plug nock the shaft was cut to the appropriate length and the nock-end of the shaft was tapered internally. The nock was then glued and inserted into the shaft. Then the whole thing was bound fast by sinew. The plug nock was usually of bone, ivory or wood. In the second type two thin slivers or 'splinters' of wood were bound either side of the shaft.²⁶

(D) *Feathers*

The feathers were glued or tied to steady its flight. The feathers of crow, swan, hawk, goose, peacock, etc., have been recommended²⁷. The length of these feathers varied from one to ten inches. In general it was three to five inches. The reed shaft was bifurcated a little and the feathers were inserted into it, then glued and tied²⁸. The number of feathers used was from 1 to 5.

MEASUREMENT

The length of an arrow varied from 16 inches to 9 feet. In general it was half the length of the bow. The average arrows measured 2 feet, 4 inches²⁹. Nine feet long arrows were carried in large arrow bags which were hung from the elephant *howdāhs*. These were shot from long bows. The diameter of shaft ranged between $\frac{1}{2}$ inch to nearly $\frac{1}{2}$ inch. The points were 5 to 6 inches long.

POISONED ARROWS

Arrows smeared with poison had been in use since the earliest days. The poison was called *vajralepa*³⁰ and the technique of applying it was *phala-pāyana*. Such arrow-heads, if touched the body, killed the most formidable enemy. The arrows used by the aboriginal tribes of India today are sometimes poisoned.

INSCRIBED ARROWS

Sometimes the shaft of an arrow bore the name of the archer inscribed upon it³¹. The first shot in the battle was an arrow embossed with the figure of Gaṇeśha on the blade. Many arrows of the 16th-17th centuries preserved in the armoury of Tanjore, Tamilnadu, and those displayed in the Government Museum, Madras, are engraved with the owner's name.

FIRE-ARROWS

Arrows having ignited matter wrapped round their tips have been described in the *Rāmāyana*³². Kauṭilya³³ gives three different recipes for the preparation of fire-arrows. It stresses the use of incendiarism in warfare. In the medieval period the Arab invaders used *naphthā* as inflammable agent on their arrows. These arrows were headed with hollow brass balls perforated with three or four holes which were filled with inflammable composition. Another device was the red-hot arrow-head. It was heated in small charcoal braziers and was quickly shot³⁴.

CRESTING

Arrow cresting was known to the ancient and medieval Indian fletchers. Painted arrows are referred to in the Epics and other texts³⁵. Reed arrows were first lacquered and then painted. Points of the arrows were variously designed and some of them bore the impressions of gods and goddesses. In its lowest form the Indian arrow was colourful and in its highest it was a miniature work of art³⁶.

RANGE

The distance which an arrow with reed shaft could traverse with force and efficacy was about 120 yards. The range of the flight of an iron arrow was about 90 yards.

QUIVER

Quiver is a case in which the arrows are carried. These have been used in all times and by all people who used bows. Many varieties were known³⁷:

(I) *Jaibāh*

It was a flat case, broad at the mouth, one side straight and the other sloping to a point, provided with a strap for carrying over the shoulder. This held the bow as well as the arrows hence the broad shape. One bow and 20 to 30 arrows could be kept in one *jaibāh*.

(II) *Qirbān*

It was exclusively for bows and could carry three to six bows in one case. It did not contain arrows. The bows were carried strung.

(III) *Tarkash*

It carried only arrows. 25 to 50 arrows could be placed in each *tarkash*.

Roe writes that the best gift for and by a Mughal emperor would be an embroidered bow, quiver and arrows³⁸. These quivers were made of goat's skin or other soft skin, often covered with cloth, silk or velvet decorated with applied metal work, sometimes set with jewels.

In case of the horse-archer the quiver was worn handily at his wrist which kept the arrows to his hand and ready for instant withdrawal. Bow was carried, hung from the waist, inside a *qirbān*, the opposite side to *tarkash* or *jaibāh*.³⁹

ARROW-HEAD EXTRACTOR

It was called *paikān-kash*⁴⁰. This implement was used to extract the arrow-heads from the body of the soldiers and was shaped like a pair of pliers⁴¹.

The instrument used in drawing the arrows out of the quiver was arrow-puller or *tir-kash*. It was shaped like an arrow, slightly bigger in size, and had a hook. With the help of this hook the arrows were raised a little and then drawn out of the quiver with hand.

BRACER

It was a covering for the left arm to protect it from the recoil of the bowstring⁴². It was worn a little above the left elbow. These were made of leather, silver, horn or ivory. It was used only when the shooter was not in armour. The bracer was to fit as close to the arm as

possible, so that no straps or edges could get in the way of the bowstring.

GOSHĀ-GIR

It was an item of the repairing kit—an implement for making good a warped bow-tip and for holding the string into a displaced notch. It could also be used to straighten the middle portion of the bow⁴³.

SHOOTING GLOVE

This glove was used by the bowman for the protection of his fingers and consisted of leathern finger-stalls sewn to corresponding straps. The leather of the glove was very thin so that the archer could still 'feel' the string⁴⁴.

TIP AND TAB

Small leather pieces, known as tips⁴⁵, were used to protect the fingers while stringing. Similar pieces were used at the bow-stave for the protection of the thumb and the upper fingers from the constant friction of the arrow. Then there were 'tabs' made of two pieces of leather sewn together, the portion which held the string being of horse-butt, and that through which the fingers passed, of a more supple kind of leather.

ARCHER'S RING

To prevent the flesh being torn by the bowstring a broad ring⁴⁶ was worn on the right thumb. Upon the inside of this ring, which projected half an inch, the string rested when the bow was drawn, on the outside it was only half that breadth. In loosing the arrow, the thumb was straightened which set the arrow free. These rings were made of any hard tough material—metal, horn, bone, ivory, tortoise shell and many kinds of stones like jade, agate, carnelian, crystal, etc. Jade, however, was the most popular.

CONCLUSION

It is commonly alleged that the introduction of the hand fire-arms proved a death knell to the use of archery in war, and to certain extent it is true; but it was long time before even the quality, much more the superiority, of fire-arms was acknowledged by the Indian warriors of the period. Quite six hundred years elapsed after their introduction before the bow was finally ousted in 1858 A.D., as the weapon of war. The tradition of Indian archery is not altogether dead. We have a number of aboriginals who are using the bows and arrows for all purposes : war, sport, defence and use in day to day life. Their bows and arrows have not undergone great material changes during these hundreds of years. Then there are a handful of display-archers who can do wonders. Some of the feats performed are : passing an arrow through a ring; hitting at two targets at different places with two arrows shot together; extinguishing a lighted candle by cutting its wick and so on. There are a few *gurukulas* (schools) where archery is a part of their syllabus. In Vanasthali Vidyapitha, Rajasthan, even the girls are given training in this science.

REFERENCES

1. Although many of the stone pieces, belonging to the palaeolithic times, resemble arrow-heads, yet their size and weight preclude the likelihood of their having been used as such. So far no positive evidence has been traced on the basis of which it may be said that the bow was known to the palaeolithic man in India. Then came the neolithic man with his domestic animals, with the knowledge of agriculture and of pottery and with his bows and arrows. Adundant evidence exists that this race of men were archers.
2. E.J.H. Mackay, *Further Excavations at Mohenjo-daro*, vol. I (New Delhi, 1938), p. 461. While a few arrow-heads of stone have been found at Harappa, no such specimen is known from Mohenjo-daro which indicates that the use of stone for this purpose had already become obsolete.
3. Mortimer Wheeler, *The Cambridge History of India*, supplementary volume, third edition (London, 1968), p. 72.
4. The *Rigveda*, like the *Bible* and the *Qurān*, is said to have a divine origin. Historically it was composed round about 2000 B.C., passed on orally from one generation to the other and finally written down in Sanskrit in about 1500-900 B.C. The other three *Vēdas*, i.e., the *Sāmavēda*, the *Yajurveda* and the *Atharvavēda*, are, more or less, contemporary, and all these four *Vēdas* (literally the 'sacred science') with their *Samhitās* (commentaries) are covered within the term the 'Vedic literature' and signify the (warlike) conditions of India in the 2nd-1st millennia B.C.
5. This was the age of chariots. Bow was used by the foot-soldiers or by the charioteers. Horse-and-elephant-archery was still unknown.
6. *Rigveda*, VI. 75.
7. *Atharvavēda*, IV. 6.4.
8. The original *Dhanurveda*, said to have been composed around 1200 B.C., by Lord Śiva, is nowhere to be traced but a number of treatises, of different dates, on the subject have come to light. Like *Indikā* of Megasthenese (4th century B.C.), this *Śiva Dhanurveda* is partly survived in the form of quotations in the later works.
9. In the *Rāmāyaṇa*, Rāma won Sitā as his bride by bending the great bow of Śiva. In the sixth century B.C. Gautama Buddha, as young Siddhārtha, contested against all competitors in an archery tournament and won the radiant Yashodharā, for his wife. The scene is engraved on the stone panels of the temple at Borobudur, Java, datable to the 8th century A.D.
10. The stirrups do not appear in the days of Alexander, who himself was an excellent horse-archer. The stirrups, for the first time in the world, are found engraved on the sculptures of Sānchī, Bhājā, Pītalkhorā and Mathurā (1st century B.C.–1st century A.D.) cf., John Marshall, *The Monuments of Sānchī* (London, 1879), plates XIII, XXV, 4. He says, "this is the earliest example by some five centuries of the use of stirrups in any part of the world", p.16. The saddles were used in the *Mahābhārata* period (c. 1000 B.C.).
11. For details see P.C. Chakravarti, *The Art of War in Ancient India*, reprinted (Delhi, 1972), p. XII Introduction.
12. A few of the books bearing references on medieval Indian archery, cited here at random, are Minhajus Siraj Jurjani, *Tabaqāt-i-Nāsiri* (Bib. Indica edition, 1897); Isami, *Futuh-us-Salātīn*, edited by M. Usha (Madras, 1948); Ziyauddin Barani, *Fatawāt-i-Jahāndāri*, translated by M. Habib and Afsar Khan under the heading *The Political Theory of the Delhi Sultanate* (Allahabad), etc.
13. C.J. Longman and H. Walrond, *Archery* (London, 1894), p.31.

14. P.C. Chakravarti, *op.cit.*, p.154. The horn bows were found specially useful for the archers on elephants while the cavaliers and foot-archers generally carried bows of bamboo and wood or of metal.
15. The bows of wood, horn or bamboo are easily distorted and instruments like *goshā-gīr* are used to correct the faults.
16. One similar bow is in the National Museum, New Delhi which contains the Persian poems composed by the Emperor himself.
17. Arrian, *Indikā*, XVI ; J.W. Mc Crindle, *The Invasion of India by Alexander, the Great* (London, 1896), p.105. The bows portrayed on the gold coins of Gupta dynasty (5th century A.D.) seem to be five feet in length.
18. William Irvine, *The Army of the Indian Moghuls*, reprinted (New Delhi, 1962), p.16 and the figure on the same page.
19. *Dhanurveda Samhitā*, Section 1, Verses 35-36 and 38-39.
20. *Koṇḍamandan*, Chapter V.
21. In the *Vājasaneyi Samhitā* (A Sanskrit treatise of 6th century B.C.), XXX. 7 these have been called *dhanuṣḥkāra* and *dhanuṣkṛita* (i.e., bow-makers). These persons had specialised in the craft of making bows and arrows.
22. S.D. Singh, *Ancient Indian Warfare with Special Reference to the Vedic Period* (Leiden, 1965), pp. 104-5.
23. 'Shaft' usually means the body of an arrow, sometimes the entire arrow.
24. *Dhanurveda Samhitā*, Section I, Verses 64-66.
25. These arrows were mainly employed in fighting against elephants. There are several anecdotes, both mythical and historical, which reveal that the war-elephants were killed with *nārāchas*.
26. D. Elmy, "Indian Arrow", *Journal of the Society of Archer Antiquaries* (London, 1969), vol. 12, p.6.
27. *Dhanurveda Samhitā*, Section I, Verse 60.
28. Gold and silver flights (also called 'vanes') were rarely used. Some flight arrows had single vanes from feathers arranged in spirals to cause the arrow to rotate.
29. The barbed arrow which wounded Alexander in 326 B.C. in India was measured. The point measured four *angulus* (fingers) in breadth and five in length ($2\frac{1}{2}'' \times 3\frac{1}{2}''$).
30. According to the *Dhanurveda* "the bark of the *peepul* should be ground in the cow's urine and a paste made. The paste should be smeared over the arrow-head and then heated in fire. It will then become blue, like the colour of the neck of the peacock, and poisonous." Section I, Verses 71-2.
31. In the *Mahābhārata* war arrows bearing names of the shooters were released in large numbers. *Mahābhārata*, 7.98.50-51; *Rāmāyaṇa*, *Yuddhakāṇḍa*, 22.23.
32. When Rāvaṇa shot his fire-arrows, Nila, the Commander-in-chief of Rāvaṇa, was badly burnt all over (*Rāmāyaṇa*, VI. 59.101-3).
33. *Arthashastra*, Book XIII, Chapter 4.
34. The aboriginal tribes of Kols and Santhals of Bengal and Bihar shoot wild animals, specially bear, with red-hot arrows.

35. Gilded arrows are referred to in the *Harshacharita* (VII) written by Bāṇa in the 7th century A.D.
36. D. Elmy, *op. cit.*, p.9.
37. In ancient India it was called *tūntra* and its another variant was *ishudhī*. Both these quivers were tied on a warrior's back to ensure an adequate supply of arrows.
38. Akbar had presented his special (*khāsa*) quiver to Hussain Khān, one of his generals, on the latter's performance in the second battle of Panipat (1556 A.D.). Once Aurangzeb conferred on Itikad Khān, his general, a quiver studded with precious jewels.
39. These *jaibāhs* and *qirbāns* form part of all oriental horse-archer's equipage and were very comfortable to wear.
40. The word literally means *paikān* = arrow-head, and *kash* = to draw out.
41. Another instrument used for the same purpose was *tirabardāra* which is mentioned in the *Āin-i-Akbarī* (No.18). Its price varied from ½ to 3 rupees during Akbar's period.
42. In the days of Epics it was made of iguana skin. During Mughal period it was called *godhā* and was a leather sleeve.
43. A.S. Beveridge, *Bābur-nāmā* (tr.), appendix c. pp. viii-ix.
44. These have been used right from the Epic age when it was called *āṅgulitrāṇa* (finger protector).
45. The tips should fit the fingers perfectly. If they are too small, the fingers will become cramped and if they are too large, they will fall off at the moment of loosing.
46. It was called *mudrikā* in Sanskrit and *zihgīr* in Persian. Sometimes two thimbles, instead of a *zihgīr*, were worn for this purpose on the fore and middle fingers of the right hand. These rings were called *sefin*.

DESCRIPTION

BOW

- 1.137/LIV *Cross-bow*—The ivory shaft is fully engraved all over with floral, creeper, animal and geometrical design. The stave of steel is attached on the top surmounted by a steel cap. The string is missing and so also the cock. A rare example.
- | | |
|--------------|---------------------------|
| Provenance | Europe |
| School | European, probably French |
| Date | Early 17th century |
| Total length | 63.5 cm |
| Shaft | 60.5 cm |
2. 282/LIV *Curved Bow*—Made of one piece of steel with its nocks upturned. Two pieces of horn (?) are riveted to form the grip. No decoration and no string.
- | | |
|--------------|---------------------------|
| Provenance | Hyderabad |
| School | East India Company School |
| Date | 19th century |
| Total length | 102.8 cm |
| Shaft | 90.0 cm |
3. 284/LIV *Steel Bow*—The stave is curved, the outer side is curved and is made of two separate pieces joined to a straight serrated steel grip. The outer surface and the two nocks are damascened in gold; string modern.
- | | |
|--------------|-------------------|
| Provenance | Hyderabad |
| School | Deccani |
| Date | Late 18th century |
| Total length | 102.0 cm |
| Stave | 92.0 cm |
| String | 84.0 cm |
4. 288/LIV *Steel Bow*—Two curved pieces of steel riveted to a plain grip of steel. The pieces at nocks have been riveted separately. No string.
- | | |
|--------------|---------------------------|
| Provenance | Hyderabad |
| School | East India Company School |
| Date | 19th century |
| Total length | 97.2 cm |
| Stave | 72.0 cm |
5. 289/LIV *Steel Bow*—Two separate pieces of steel joined to a cylindrical grip of steel. The two nocks and the grip are damascened in floral design in gold. Modern string.
- | | |
|------------|-------------------|
| Provenance | Hyderabad |
| School | Deccani |
| Date | Late 18th century |

- | | | |
|-------------|--|--------------|
| | Total length | 103.3 cm |
| | Stave | 95.0 cm |
| | String | 91.8 cm |
| 6. 241/LIV | <i>Arrow</i> —Shaft of reed; ivory knob; lower portion decorated; quadrangular small point of steel. | |
| | Provenance | Hyderabad |
| | School | Deccani |
| | Date | 18th century |
| | Total length | 75.3 cm |
| | Blade | 3.5 cm |
| | Shaft | 71.8 cm |
| 7. 273/LIV | <i>Arrow</i> —Same as No. 241/LIV; small triangular blade has a mid-rib on both sides and a perforated design. | |
| | Provenance | Hyderabad |
| | School | Deccani |
| | Date | 18th century |
| | Total length | 76.3 cm |
| | Blade | 6.5 cm |
| | Shaft | 69.8 cm |
| 8. 279/LIV | <i>Arrow</i> —Same as No. 241/LIV; blade quadrangular. | |
| | Provenance | Hyderabad |
| | School | Deccani |
| | Date | 18th century |
| | Total length | 71.7 cm |
| | Blade | 7.5 cm |
| | Shaft | 64.2 cm |
| 9. 291/LIV | <i>Arrow</i> —Same as No. 241/LIV, quadrangular blade, wooden nock. | |
| | Provenance | Hyderabad |
| | School | Deccani |
| | Date | 18th century |
| | Total length | 75.3 cm |
| | Blade | 4.5 cm |
| | Shaft | 70.8 cm |
| 10. 294/LIV | <i>Arrow</i> —Same as No. 241/LIV, triangular flat blade with a mid-rib. | |
| | Provenance | Hyderabad |
| | School | Deccani |
| | Date | 18th century |
| | Total length | 75.7 cm |
| | Blade | 4.0 cm |
| | Shaft | 65.2 cm |
| 11. 297/LIV | <i>Arrow</i> —Same as No. 241/LIV; quadrangular blade. | |
| | Provenance | Hyderabad |

- | | | |
|-------------|--|--------------|
| | School | Deccani |
| | Date | 18th century |
| | Total length | 75.7 cm |
| | Blade | 10.5 cm |
| | Shaft | 65.2 cm |
| 12. 299/LIV | <i>Arrow</i> —Same as No. 241/LIV. The blade is small, flat and shaped like a leaf. | |
| | Provenance | Hyderabad |
| | School | Deccani |
| | Date | 18th century |
| | Total length | 76.4 cm |
| | Blade | 4.5 cm |
| | Shaft | 71.9 cm |
| 13. 300/LIV | <i>Arrow</i> —Same as No. 241/LIV. The blade is comparatively longer, leaf-shaped and has a mid-rib. | |
| | Provenance | Hyderabad |
| | School | Deccani |
| | Date | 18th century |
| | Total length | 76.0 cm |
| | Blade | 9.0 cm |
| | Shaft | 67.0 cm |
| 14. 303/LIV | <i>Arrow</i> —Same as No. 241/LIV, blade is flat, leaf-shaped and one over the other, giving the impression of two blades. | |
| | Provenance | Hyderabad |
| | School | Deccani |
| | Date | 18th century |
| | Total length | 75.3 cm |
| | Blade | 7.5 cm |
| | Shaft | 67.8 cm |
| 15. 308/LIV | <i>Arrow</i> —Same as No. 241/LIV, small triangular blade. | |
| | Provenance | Hyderabad |
| | School | Deccani |
| | Date | 18th century |
| | Total length | 73.6 cm |
| | Blade | 3.5 cm |
| | Shaft | 70.1 cm |
| 16. 309/LIV | <i>Arrow</i> —Same as No. 241/LIV; triangular blade. | |
| | Provenance | Hyderabad |
| | School | Deccani |
| | Date | 18th century |
| | Total length | 75.9 cm |
| | Blade | 7.0 cm |
| | Shaft | 68.9 cm |

17. 314/LIV *Arrow*—Same as No. 241/LIV; triangular blade
Provenance Hyderabad
School Deccani
Date 18th century
Total length 74.6 cm
Blade 9.5 cm
Shaft 65.1 cm
18. 317/LIV *Arrow*—Same as No. 241/LIV; blade quadrangular.
Provenance Hyderabad
School Deccani
Date 18th century
Total length 76.0 cm
Blade 7.0 cm
Shaft 69.0 cm
19. 320/LIV *Arrow*—Same as No. 241/LIV. Blade is quadrangular and small.
Provenance Hyderabad
School Deccani
Date 18th century
Total length 73.5 cm
Blade 4.5 cm
Shaft 69.0 cm
20. 330/LIV *Arrow*—Same as No. 241/LIV, flat triangular blade.
Provenance Hyderabad
School Deccani
Date 18th century
Total length 75.3 cm
Blade 4.5 cm
Shaft 70.8 cm

CHAPTER II

SWORD

ORIGIN¹

The earliest swords date back to 2300 B.C.² The dirks of Harappan Civilisation, made of copper and bronze, are straight, double-edged, well-shaped and heavy for their sizes. On an average they measure 15 inches in length and 0.4 inch in thickness. There are two rivet holes at the junction of the tang and the blade. A stout medial-rib runs down the blade on both sides. They weigh 2 pounds and were meant for slashing and not for thrusting. Mackay opines that in India, Sumer and Palestine the short sword was used in or before 2500 B.C.; it was derived from the dagger and had been invented in each of these countries independently³.

Next in chronological order fall two dozen swords belonging to the Copper Hoard Culture datable to 2000 B.C. These are called "antennae" swords. These are long, tapering, double-edged rapiers with a strong medial-rib. The hilt bifurcates like the antennae of an insect, hence the name. The introduction of iron in India, around 1000 B.C., brought a boom and the sword and dagger making developed into an industry⁴. From that time onwards India has been famous for its iron and steel and the swords and daggers made of it.

Now gods and goddesses were tempted to adopt it as one of their attributes⁵. It was commonly worn on left side, its presiding deity was Agni (Fire), it belonged to *Rohinī* community and its first preceptor was Brahmā himself. The best sword, according to the *Bṛihāt-samhitā* of Varāhamihir (5th century A.D.), measured 50 inches, the middle 46 inches and the lowest 36 inches. A good sword was one which was long, light, sharp, tough and flexible.

In ancient and medieval India many centres supplying swords along with other arms and armour to the royal arsenals (*āyudhāgāras*) were opened and the swordsmiths (*sikligars*) were busy making the blades around the year⁶. Those made in Lahore and Sind (now in Pakistan) were famous for their durability, those of Delhi for lustre, of Agra for power in felling, of Lucknow for delicacy and intricate designs, of Sirohi (Rajasthan) for watered steel blades, of Alwar for sharpness, of Jaipur for damascening and of Deccan for heaviness. Ceremonial, ritual and curious swords were made all over the country.⁷

A new grammalogue evolved. The raising of the sword was the declaration of war and lowering it down or putting it back in the sheath before an enemy was the acknowledgement of defeat; throwing it on the ground was a challenge and kissing it and making some announcement was the highest kind of honour and promise. The sword was never taken out of sheath without reason and if done inadvertently, the wearer was supposed to cut one of his left fingers, put one drop of his own blood on the edge of the blade before it was slid back into the scabbard. A sword was tied around the waist of the newly recruited sol-

dier by the commanding officer and the same was taken away from the one dismissed. The sword, when broken into two, indicated somebody's death. Before proceeding on war and soon after it was over, the sword used therein was adored⁸.

Twenty-two manoeuvres of sword fight called *mandalas* (movements) included winding the sword above or over the foe; guarding by a false movement; approaching, touching, forcing the foe to the ground, twisting to one side or the other, blow on exposed part, flashing quick passes, and sheathing.

A warrior fighting on the front need only to send his personal sword inscribed with his name upon its blade or hilt and his marriage was solemnised hundred miles away at his village with his bride. For winning a princess in open contest many tests were prescribed, and one of them was sword duel like those fought by the knights of the medieval Europe. A swordsman was to fight another swordsman and not an archer or a clubman or a spearman least it should be an unequal fight.

In Akbar's time the price of a sword ranged from half a rupee to fifteen *muharas*⁹ but in his treasury was a sword which was brought from Ahmadnagar and cost as much as one hundred thousand rupees.

The Gurkha *khukarī*, the Mughal *shamshīr*, the Hindu *talwār*, the Maratha *paṭṭā*, the Sikh *kṛipāna*, the Rajput *khāndā*, the Assamese *dāo* are all the variants of sword.

The hilts of the swords were abundantly decorated. Sometimes the pommel itself was shaped like the head of a horse, a ram, an elephant, a hound catching a hare, a lion fighting an elephant, etc. These show how cleverly their shapes were utilised for various decorative patterns and motifs. Every possible material *i.e.*, wood, bone, ivory, precious and semi-precious stones, gold, silver and other metals, etc., was used in the decoration of the hilts.

Inscriptions, designs, hunting scenes, talismanic signs, figures of gods and goddesses, etc., found on the blade warranted the sincerity of the artistic effect. Enamelling, damascening in gold and silver, *repoussé*, filigree, engraving, embossing, jewellery and other ornamentations were applied on the hilts, on the sheaths and its mounts, on the waist-belts holding the sword and on the sword-knots, bags and other accessories of sword.

With the arrival of the Mughals and later the British the fire-arms became more and more popular which ultimately supplanted the Indian sword. The last time it flashed was in 1857 A.D., in the First War of Independence, and then was sheathed for good.

Even today this weapon is held in high esteem by the heroic clans of the *kṣatriyas*, the Rajputs, the Gurkhas, the Sikhs, the Marathas and others who ceremoniously worship the power bestowed upon this weapon on festive occasions. It has thus been glorified in the *Shārangadhar Paddhati*, "I salute thee O Sword! thou art the auspicious thing in the world and art meant for general welfare. Thou protect the kings, the wealth, the animals, the men and all that is worth protecting. Now it is my turn, protect me too from all evils".

PARTS

A sword has three main divisions : (i) hilt, (ii) blade, and (iii) sheath. The hilt (*qabzāh*) has several parts. The uppermost part, shaped like a bud, is called 'tang button' (*mogrā*) after which is disc-shaped 'pommel' (*katorī*),¹⁰ followed in succession by oval-shaped 'grip' (*pūtalā*), a bow like 'knuckle guard' on one side only, two quillons,¹¹ each projecting from the cross-guard and two 'langets' (*narahé*), one on each side (upper and lower). The blade's uppermost part is the rectangular flat piece called 'tang', followed by a 'ricasso' (a

square-shaped space left blunt to save the fingers from being cut), cutting 'edge', thick 'back' (opposite the sharp edge), 'grooves' (channels on the blade) and 'tip' (the lowermost part). The sheath has 'upper', 'middle' and 'lower' fittings.

CLASSIFICATION

Some main types are:

1. *Ādi Sword*

These are used by the aboriginal tribes called Ādis of North-eastern India hence the name. Such swords are straight and single-edged. The blade is narrower at the hilt, broader at the lower end and is chisel-shaped. These are kept in wooden sheaths and slung from a belt made of *mithum* hide¹².

2. *Ārādam*

The sword having serrated blade on one side like that of a saw is called *ārāpushta* (*ārā* = saw) and the one having serrated edges on both sides is called *ārādam*.

3. *Ayda Kattī*

It has a broad, heavy, single-edged blade very much wide at the end than at hilt and sharp on the concave side. The hilt of horn, wood or ivory, has no guard but has a kite-shaped pommel¹³. It was very popular with the Moplahs of Coorg (Malabar) and was also used in Mysore (now Karnataka)¹⁴.

4. *Belt Sword*

The National Museum, New Delhi, has a sword whose blade is so flexible that it can easily be worn as a belt round the waist¹⁵.

5. *Dāo*

Most of the aboriginal tribes of North-eastern India use this weapon. It has a straight, heavy, square-ended, chisel-edged blade, narrowest at the hilt¹⁶. This serves both the domestic as well as martial purpose. The average length varies from 2 to 3 feet. These are carried in wooden cases, one side of which is open¹⁷.

6. *Dhūp*

It has a broad, straight, long, double-edged blade and is generally made of flexible burnished steel¹⁸. It has a large padded basket hilt with spiked pommel. This was very popular among the Marathas and the rulers of Deccan¹⁹. It was generally 4 to 5 feet long.

7. *Firangī*

It was a cut-and-thrust, straight-bladed sword²⁰. The blade, tapering towards the point, was strengthened at the forte. The basket hilt was padded and decorated with silver and gold work. Its average length was 3½ feet and it was the favourite sword of the Marathas²¹. When the edges were serrated it was called *firang-haṭṭī* (i.e., serrated).

8. *Khândā*

It is one of the oldest and most typical of Indian swords. It has a broad, straight blade, widening towards the point which is quite blunt. It has a strengthening plate on the back for a considerable part of its length²². The hilt has a broad plate-guard and wide knuckle-guard which joins the large, round pommel. The pommel has a curved spike²³. It was extremely popular in Orissa and Central India and was a favourite weapon of the Rajputs.

9. *Kilij*

It was a Turkish sabre adopted by the Sultans of Delhi during 13th-14th centuries. Its blade is broad, short and curved. The curvature of the back stops at ten inches from the point, the blade then widens out abruptly and extends to the point nearly in a straight line with a sharp edge on the back. The hilt is shaped like a pistol²⁴. The *kilij*, carried in a wooden sheath with two sling loops²⁵, was hung in front of the wearer with the edge upwards by a complicated harness of cords²⁶.

10. *Korā*

It is the battle-sabre of the Gurkhas also used, even today, for the decapitation of animals in religious ceremonies²⁷. It has a very heavy, single-edged blade, sharp on the concave side, much incurved and widening greatly at the end which terminates in two curves²⁸. It is carried in a sheath²⁹.

11. *Nāir Swords*

A number of swords preserved in the temples of South India are commonly known as Nāir temple swords³⁰. They have sickle-shaped, L-shaped, crescent-shaped, spear-head-shaped blades, usually 27 inches long. The iron hilt is generally 5½ inches long, the hollow pommel contains small metal balls which make jingling sound when the weapon is wielded³¹.

12. *Paṭṭā*

It was the most favoured weapon of the Marathas. It has a long, flexible, regularly tapering, straight steel blade, always double-edged³². The gauntlet hilt covers the arm almost to the elbow³³. It was mainly used by the cavaliers who could use it as a lance as well. The blade is attached to the gauntlet hilt by a pair of seatings which run down the face of the blade, on both sides, for a few inches, and to which it is riveted³⁴. The blade measures 3½ feet while the gauntlet hilt about one foot, three inches³⁵.

13. *Rām Dāo*

Mainly a sacrificial sword, it is very widely distributed in Northern India and Nepal. It has a broad, massive, heavy, blade terminating into an axe-like projection³⁶. A human eye is incised on the blade. The handle of ebony (10 inches) has collars of brass at the top and the base; total length 2½ feet on an average.

14. *Shamshīr*

It is a cutting weapon with a perfect curve for the drawcut. The blade is very fine, narrow and thick generally of Damascus³⁷ steel³⁸. The pistol-shaped hilts³⁹ are simple and light

with a single cross-guard with a pommel projecting at one side⁴⁰. The most valuable swords are those manufactured by Asad Ullah and his pupil Zaman of Isphahan. The *shamshir* was carried, edge down, hung from the left side of the waist-belt by two slings. It was the most preferred weapon of the Mughals.

15. *Sosun-paṭṭā*

Literally 'lily leaf', it has a *kopis*-bladed form. The Maratha *sosun-paṭṭā* has basket type hilt similar to the one found on *firangi* or *khāndā*⁴¹; the Mughal *sosun-paṭṭā*⁴² has a blade with a smoothly recurved edge and the Hindu *sosun-paṭṭā* has a *talwār* hilt. It is, however, the blade which distinguishes this weapon.

16. *Talwār*

It is the commonest sword from the cheapest to the most costly ones⁴³. The hilt consists of a short tang button, disc pommel, oval grip, short heavy quillons, and small langets. It may or may not have knuckle-guard. The invariably curved blades vary enormously in size, curvature and quality.

17. *Saij*

It was an Indo-Arab sword. It has slightly curved broad blade with a peculiarly hooked pommel. It is carried in front, slung from two rings fastened to opposite sides of a broad band around the scabbard. The wooden sheath covered with embossed black leather is generally mounted with silver fittings. Hilts were sometime of horn.

18. *Dhā*

It is the national sword of Burma, also used in north-eastern India. It has a guardless hilt and a slightly curved, single-edged blade. Both the blade and the hilt are frequently ornamented, the former with inlaying and the latter with carving of wood or ivory, or with a covering of chased or embossed metal. The wooden sheaths, often partly or entirely covered with silver, have a heavy cord wound round them and fastened with a knot that leaves a loop that can be passed over the shoulder. The blades are of full lengths from a few inches to a couple of feet. As a rule they have long points but occasionally they are square-ended.

19. *Nāgan*

Literally a 'female serpent'. The sword having a zig-zag blade and terminating into the hood of a snake is called the serpentine sword or *nāgan*. It was never sheathed. It was intended to cut the armour but it was not found suitable hence abandoned in the late 17th century A.D.

20. *Teghā*

It has a broad, curved blade and the hilt like that of a *talwār*. The main distinction between a *talwār* and *teghā* is the width of the blade; the latter has a broader blade. Some of the *teghās* were very broad and heavy and were wielded by both the hands.

21. *Zulfikar*

It is a curved sword with a bifurcated point and saw-like edges. On one side the blade

is completely serrated while on the other side it is serrated only at the lower end. The blade bears a big hole and the lower end looks like a beaked bird. The hilt has disc-like pommel, cylindrical grip, knuckle-guard and long langets which are riveted to it. It was never sheathed.

22. *Yātaghan*

It is a Turkish sabre with an incurved blade. The hilt has no guard and the pommel spreads out in large wings. The blades are generally etched with verses from the holy *Qurān*. The tang is flat and the two pieces, generally of ivory, forming the grip, are riveted to it. The wooden sheaths covered with leather have no sling loops, being carried thrust through the belt.

23. *Pulouar*

It is a curved sword, generally of watered steel blade. The quillons droop downwards and have enlarged, pierced and fretted ends. The pommel is a pierced covered ball surmounted by a cone. The ecusson and grip are generally chiselled. The source of *pulouar* is not traceable and its later manifestations in India cannot be connected with any continuous tradition. The only precedent for the form appears in certain early Arab swords.

24. *Kirach*

It was a rapier specially designed for thrusting and is generally provided with a more or less elaborate guard. The blade is long, about three feet, and elastic. The *kirach* first appears in the sculptures at Nāgārjūnkoṇḍā (1st century A.D.) in the panel illustrating "the lady Amarā and the four wise men". It became popular with the arrival of the British in India.

25. *Salāpā*

It is a sword with a crutch hilt or a disc-pommel with a projecting arm to serve as a hand rest. The hilt has short quillons swelling at the end and moulded knuckle-guard. The most distinguishing feature is the flattened bar that runs from the pommel cap at right angles to the grip.

26. *Pattisā*

It is a South Indian sword with a straight double-edged, broad blade, widest near the point. The hilt is attached to the blade by steel seatings running almost upto the middle of the blade on both the sides to which it is riveted. The distinguishing feature is the hilt which has a round pommel, cylindrical grip and drooping quillons.

HILT

The hilt, if of metal, was cast. The hilts of *khukarī*, *dāo* and *korā* were mostly of horn or wood. Every region has its own speciality. Thus we have *Udaipurī*, *Bihānerī*, *Delhishāhī*, etc., hilts named after the places of their origin. The iron hilts were often delicately fashioned, thickly overlaid with gold plates or damascened in gold and silver wires. Hilts of one piece of jade, ivory, precious or semi-precious stones are also available. For fixing the hilt, the tang of the sword was inserted into the hollow part of the hilt and glued⁴⁴. Hilt is a definite landmark in allocating the place of origin and date to a sword or a dagger and also helps in its classification.

SHEATH

A sword or a dagger is encased in a sheath⁴⁵. No pre-or-protolithic sheath has survived⁴⁶. The earliest mention is in the *Kathaka Samhitā* (2nd millennium B.C.) which records a sheath (*vāvri*) to which a belt (*vala*) was attached⁴⁷. The sheath was generally made of wood⁴⁸ covered with leather, velvet, silk, cotton or metal. Purely metallic sheaths were also made⁴⁹. A sheath was generally adorned with (i) a *muhnāl* i.e., a metal case fitted to the open mouth of the sheath, (ii) *bichnāl*, middle fitting, (iii) *tehnāl*, chape or a cap of gold, silver jade or ivory fitted at the tip, (iv) belts and straps which were fastened round the waist or hung over the shoulder, (v) *galtanī*, a small loop of leather of *zarī* attached to one side of the *muhnāl* and was fastened to one of the quillons to avoid the sheath falling down, and (vi) *gawāsanī*, a clothbag in which the scabbarded-sword or dagger was kept, when not in use.

CONCLUSION

Innumerable varieties of swords, displayed in the museums of India speak very highly of the craft of the smiths who produced such ornamented, embellished, inscribed or damascened swords that some of them are the works of fine art. The swords studded with jewels reveal that there was a time when these weapons were held in the highest esteem, almost revered like a deity, and there was nothing superior to it. On festive occasions the sword is worshipped even today.

REFERENCES

1. There is a mythological story behind the creation of the first sword. The devils (*asuras*) defeated the gods (*devas*) in a series of battles. Finally the helpless gods approached Brahmā, the Creator, for assistance. Brahmā performed a sacrifice (*yagna*) and gave its offerings (*prasād*) to Jayā, and Suprabhā the two daughters of king Daksha Prajāpati. Jayā, the elder, conceived and after nine months gave birth not to a son but to a sword (*asi*). Suprabhā, the younger, similarly gave birth to a dagger (*asiputrikā*). Armed with these weapons the gods succeeded in vanquishing the *asuras*; cf., *Mahābhārata*, *Shāntiparva*.
2. These swords were discovered for the first time in 1930 by E.J.H. Mackay, the excavator.
3. E.J.H. Mackay, *Further Excavations at Mohen-jodaro*, vol. I (New Delhi, 1938), p. 467, pl. CXVIII.9.
4. The two Epics (*Rāmāyana* and *Mahābhārata*), several classical Sanskrit treatises, account of the foreign travellers, etc., are replete with reference to swords. It is depicted on the coins, is shown in the paintings and accompanies many gods and goddesses whose sculptures are available.
5. The personal sword of Rāma was *Asiratna* while that of Rāvaṇa was *Chandrahāsa*. *Nāndaka* of Viṣṇu, *Peerī* and *Meerī* of Guru Hargobind, *Bhawānī* of Sivaji are some of the immortal swords. It was customary to allot names to the personal swords and other weapons.
6. S.D. Singh, *Ancient Indian Warfare with Special Reference to the Vedic Period* (Leiden, 1965), p.95.
7. G.N. Pant, "A Study of Indian Sword", *Itihāsa Chayanikā*, Part II, the U.P. Historical Society (Lucknow, 1965), p.77.
8. G.N. Pant, *Pushpānjali*, vol. IV (Nov. 1980), p. 93.
9. *Āin-i-Akbarī*, *Āin*, 35.

10. In order to balance the blade and make it easier to wield the sword a counterbalance was fitted at the opposite end of the grip known as pommel. Early pommels were often just as flat metal washers, but soon acquired a certain decorative quality with such details as animal's heads.
11. The greater majority of quillons on Indian sword are quite straight but some were made which curved slightly towards the blade and some had even very pronounced downward curves.
12. The value of an 'Ādi' sword is assessed on the basis of the numbers of the welding lines marked on the blade. The 'Ādis' make their own sword. The price of one such sword today ranges from Rs. 400 to 800 *cf.*, G.N. Pant, *Studies in Indian Weapons and Warfare* (New Delhi, 1970), pp. 261-62, fig. on page 262.
13. It was generally worn unsheathed upon the back (though rarely the sheaths are also available) being passed through a flattened brass ring with a spike projecting from its centre (called *todungā*), which was attached to a belt fastening by massive silver chains in front.
14. The maximum length of this weapon was 24 inches and the minimum 18 inches; the blade ranged between 14 to 17 inches; the width of the blade was 1½ to 3½ (from the thinnest to the widest part) to 1½ to 5½ inches, *cf.*, W. Egerton, *op. cit.*, pp. 82-83 Nos. 109-128.
15. There is a stud on the hilt and a hole near the tip of the blade; while using it as a belt the stud is fixed into the hole.
16. The hilt is of a very simple shape, without a guard and with no distinct pommel. It is usually made of wood, bamboo being considered the best, but sometimes of ivory, occasionally very well carved.
17. The *dāo* is mostly held with blade down and the holder (sheath) is tied to the belt around the waist, *cf.*, Sachin Roy, *Aspects of Padm Minyong Culture* (Shillong, 1960).
18. *Dhūp* was considered an emblem of sovereignty and high dignity, and was, therefore, displayed on state occasions, being carried in a gorgeous velvet covering by a man who held it before his master.
19. Many of the Deccan rulers have been painted holding *dhūp*. This kind of sword was conferred as a distinction upon successful soldiers, great nobles or court favourites. Akbar is reported to have received one *dhūp* as gift from Deccan, *vide*, Abdul Aziz, *Arms and Jewellery of the Indian Moghuls* (Lahore, 1947), pp. 7 and 35.
20. The word *firangī* literally means 'the Portuguese' since this sword was introduced by them in India and was later successfully adopted by the Marathas. The blades were either imported from Europe by the Portuguese or made in imitation of them. The blades generally bear inscriptions.
21. This was chiefly used by the swordsmen of cavalry since its length allowed it to be used as a piercing weapon as well.
22. The blades were reinforced with narrow fretted strips of steel running down the length of the reverse edge from the root of the blade. In this way some of its elasticity and stiffness is gone and the sword has become a little heavy yet the reinforcement compensates for the loss.
23. This spike acted as a guard for the arm, and for a grip for the left hand when making a two-handed stroke. It was also used as a hand-rest when the sword was sheathed.
24. The hilt is pistol-shaped with two pieces of horn, bone, ivory, wood, metal or stone being fastened to the flat tang. The guard is a straight and slim cross-bar with balls or acorns on the ends.
25. The curve of the blade is such that the back of the scabbard at the top must be opened in

order to admit it. The opening is often closed by a spring or a hinged plate.

26. Most of the *killijs* bear inscriptions, sometimes on both the sides of the blade. Sheaths are usually stamped. The average length of the blade was 30 inches. The hilts were sometimes studded with jewels or semi-precious stones.

27. It has a 23 inches long blade with 6 inches long grip. The form of the blade with its forward sweeping curve and massive tip has affinities with the weapons of other east Indian hill people such as the *dāo* of Assam.

28. Inscribed *korās* are unknown and those damascened in gold and silver are absolutely rare. The average length of the hilt is from 3 to 5 inches and that of the blade from 19 to 24 inches. The total length is about 2 feet, 5 inches.

29. The sheaths are of two kinds. The commoner is a wide scabbard into which the blade can be slipped; the other is shaped to fit the blade and buttons down the back. The sheaths are sometimes covered with velvet and are fitted with chapes and locketts of pierced and chased silver. Two *korās* with such sheaths are preserved in the collection of King Frederik VI, National Museum, Copenhagen vide, P.S. Rawson, *Indian Sword* (Copenhagen, 1967), reprinted (London, 1968), p. 106, plate 41.

30. These are of much lighter construction and were not used as war swords but, no doubt, follow forms reminiscent of the forms of the old fighting swords. These swords are used in various domestic and public ceremonies of Nāir (a caste name) of Kerala. Being flexible, the sword vibrates for a long time, and their jingles, both attached to the edges of the blade and in the hollows of the pomels, are shaken during procession.

31. Two examples are in the Victoria and Albert Museum, London. Both were produced in Madras in the 18th century. The one in the National Museum, New Delhi, has 27 inches blade and 5½ inches hilt and its blade is shaped like English letter 'L'.

32. It is a typical Indian gauntlet sword and seems to have evolved from *jamadhar*. For details see G.N. Pant, *Indian Arms and Armour*, vol. II (New Delhi, 1980), pp. 60-65, figs. 96-107.

33. These *pattās* were invented by the Marathas in the West Deccan and were later diffused by them into the areas which they penetrated. The use of the internal padding in the hilt, to reinforce the grip and reduce the shock of the blows, was a Maratha invention and it is mostly found in the areas of the Maratha influence.

34. The gauntlet covers the arm almost to the elbow, and has an iron strap hinged to the upper end that goes around the arm. The grip is at right angles to the blade. This gauntlet deprives a man of the use of his wrist and would be a very awkward weapon for fencing, and is mainly used by the cavalry. It is wielded directly by the strong muscles of the fore and upper arm, and not through the wrist. cf., G.C. Stone, *A Glossary of the Construction, Decoration and Use of Arms and Armor*, reprinted (New York, 1961), pp. 485-6, fig. 619.

35. A number of *pattās* are in the National Museum, New Delhi; Salar Jung Museum, Hyderabad; Archaeological Museum, Aṭwar (Rajasthan); Prince of Wales Museum, Bombay; Sawai Man Singh II Museum, Jaipur, etc.

36. In many of the temples at Bengal, Assam and Nepal the *Rām dāos* are kept which are commonly the gift of the pious donors who record their piety in inscriptions on the blade. The animals sacrificed are goat and sheep in Bengal; buffalo in Nepal and hen, dove and other birds in Assam.

37. This is a purely Persian sword generally made of Indian Steel which was exported from India in the form of cake and the same was converted into the swords and daggers at Damascus, Iran and

other places. This Indian steel (*wootz*) is commonly known as Damascus steel.

38. The blades are engraved with the names of the maker or owner and the date. The quality of a *shamshīr* is judged on the basis of its watered steel.

39. The grip and the pommel of the hilt are covered with two pieces of elephant or walrus ivory, jade, horn or other material. The tip bears a steel cap damascened in gold. The quillons are long and slender and terminate into small studs.

40. The earliest appearance of a *shamshīr* is in a Persian manuscript called *Jāmi-at-Tawārikh* of 1306 A.D. belonging to the Asiatic Society, London. In India it was introduced by Bābur in 1526 A.D.

41. The three distinguishing features of a Maratha *sosun-pattā* are (i) recurved blade, (ii) reinforcement of the reverse edge, and (iii) basket hilt. The blade is generally 29 inches long and the hilt 4 inches long.

42. In the National Museum, New Delhi, is displayed the personal *sosun-pattā* of Aurangzeb. It has a flat knuckle-guard and the name of the Emperor is engraved on the blade in low relief.

43. It is a class name for Indian sabre and practically all the curved swords are included in it. Technically it stands for the swords which have a curved blade and a typical hilt. These are broader than the *shamshīr* and less curved. The blade may or may not have the *zauhar* (watered steel) but it invariably has a ricasso. The distinguishing feature is the hilt which is peculiar to *talwār*.

44. Some hilts were fitted with a safety loop of leather or *zarī*, known as 'sword knot'. The hand was slipped through the loop to grip the hilt and should the weapon be slipped from the hand it remained dangling from the wrist.

45. The *Vājasaneyī Samhitā* (2nd millennium B.C., XXX. 14) refers to a female scabbard-maker called *koshakārīnī*.

46. The first depiction of a sheath in art is on a fragment of stone sculpture from Bharhut (2nd century B.C.), now in the Mathura Museum, Mathura, U.P. The sword, here, is inside a sheath and is suspended at the left side of the soldier by a single strap.

47. *Kathaka Samhitā*, XV. 4; *Maitrāyānī Samhitā*, II.6.5. In the *Jaiminīya Upaniṣada Brāhmaṇa*, III.139, it is called *asidhara* (i.e., 'sword container').

48. The Indian woods preferred for making of the sheath are oak, pine, *sewān*, *halwā* and *adūsā*. The sheaths of oak are costly. Those of mango, pine or *halwā* are very common but these are exposed to white ants. *Sewān* wood is durable, tough, smooth and light.

49. The sheaths were, as a rule, highly embellished. Those of leather were embossed or carved and of metal were enamelled or gold and silver plated. The sheath fittings were invariably ornamented. The sheaths owned by the royal personages were studded with jewels. A North Indian sword of the 13th century in the National Museum, New Delhi, reproduced by G.N. Pant, *op. cit.*, (1980), vol. II, pl. I, has a silver sheath and is tastefully enamelled all over.

SHAMSHĪR

21. 13/LVI *Shamshīr*—Curved blade with grooves on both sides. The inscription engraved on the blade records *Muhammad Sāhīb* and date 1215 A.H. The pistol-shaped grip is covered with two pieces of horn and a plain steel cap; the guard below is of steel and inscribed on both sides with the verses from the holy *Qurān* in Arabic (Naskh style). Wooden sheath is covered with faded green velvet and has upper, middle and lower fittings of steel.
- | | |
|--------------|-----------|
| Provenance | Hyderabad |
| School | Deccani |
| Date | 1215 A.H. |
| Total length | 90.6 cm |
| Blade | 71.0 cm |
| Hilt | 19.6 cm |
22. 26/LIV *Shamshīr*—Curved *shamshīr* blade of Damascus steel having grooves on both sides. The blade is inscribed; on one side it has an animal engraved with inscription in bands which reads *Bandā Shāh Vilāyath Abbāsī, Bandā Shāh Vilāyath Isfahānī, Bandā Shāh Vilāyath Hanafī*. On the other side the names of Allāh are inscribed in Nastaliq script and Arabic language. The hilt is damascened in gold in floral and creeper design. The wooden sheath, covered with faded yellow velvet, has a chape ornamented in the style of the hilt.
- | | |
|--------------|-------------------|
| Provenance | North India |
| School | Mughal |
| Date | Mid. 17th century |
| Total length | 91.9 cm |
| Blade | 75.7 cm |
| Hilt | 16.2 cm |
23. 32/LIV,A *Shamshīr*—Curved sword of Damascus steel inscribed on one side of the blade; steel hilt is covered with two sides of stag horn and is wrapped with steel wires. The steel cap and the guard on both the sides bear inscriptions. Wooden sheath is covered with damaged brown leather and has upper and middle mountings inscribed on both sides in relief. The gold damascened chape belongs to some other sheath.
- | | |
|--------------|--------------------|
| Provenance | North India |
| School | Mughal |
| Date | Early 17th century |
| Total length | 99.0 cm |
| Blade | 84.5 cm |
| Hilt | 14.5 cm |
24. 33/LIV-A *Shamshīr*—Curved blade of watered steel. The back edge is inscribed from top to bottom. The hilt of Damascus steel also bears inscription on both

sides of the guard and on two sides of its cap. Hilt is covered with two pieces of walrus ivory. Wooden sheath is covered with black leather and has upper and middle fittings inscribed in gold on both sides. Chape is missing.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	17th century
Total length	97.6 cm
Blade	82.2 cm
Hilt	15.4 cm.

25. 34/LIV-A *Shamshir*—Curved blade of Damascus steel bearing four grooves on the side of the back edge. The quillons of the guard are comparatively longer. The steel hilt, pistol-shaped, is covered with two pieces of ivory. The steel portion of the hilt is damascened in floral design in gold. Wooden sheath, covered with black leather, has a silver chape.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	Late 18th century
Total length	99.9 cm
Blade	83.5 cm
Hilt	16.4 cm

26. 35/LVI *Nimchā Shamshir*—Single-edged on one side and double-edged at the lower end. The blade has two grooves. The hilt is similar to No.33-LVIA and is ornamented in *zarbuland* technique in gold. The damaged wooden sheath is encased with badly faded velvet and has a brass chape.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Late Mughal
Date	Early 18th century
Total length	87.4 cm
Blade	71.5 cm
Hilt	15.9 cm.

27. 58/LIV *Shamshir*—Indo-Turkish *shamshir*, plain, evenly curved blade; pistol-grip-shaped hilt of horn has a globular pommel through which passes a sword-knot of a silver *zari*. The side of the hilt have engraved silver plate. The hilt is damaged. The wooden sheath, covered with black leather, is encased with very long metallic chape and *muhnāl*. A loop is attached at the *muhnāl*. Two additional loops, along with the metallic fittings, are on the sides of the sheath through which the sword belt was passed.

Provenance	North-west India
School	Mughal
Date	16th century
Total length	93.7 cm
Blade	78.2 cm

Hilt 15.5 cm

28. 70/LIV-A *Shamshir*—Curved *shamshir* blade, watered steel is not visible. The inscription in Arabic reads *Asādullāh Isfahānī*. The *talwār* hilt of Rajput style is fitted to it which bears *būtī* design in gold all over. The wooden sheath is covered with modern saffron coloured velvet and a chape of some other sheath.
- | | |
|--------------|-------------------|
| Provenance | Deccan |
| School | Mughal impact |
| Date | Late 17th century |
| Total length | 97.6 cm |
| Blade | 80.0 cm |
| Hilt | 17.6 cm |
29. 71/LIV-A *Shamshir*—Curved *shamshir* blade of very good quality bearing on one side an inscription which reads *Amal-i-Gulām Isfahānī* in *Nastāliq* script in Persian language. The Mughal hilt is gold-plated and then engraved with poppy design. The wooden sheath is covered with orange coloured velvet of later date but has an original chape ornamented in the style of the hilt.
- | | |
|--------------|----------------------------------|
| Provenance | Agra |
| School | Mughal |
| Date | Jahangir period (1605-1627 A.D.) |
| Total length | 99.1 cm |
| Blade | 83.0 cm |
| Hilt | 16.1 cm |
30. 72/LIV-A *Shamshir*—Blade is coloured, *jauhar* not visible. Pistol-shaped hilt of steel is covered with two pieces of horn and is fitted with two oval-shaped (one missing) piece of mother of pearls. Steel grip, steel guard and the cap were first gold-plated and then engraved. The two quillons and two langets are like the claws of the tiger. The modern sheath is covered with piece of moulded metal. Sheath is of copper which was first gold-plated then engraved with the design of the bunches of grapes and grape vine all over.
- | | |
|--------------|--------------------|
| Provenance | Deccan |
| School | Made to order |
| Date | Early 19th century |
| Total length | 97.7 cm |
| Blade | 77.7 cm |
| Hilt | 20.0 cm |
31. 100/LIV-A *Shamshir*—Curved blade of watered steel with a false edge which had been made at a later stage. On one side it bears a talismanic sign in a square and an inscription in gold. Another inscription was got inscribed on the other side of the blade at a later date. On the ricasso are engraved some design. The steel hilt, inscribed all over, is covered with two pieces of ivory and a steel cap. Modern sheath has upper and middle mountings

inscribed on both sides in the style of the hilt. The gold damascened chape belongs to some other sheath.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	17th century
Total length	95.9 cm
Blade	80.2 cm
Hilt	15.7 cm

32. 123/LIV-A *Shamshir*—Curved *shamshir* blade fitted with *Delhishāhī* hilt. The blade is inscribed in gold *Bandē Shāh Vilāyath Abbās, 1102 A.H., Amal-i-Asādullāh Isfahānī*. It also bears talisman. The watered steel of the blade is not clearly visible. The hilt is profuely damascened in floral design in gold. The wooden sheath is covered with black leather. The name of the smith is Asādullāh of Isfahan. The sword is dedicated to Bandā Shāh Vilāyath Ismāil. The verses are in Arabic.

Provenance	Deccan
School	Mughal impact
Date	1202 A.H.
Total length	101.2 cm
Blade	85.4 cm
Hilt	15.8 cm

33. 146/LIV-A *Shamshir*—Curved blade, *jauhar* not visible, *talwār* hilt has its pommel terminating into a mythical creature. The two quillons similarly terminate into the mythical animals. The hilt of steel is enamelled with floral, creeper and bud design. Damaged wooden sheath is covered with a *zari* cloth and has a *muhñāl* and a *tehnāl* enamelled in the style of the hilt.

Provenance	Rajasthan
School	Rajput
Date	Late 18th century
Total length	95.8 cm
Blade	79.5 cm
Hilt	16.3 cm

34. 149/LIV-A *Shamshir*—Curved blade of watered steel with two inscriptions in gold on one side of the blade. Steel hilt is covered with two pieces of ivory. The steel part of the pistol-shaped hilt bears traces of gold work. Wooden sheath, covered with black leather, has upper and middle fittings inscribed on both sides; the chape is missing.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	18th century
Total length	99.0 cm
Blade	83.1 cm
Hilt	15.9 cm

35. 172/LIV-A *Shamshīr*—Curved blade of watered steel, inscribed in gold on both sides. On one side the blade is inscribed from the top to the three-fourth of its length and records the names of Allāh in Arabic in Nastāliq script. The other half inscription on the same side of the blade is in Pushtū in gold. On the other side is recorded *Māshāllāh*. Pistol-hilt-shaped grip is covered with two pieces of mother of pearls (one broken). Wooden sheath is covered with black leather and has long *muhnāl*, long *tehnāl* and two small middle fittings—all of Damascus steel and damascened in gold.
- | | |
|--------------|-------------------|
| Provenance | Deccan |
| School | Mughal style |
| Date | Late 17th century |
| Total length | 98.5 cm |
| Blade | 82.3 cm |
| Hilt | 16.2 cm |
36. 223/LIV-A *Shamshīr*—Curved *shamshīr*, *jauhar* invisible; blade inscribed in gold in Arabic language and reads *Amal-i-Asādullāh Isfahānī*. The sword was manufactured for Sarkār Mīr Fateh Alī Khān. The *Delhīshāhī* hilt is profusely damascened in gold in floral and creeper design. The wooden sheath is covered with black leather.
- | | |
|--------------|-----------------------------------|
| Provenance | Deccan |
| School | Mughal impact |
| Date | Closing years of the 17th century |
| Total length | 98.1 cm |
| Blade | 81.2 cm |
| Hilt | 16.9 cm |
37. 224/LIV-A *Shamshīr*—Curved *shamshīr* blade, *jauhar* invisible. The inscription on the blade records the name of Asādullāh. It was manufactured for Bandā Shāh Vilāyath Osmān. The *Delhīshāhī* hilt is profusely ornamented in gold damascening in floral and creeper design and has a knuckle-guard. The wooden sheath is covered with black leather and is fitted with a *muhnāl* and a *tehnāl*, both in perforated silver.
- | | |
|--------------|-------------------|
| Provenance | Deccan |
| School | Mughal impact |
| Date | Late 17th century |
| Total length | 92.3 cm |
| Blade | 76.5 cm |
| Hilt | 15.8 cm |
38. 225/LIV-A *Shamshīr*—Blade of Damascus steel bearing a royal umbrella and an inscription *Jahāngīr* in Arabic. The *Delhīshāhī* hilt is profusely embellished with floral and creeper design. The wooden sheath is fitted with red velvet of later date and a chape (original) ornamented in the style of the hilt.
- | | |
|------------|----------------------------------|
| Provenance | Agra |
| School | Mughal |
| Date | Jahangir period (1605-1627 A.D.) |

Total length	90.8 cm
Blade	74.5 cm
Hilt	16.3 cm

39. 226/LIV-A *Shamshir*—Curved *shamshir* blade, *jauhar* not visible. It is engraved with the inscriptions in Arabic and Urdu which read: *Amal-i-Asādullāh Khurāshānī* (dedicated to) *Bandā Shāh Vilāyath Abbāsi, Ismāil and Sāfi*. The *Delhīshāhī* hilt is ornamented with floral work in gold damascening in *zarbuland* style. The damaged wooden sheath is covered with faded green velvet and has chape ornamented in the style of the hilt.

Provenance	Deccan
School	Mughal impact
Date	Late 17th century
Total length	100.0 cm
Blade	82.2 cm
Hilt	17.8 cm

40. 227/LIV-A *Shamshir*—Curved *shamshir* blade with Qurānic verses in gold in Arabic. Blade is fitted with a *Delhīshāhī* hilt which is profusely embellished with poppy flower design in gold. The wooden sheath is covered with faded yellow velvet having a chape ornamented in the style of the hilt.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	Mid. 17th century
Total length	94.5 cm
Blade	78.3 cm
Hilt	16.2 cm

41. 230/LIV-A *Shamshir*—Blade of Damascus steel bearing an inscription in gold in Arabic saying *Yā Alī*. The Mughal hilt is delicately embellished with *tehnishān* and *zarbuland* (combined) workmanship in gold in floral design. The wooden sheath is covered with black velvet of later date and has a chape of perforated silver of some other scabbard.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	Closing years of the 17th century
Total length	91.3 cm
Blade	74.6 cm
Hilt	16.7 cm

42. 231/LIV-A *Shamshir*—Curved blade fitted with a *talwār* hilt. The blade bears an inscription in gold *Amal-i-Ghaznīn amal-i Ousyār Jubbé Tūsī lakhaté jigār Shāh Vilāyath Hussain*. The smith Ousyār Jubbé Tūsī manufactured this sword and dedicated it to Shāh Vilāyat Hussain, The *Delhīshāhī* hilt is profusely embellished with gold in floral design in *tehnishān* style. It has a knuckle-guard. The wooden sheath covered with black velvet carries a

chape. Two silver rings are attached to the sheath.

Provenance	Deccan
School	Mughal
Period	18th century
Total length	97.2 cm
Blade	80.2 cm
Hilt	17.0 cm

43. 232/LIV-A *Shamshir*—Blade fitted to a *talwār* hilt; evenly curved blade of fine watered steel bears inscriptions in Nastāliq script and Arabic language along with an umbrella mark, inscription reads *Yak Imām Bāqir Adrik mé* meaning 'sustain me Oh Imām, Bāqir'. The name of the maker and the date 1083 A.H. is also given. The *Delhishāhī* hilt of steel is decorated with floral and creeper design against green enamelled base. The modern sheath bears original long chape ornamented in the style of the hilt. Maker's name is given as Muhammad-bin-Shāh Isfahānī.

Provenance	Delhi or Jaipur
School	Mughal
Date	1083 A.H.
Total length	90.4 cm
Blade	73.4 cm
Hilt	17.0 cm

44. 233/LIV-A *Shamshir*—Curved blade of watered steel bearing a talismanic sign in a square and two inscriptions engraved on one side of the blade. The blade has one groove and one depression on the back edge. The solid silver pistol-shaped hilt is engraved with floral design all over. The quillons and the langets show perforated design. Wooden sheath is covered with faded green velvet and has upper, middle and lower fittings of silver chased with frond design.

Provenance	Gujarat
School	Western Indian School
Date	18th century
Total length	96.4 cm
Blade	81.6 cm
Hilt	14.8 cm

45. 234/LIV-A *Shamshir*—Curved blade of Damascus steel with one deep groove on each side. On one side of the blade is engraved *Amal-i-Asādullāh*. Pistol-shaped hilt is covered with two pieces of walrus ivory and has a steel cap which is inscribed and records a verse from the holy *Qurān*. The guard of steel is engraved in relief on both sides and bears verses from the holy *Qurān*. Wooden sheath is covered with black velvet, has one upper and one lower fitting of steel; both of them are engraved in relief with *Nād-i-Ālī*. The chape is missing.

Provenance	Delhi or Jaipur
School	Mughal

Date	Mid 17th century
Total length	101.8 cm
Blade	86.8 cm
Hilt	15.0 cm

46. 235/LIV-A *Shamshīr*—Curved *shamshīr* blade with *talwār* hilt. The blade bears an Arabic inscription. The name of the smith is Kalb-i-*Alī* of Isfahān and the sword is dedicated to Bandā Shāh Vilāyath Safī and is dated 1108 A.H. The *Delhīshāhī* hilt bears traces of gold damascening. The original wooden sheath is fitted with modern saffron coloured velvet but its chape bearing gold damascened work, is original.

Provenance	Deccan
School	Mughal impact
Date	1108 A.H.
Total length	94.7 cm
Blade	78.4 cm
Hilt	16.3 cm

47. 236/LIV-A *Shamshīr*—Curved blade with a false edge at lower end. Damascus blade. On one side an inscription is damascened in gold and a monogram depicts a lion; some floral work is engraved near ricasso. The back edge bears a depression which gives the impression of *sosun-pattā*. Wooden sheath is covered with black leather and has upper, middle and lower mountings in perforated style. Pistol-shaped hilt is gold-plated and decorated with floral design.

Provenance	Gujarat
School	Western Indian School
Date	Late 17th century
Total length	103.1 cm
Blade	87.6 cm
Hilt	15.5 cm

48. 237/LIV-A *Shamshīr*—Watered steel blade bearing an inscription in gold damascening; pistol-shaped grip of steel is fitted with two pieces of walrus ivory surmounted with a steel cap. The steel guard bears inscription damascened in gold on both sides. The wooden sheath, covered with black leather, has geometrical design embossed upon it. The long chape of Damascus steel has its borders damascened in gold.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	Early 17th century
Total length	97.5 cm
Blade	82.0 cm
Hilt	15.5 cm

49. 249/LIV-A *Shamshīr*—Curved sword of watered steel; pistol-shaped hilt of steel is covered with two pieces of ivory engraved with floral design. Steel cap

and both sides of the guard carry inscriptions in high relief; the wooden sheath is covered with black leather; its upper and middle mountings are inscribed on both sides; chape is missing.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	Early 17th century
Total length	100.3 cm
Blade	86.3 cm
Hilt	14.0 cm

50. 254/LIV-A *Shamshir*—Curved blade of watered steel; hilt covered with two pieces of damaged walrus ivory. The steel cap surmounting the pistol-shaped hilt and the guard below are enamelled in green and blue with the figure of a fish on one side. Wooden sheath, covered with black leather, has upper, middle and lower fittings engraved and enamelled.

Provenance	Jaipur
School	Rajput
Date	18th century
Total length	95.7 cm
Blade	80.5 cm
Hilt	15.2 cm

51. 260/LIV-A *Shamshir*—Curved blade of watered steel; hilt covered with two pieces of walrus ivory. The cap of the pistol-shaped hilt and its guard below are enamelled. Modern sheath has original upper, middle and lower mountings, similarly enamelled.

Provenance	Jaipur
School	Rajput
Date	18th century
Total length	91.8 cm
Blade	76.0 cm
Hilt	15.8 cm

52. 274/LIV-A *Shamshir*—Curved blade of Damascus steel with an inscription engraved on one side; pistol-shaped hilt of steel is encased with two pieces of walrus ivory. The steel cap and the guard below are damascened in gold. Sheath modern.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	Late 17th century
Total length	92.1 cm
Blade	77.2 cm
Hilt	14.9 cm

53. 275/LIV-A *Shamshir*—Curved blade of watered steel of very good quality. On one side it bears an inscription in gold in Persian which reads *Amal-i-Asādullāh Isfa-*

hān. The steel hilt is embossed with beautiful design chiselled out of the hilt itself. The wooden sheath has a maroon velvet which is fitted with an original chape, cut out of the steel, in the style of the hilt. The *muhāl* is missing. The hilt and the chape are of very special interest.

Provenance	Agra
School	Mughal
Date	Jahangir period (1605-1627 A.D.)
Total length	101.5 cm
Blade	84.6 cm
Hilt	16.9 cm

54. 279/LIV-A *Shamshīr*—Blade of watered steel bearing inscription in gold and the date which reads *Amal-i-Asādullāh Isfahānī Bandā Shāh Vilāyath Abbās 1052 A.H.* The *Delhīshahī* steel hilt is chiselled with curvilinear design all over. The wooden sheath covered with brown leather has a long chape ornamented in the style of the hilt.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	1052 A.H.
Total length	95.9 cm
Blade	80.2 cm
Hilt	15.7 cm

55. 285/LIV-A *Shamshīr*—In the style of *teghā* made of Damascus steel blade. It is single-edged on one side and double-edged at the lower end. One side of the blade is profusely embellished from top to 3/4th of the blade and carries inscription in *zarbuland* gold damasening. Some of the verses are from the holy *Qurān* and the remaining says "lives of the brave is protected by the drawn sword" and "the heaven is under the shadow of the sword". The *shamshīr* hilt of jade is ornamented with gold. The wooden sheath is covered with shagreen leather and is fitted with upper, lower and two middle fittings; all these four fittings are damascened in *zarbuland* style in floral and creeper design in gold.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	Early 18th century
Total length	100.4 cm
Blade	84.8 cm
Hilt	15.6 cm

56. 287/LIV-A *Shamshīr*—Curved blade of watered steel bearing an inscription damascened in gold; pistol-shaped hilt has two ivory cheeks and a steel cap. Hilt is damascened in gold. Sheath modern.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	Early 17th century
Total length	98.0 cm

Blade	82.3 cm
Hilt	15.7 cm

57. 289/LIV-A *Shamshir*—Curved blade of Damascus steel inscribed on one side with dots; steel hilt is covered with two pieces of walrus ivory and is covered with a steel cap which is also inscribed. The bands of the steel grip are engraved with animal figures. Wooden sheath is covered with faded brown velvet and has upper and middle fitting inscribed with illegible inscription in gold. The chape is of some other sheath.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Mughal
Date	Mid. 17th century
Total length	102.5 cm
Blade	86.8 cm
Hilt	15.7 cm

TALWĀR

58. 1/LIV *Talwār—Nimchā talwār*, curved blade, single-edged from the beginning and double-edged at the lower end. *Delhīshahī* hilt is decorated with gold in floral design. The wooden sheath, covered with the red faded velvet, has a gold damascened chape. The other fittings of the sheath are missing.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Mughal
Date	Hilt-early 17th century; Blade-18th century
Total length	87.7 cm
Blade	72.3 cm
Hilt	15.4 cm

59. 6/LVI *Talwār*—Curved blade with a false edge at the lower end. Mughal hilt is damascened in gold all over with floral and creeper design in *tehnishān* style. Wooden sheath is covered with faded green velvet and has a chape ornamented in the style of the hilt.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	Late 17th century
Total length	92.4 cm
Blade	76.3 cm
Hilt	16.1 cm

60. 6/LIV-A *Talwār*—Single-edged straight blade, double-edged at the lower end. Mughal hit with a buckle at the top and a knuckle-guard is damascened all over in gold in floral and creeper design. Sheath modern with original chape ornamented in the style of the hilt.

- | | | |
|--|--------------|-------------------|
| | School | Deccani |
| | Date | Late 18th century |
| | Total length | 106.5 cm |
| | Blade | 88.8 cm |
| | Hilt | 17.7 cm |
61. 9/LIV-A *Talwār*—Straight blade single-edged on one side and double-edged at the lower end. Marathā hilt damascened in gold in floral design with knuckle-guard. The wooden sheath is covered with shagreen leather.
- | | | |
|--|--------------|--------------|
| | Provenance | Maharashtra |
| | School | Maratha |
| | Date | 17th century |
| | Total length | 107.7 cm |
| | Blade | 91.0 cm |
| | Hilt | 16.7 |
62. 12/LIV-A *Talwār*—Double-edged straight plain blade. The *Shāh Jahānī* hilt with a knuckle-guard is profusely damascened in floral and creeper design in gold. The hilt has perforated plates on the quillons and a buckle at the pommel. The wooden sheath, covered with black leather, has a gold damascened chape.
- | | | |
|--|--------------|-------------------|
| | Provenance | Maharashtra |
| | School | Maratha |
| | Date | Late 18th century |
| | Total length | 100.8 cm |
| | Blade | 82.5 cm |
| | Hilt | 18.3 cm |
63. 13/LIV-A *Talwār*—Single-edged from the top and double-edged at the lower end; blade plain with some punch marks. The *Delhīshāhī* hilt has globular pommel and a knuckle-guard. The entire hilt is damascened in gold in floral design. Wooden sheath with yellow velvet has a gold damascened chape.
- | | | |
|--|--------------|-------------------|
| | Provenance | North India |
| | School | Mughal |
| | Date | Late 18th century |
| | Total length | 107.4 cm |
| | Blade | 90.5 cm |
| | Hilt | 16.9 cm |
64. 16/LIV-A *Talwār*—Straight, single-edged blade with a false edge on the lower side. Usual heavy hilt with a buckle is damascened all over in gold in floral and creeper design. Sheath modern with an original chape.
- | | | |
|--|--------------|-------------------|
| | Provenance | Rajasthan |
| | School | Rajput |
| | Date | Late 18th century |
| | Total length | 97.9 cm |

Blade	78.5 cm
Hilt	19.4 cm

65. 17/LIV

Talwār—Plain curved blade with a false edge at the lower end, on one side is an umbrella damascened in gold. The Mughal hilt is ornamented in gold damascening in floral and creeper design in *zarbuland* and *tehmishān* (combined) style. The Wooden sheath is covered with black leather and has a chape of perforated silver of some other sheath.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	17th century
Total length	92.1 cm
Blade	75.3 cm
Hilt	16.8 cm

66. 17/LIV-A

Talwār—Single-edged with a false edge at the lower one, back side chased. Mughal hilt has a circular pommel; an oval grip, short quillons and short langets. Wooden sheath, covered with shagreen leather, has *tehnāl* and *muhnāl* damascened in the style of the hilt.

Provenance	Deccan
School	Blade European, hilt and sheath of Mughal style produced in Deccan
Date	Late 18th century
Total length	102.5 cm
Blade	85.9 cm
Hilt	16.6 cm

67. 19/LIV

Talwār—Curved blade, single-edged on the convex side and double-edged at the lower end. On one side of the blade are engraved two stamps reading: *Kārīgar Hasan Alī* and *Hussain Alī*. Usual *talwār* hilt is damascened in two kinds of gold in floral and creeper design. Modern sheath has original chape damascened like the hilt.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	c 1700 A.D.
Total length	90.0 cm
Blade	74.6 cm
Hilt	15.4 cm

68. 21/LIV-A

Talwār—Straight, single-edged, flexible blade, double-edged at the lower end. Usual *talwār* hilt is damascened in gold all over inscribed with Persian inscriptions which read: *Shāh-e-Mandan, Sher-e-Yazdhān Kuwate Parwar Digār Lafata illāh Alī la Saifa Zulfikār* and verses from the holy *Qurān*. Wooden sheath, covered with black leather, has a chape in the style of the hilt.

Provenance	Hyderabad
------------	-----------

School	Deccan
Date	18th century
Total length	104.5 cm
Blade	87.5 cm
Hilt	17.0 cm

69. 22/LIV-A *Talwār*—Straight, single-edged blade, double-edged at the lower end. The part near the back edge has *motī daudattī* design consisting of steel balls inserted into the slits. There are four parts and in each of them 18 to 20 steel balls are inserted. On one side of the blade the impression of a crown and some illigible inscrtiption are seen. Solid silver hilt of one piece terminates into a figure at its pommel; the eyes of the figure are studded with some semi-precious stones.

Provenance	Mysore (Karnataka)
School	South India
Date	c 1790 A.D.
Total length	79.8 cm
Blade	65.5 cm
Hilt	14.6 cm

70. 27/LIV-A *Talwār*—Curved *shamshīr* blade of watered steel; on one side is damascened an umbrella in gold. Usual *talwār* hilt along with its buckle is damascened all over in gold in floral and creeper design in *tehnishān* style. Wooden sheath, covered with green faded velvet has a chape ornamented in the style of the hilt.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	Mid. 17th century
Total length	97.4 cm
Blade	81.3 cm
Hilt	16.1 cm

71. 29/LIV-A *Talwār*—Curved, single-edged blade of Damascus steel. Usual *talwār* hilt has a perforated buckle, a saucer pommel with its rim curved upwards, oval grip, quillons with dome-shaped tops and triangular langets. Entire hilt is covered with thick gold layer and engraved with sunflower in oval panels. Wooden sheath, covered with faded green velvet, has a chape ornamented in the style of the hilt.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Mughal
Date	Mid. 17th century
Total length	102.2 cm
Blade	83.6 cm
Hilt	18.6 cm

72. 31/LIV-A *Talwār*—*Shamshīr* blade fitted to a *talwār* hilt with a knuckle-guard. The

hilt is profusely ornamented with gold work in low relief. Sheath modern.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	18th century
Total length	108.3 cm
Blade	90.2 cm
Hilt	18.1 cm

73. 34/LIII *Talwār*—Curved blade with a false edge. Two grooves and one flower are engraved on each side. Rajput hilt is profusely damascened in gold all over in floral and creeper design. The wooden sheath is covered with black leather and has a chape ornamented in the style of the hilt.

Provenance	Rajasthan
School	Rajput
Date	Late 17th century
Total length	97.3 cm
Blade	81.9 cm
Hilt	16.3 cm

74. 36/LVI *Talwār*—Curved blade, single-edged on the convex side, double-edged at the lower end; three grooves on each side of the blade. On one side is stamped *Muhammad Rāji* in Persian. The usual *talwār* hilt is damascened all over in gold in floral and creeper design in combined *zarbuland* and *tehnishān* styles. Wooden sheath is covered with damaged yellow velvet and has a chape.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	c 1750 A.D.
Total length	92.5 cm
Blade	76.7 cm
Hilt	15.8 cm

75. 37/LVI *Talwār*—Similar to No.303/LVI with some change in design.

Provenance	North India
School	Not known
Date	Late 18th century
Total length	79.3 cm
Blade	63.5 cm
Hilt	15.8 cm

76. 38/LVI *Talwār*—Curved blade, single-edged with a false edge at the lower end. Usual *talwār* hilt damascened all over in gold in floral and creeper design in *zarbuland* style. Wooden sheath is covered with black leather and is fitted with a chape ornamented in the style of the hilt.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani

- | | | |
|--|--------------|-------------------|
| | Date | Late 18th century |
| | Total length | 99.9 cm |
| | Blade | 84.0 cm |
| | Hilt | 15.9 cm |
77. 40/LVI *Talwār*—Curved blade with one groove on each side. One side is engraved with a talismanic sign and the inscription reads: *Buddhāh Yā Kāziyal Hajāt Amal-i-Mohammad Misrī* and Arabic couplet. Usual *talwār* hilt is damascened all over in gold in *tehnishān* style. Wooden sheath, with black leather, has a chape, similarly ornamented.
- | | | |
|--|--------------|-----------------------------------|
| | Provenance | North India |
| | School | Mughal |
| | Date | Closing years of the 17th century |
| | Total length | 96.1 cm |
| | Blade | 80.5 cm |
| | Hilt | 15.6 cm |
78. 45/LIV-A *Talwār*—Straight blade, single-edged. Two crescents are engraved on either side of the blade and on one side a gold damascened umbrella is seen. The Mughal hilt is damascened in gold in floral design in medallions all over in *tehnishān* style. The wooden sheath is covered with black leather and has a chape similarly ornamented.
- | | | |
|--|--------------|--|
| | Provenance | Hyderabad |
| | School | Blade-East India Company; Hilt-Deccani |
| | Date | Early 18th century |
| | Total length | 97.4 cm |
| | Blade | 81.0 cm |
| | Hilt | 16.4 cm |
79. 48/LVI *Talwār*—Curved blade, two grooves on each side. Some stars and illegible English words are engraved on the blade. Usual hilt is divided into oval panels and is inscribed all over in gold. On the upper part of the pommel four names of Allāh are inscribed. On the grip is engraved *Nād-i-Ālī* and on the reverse side of the pommel is a Persian couplet which reads: *Har Bālā-i-pesh āyad āyan wakhan Hajtad bar Lafata illāh Ālī ha sanja illā Zulfikār.* (At the time of difficulty recite *Lafata illāh Ālī La safā* seventy times) Wooden sheath, covered with brown leather, has a gold damascened chape.
- | | | |
|--|--------------|--------------|
| | Provenance | Hyderabad |
| | School | Deccani |
| | Date | 18th century |
| | Total length | 96.1 cm |
| | Blade | 78.1 cm |
| | Hilt | 18.0 cm |
80. 49/LIV-A *Talwār*—*Nāgan* type, double-edged, zig-zag blade inscribed with the name

'Solingen' on both the sides. The *Delhishāhi* hilt is damascened all over with conventional flowers. The wooden sheath, covered with black leather, has a gold damascened chape.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	East India Company style, produced in Deccan
Date	Early 19th century
Total length	91.9 cm
Blade	76.0 cm
Hilt	15.9 cm

81. 51/LVI *Talwār*—Curved, single-edged from the beginning and double-edged at the lower end. The blade has three shallow grooves and the design of an umbrella damascened in gold. The hilt, consisting of a perforated tang, saucer pommel, oval grip and short quillons, is damascened in frond design in gold in Hyderābādī technique. The wooden sheath is encased with faded red velvet and has a gold damascened chape. A damaged sword-knot is tied to the tang.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Hyderābādī
Date	c 1700 A.D.
Total length	91.2 cm
Blade	75.0 cm
Hilt	16.2 cm

82. 52/LVI *Talwār*—Curved blade, single-edged, two grooves on each side; one gold damascened umbrella on one side and on the other some letters in English. The Mughal hilt is ornamented all over with floral and creeper design in *zarbuland* and *tehnishān* (combined) style. The wooden sheath is covered with damaged yellow velvet and has a chape decorated in the style of the hilt.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Hyderābādī
Date	Late 17th century
Total length	94.3 cm
Blade	77.7 cm
Hilt	16.6 cm

83. 53/LVI *Talwār*—Curved sword, single-edged from the beginning and double-edged at the lower end; the blade has three grooves and several punch marks. The hilt has perforated tang, disc pommel, oval grip, stumpy quillons and short langets. It is damascened all over in gold in floral and creeper design in Hyderābādī style. The wooden sheath is encased with damaged silk. The chape is also ornamented in Hyderābādī style.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Hyderābādī

Date	Hilt-late 17th century; Blade-late 18th century
Total length	92.8 cm
Blade	76.9 cm
Hilt	15.9 cm

84. 54/LVI *Talwār*—Same as No.36/LVI but without inscription. Some illegible English letters are inscribed on both sides of the blade.
- | | |
|--------------|---------------------------|
| Provenance | Hyderabad |
| School | East India Company impact |
| Date | c 1750 A.D. |
| Total length | 97.4 cm |
| Blade | 80.7 cm |
| Hilt | 16.7 cm |
85. 55/LIV-A *Talwār*—Long, straight blade, single-edged on one side and double-edged at the lower end with two depressions on each side. Blade is engraved with inscription *Mīr Ālam Shams̄hīr 1220 A.H.* Usual *talwār* hilt is damascened all over in floral and creeper design. The modern sheath is covered with faded velvet and has a chape damascened in gold.
- | | |
|--------------|------------|
| Provenance | Hyderabad |
| School | Hyderābādī |
| Date | 1220 A.H. |
| Total length | 105.1 cm |
| Blade | 86.7 cm |
| Hilt | 16.4 cm |
86. 55/LVI' *Talwār*—Curved sword, single-edged from the beginning and double-edged at the lower end. The blade has two grooves. The hilt has a perforated tang, disc pommel, oval grip, small and stumpy quillons and triangular langets and is profusely damascened in gold in floral and creeper design in Hyderābādī technique. The wooden sheath is covered with damaged silk and its chape is damascened in gold. The upper fitting is missing.
- | | |
|--------------|-------------|
| Provenance | Hyderabad |
| School | Hyderābādī |
| Date | c 1700 A.D. |
| Total length | 91.3 cm |
| Blade | 75.0 cm |
| Hilt | 16.8 cm |
87. 56/LVI *Talwār*—Curved plain blade with three grooves on each side and a false edge at the lower end. One royal umbrella is damascened in gold. Mughal hilt is damascened in gold in creeper design all over in *zarbuland* style. Wooden sheath is covered with green faded velvet and has a chape damascened in gold. The chape is of some other sheath.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Hyderābādī
Date	c 1700 A.D.
Total length	97.8 cm
Blade	81.8 cm
Hilt	16.0 cm

88. 57/LVI *Talwār*—Curved blade with a false edge, at the lower end are two grooves. Some English letters are engraved on both sides, while on one side an umbrella in faded gold is seen. The Mughal hilt is embellished with floral and creeper design all over in *zarbuland* style. The wooden sheath is covered with brown leather and a perforated silver chape of some other sheath.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Hyderābādī
Date	c 1700 A.D.
Total length	98.7 cm
Blade	78.0 cm
Hilt	15.7 cm

89. 57/LIV-A *Talwār*—Straight sword, single-edged on one side and double-edged at the lower end. Some English letters are engraved on both sides with a gold damascened umbrella on one side of the blade. The Mughal hilt is inscribed all over with 99 names of God in Nastāliq script of Persian language. The sheath is modern.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Blade-East India Company; Hilt-Deccani
Date	c 1750 A.D.
Total length	98.0 cm
Blade	81.9 cm
Hilt	16.1 cm

90. 65/LIV-A *Talwār*—Curved *shamshīr* blade, *jauhar* not visible. Hilt of solid silver has a pommel. Both quillons and the tops of the knuckle-guard are shaped like tigers. The entire hilt along with its knuckle-guard, except the tiger heads, is plain. The wooden sheath is covered with yellow velvet and has upper, middle and long lower fittings of perforated silver. The upper and middle fittings also carry two buckles for holding the sword strap.

Provenance	Serirragapatnam (Karnataka)
School	Tipu School
Date	c 1790 A.D.
Total length	90.9 cm
Blade	73.9 cm
Hilt	17.0 cm

91. 66/LIV-A *Talwār*—A rare sword of Damascus steel of *shamshīr* type. The pieces of

Damascus steel of some other type have been fitted to the blade, also of Damascus steel. The two kinds of steels, both of Damascus variety, can be distinguished. The Mughal hilt is decorated with floral and creeper design in high relief. Sheath is of later date.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Mughal
Date	c 1700 A.D.
Total length	96.2 cm
Blade	80.0 cm
Hilt	16.2 cm

92. 72/LIII *Talwār*—Single-edged with a false edge at the lower end, plain blade; a gold damascened umbrella on one side. The Mughal hilt is gold damascened in floral and creeper design all over. The wooden sheath is covered with black leather and is fitted with a chape ornamented in the style of the hilt.

Provenance	North India
School	Late Mughal
Date	Early 18th century
Total length	91.6 cm
Blade	75.0 cm
Hilt	16.6 cm

93. 74/LIII *Talwār*—Curved blade, single-edged on one side and double-edged at the lower end giving the impression of a *sosun-pattā*. The blade has two shallow grooves and is rusted. The hilt has a perforated tang, circular small pommel, oval grip, short and stumpy quillons and triangular langets. The entire hilt is damascened in frond design in gold in *tehnishān* style. The wooden sheath is covered with black leather and is fitted with a gold damascened chape.

Provenance	North India
School	Late Mughal
Date	Late 18th century
Total length	84.9 cm
Blade	69.0 cm
Hilt	15.9 cm

94. 75/LIII *Talwār*—Curved blade with a false edge on the lower end. The hilt is damascened in gold all over and depicts landscape in medallions showing tombs, rivers, floral and creeper design. The hilt has a knuckle-guard which is also decorated with landscapes. The wooden sheath is covered with black leather and is mounted with a chape ornamented in the style of the hilt.

School	Deccani
Date	17th century
Total length	87.8 cm

- | | | |
|--|-------|---------|
| | Blade | 71.8 cm |
| | Hilt | 16.0 cm |
95. 76/LIII *Talwār*—Curved blade looking like a *sosun-paṭṭā* with a false edge at the lower end and two grooves on each side. The Mughal hilt is damascened in gold in *tehnishān* style all over. The woen sheath is covered with yellow velvet and has a chape ornamented in the style of hilt.
- | | | |
|--|--------------|--|
| | Provenance | Hyderabad |
| | School | Blade-East India Company; hilt-Deccani |
| | Date | Early 18th century |
| | Total length | 87.5 cm |
| | Blade | 71.3 cm |
| | Hilt | 16.2 cm |
96. 78/LIII *Talwār*—Curved blade with a false edge at the lower end. Mughal hilt is decorated with small *būṭī* design in gold all over. The wooden sheath is covered with black leather and has a gold damascened chape of some other sheath.
- | | | |
|--|--------------|--------------------|
| | Provenance | Noth India |
| | School | Late Mughal |
| | Date | Early 18th century |
| | Total length | 87.4 cm |
| | Blade | 71.7 cm |
| | Hilt | 15.7 cm |
97. 81/LIII *Talwār*—Curved blade looking like a *sosun-paṭṭā* with a false edge at the lower end. On one side an umbrella in gold is damascened. The Mughal hilt is damascened in gold with landscape showing river, hill, flowers, etc., in *tehnishān* style. The wooden sheath is covered with red velvet and has a chape ornamented in the style of the hilt.
- | | | |
|--|--------------|-------------------|
| | Provenance | Hyderabad |
| | School | Deccani |
| | Date | Late 17th century |
| | Total length | 90.0 cm |
| | Blade | 73.0 cm |
| | Hilt | 17.0 cm |
98. 84/LIV *Talwār*—Curved plain blade of welded Damascus, single-edged from the beginning and double-edged at the lower part. The *Delhishāhi* hilt is damascened all over in gold in floral and creeper design and has a knuckle-guard. Sheath modern.
- | | | |
|--|--------------|--------------|
| | Provenance | Rajasthan |
| | School | Rajput |
| | Date | 18th century |
| | Total length | 101.8 cm |
| | Blade | 82.2 cm |
| | Hilt | 19.6 cm |

99. 122/LVI *Talwār*—Curved blade with a false edge at lower end. On one side an umbrella is damascened in gold. The Mughal hilt is decorated with gold damascening in floral and creeper design in *zarbuland* style; in between are studded nails of silver. The wooden sheath is covered with brown leather and has a gold damascened chape of some other sheath.
- | | |
|--------------|-------------------|
| Provenance | Hyderabad |
| School | Deccani |
| Date | Late 17th century |
| Total length | 94.5 cm |
| Blade | 78.3 cm |
| Hilt | 16.2 cm |
100. 128/LVI *Talwār*—Curved plain blade with a false edge at the lower end. On one side an umbrella damascened in gold and a few English letters are engraved on the blade. The Mughal hilt is ornamented with gold damascening in floral and creeper design all over in *zarbuland* and *tehnishān* (Combined) style. The wooden sheath is covered with brown leather and has a chape of gold of some other sheath.
- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| Provenance | Hyderabad |
| School | Deccani |
| Date | 17th century |
| Total length | 98.8 cm |
| Blade | 82.7 cm |
| Hilt | 16.1 cm |
101. 135/LIV *Talwār*—Straight, ribbed plain blade, single-edged on top and double-edged at the lower end. The usual heavy hilt with a buckle is damascened all over with floral and creeper design and has a knuckle-guard. Sheath modern.
- | | |
|--------------|-------------|
| Provenance | Rajasthan |
| School | Rajput |
| Date | c 1740 A.D. |
| Total length | 103.1 cm |
| Blade | 85.0 cm |
| Hilt | 18.1 cm |
102. 142/LVI *Talwār*—Curved, single-edged blade looking like that of a *sosun-pattā* with two grooves on one side and three grooves on the other. On one side of the blade an umbrella, three tiny inscriptions in an unidentified language and a winged bird are engraved while on the other side fifteen dots are visible. The hilt is decorated with floral design in *zarbuland* style. It also has a gold-plated knuckle-guard. The wooden sheath is covered with brown leather and has a chape ornamented in the style of the hilt.
- | | |
|--------------|-------------------|
| Provenance | Maharashtra |
| School | Maratha |
| Date | Late 17th century |
| Total length | 74.5 cm |

- | | | |
|--|-------|---------|
| | Blade | 58.4 cm |
| | Hilt | 16.1 cm |
103. 162/LVI *Talwār*—Curved blade, single-edged on one side and double-edged at the lower end. It has three grooves and a number of dots punched. The hilt has a perforated tang with a damaged sword-knot, saucer pommel, oval grip, stubby quillons and pointed langets and is ornamented all over with frond design in gold in *tehnishān* technique. The damaged wooden sheath is encased with faded velvet of violet colour and has a silver chape.
- | | | |
|--|--------------|--------------------|
| | Provenance | Delhi or Agra |
| | School | Late Mughal |
| | Date | Early 18th century |
| | Total length | 77.1 cm |
| | Blade | 60.9 cm |
| | Hilt | 16.2 cm |
104. 165/LVI *Talwār*—Single-edged, curved blade with a false edge at lower end, one groove on the blade. On one side, some dotted designs are seen. Usual *talwār* hilt is damascened all over in gold in the design of leaf in relief. Sheath modern.
- | | | |
|--|--------------|--------------|
| | Provenance | Hyderabad |
| | School | Deccani |
| | Date | 18th century |
| | Total length | 87.1 cm |
| | Blade | 70.8 cm |
| | Hilt | 16.3 cm |
105. 167/LVI *Talwār*—Curved blade, single-edged with a false edge at the lower end. Hilt of the blade has been damascened in gold against blue background. It portrays floral designs, the figure of a knight in uniform and the British crown on both sides. The solid silver hilt has its pommel and both quillons carved in the shape of tigers. It bears an English inscription. The wooden sheath has a damaged purple covering and a silver chape.
- | | | |
|--|--------------|--------------------|
| | Provenance | Hyderabad |
| | School | East India Company |
| | Date | 19th century |
| | Total length | 94.9 cm |
| | Blade | 78.3 cm |
| | Hilt | 16.6 cm |
106. 169/LVI *Talwār*—Curved plain blade with a false edge at the lower end and three shallow grooves on each side. Mughal hilt is inscribed with four chapters of the holy *Qurān* namely *Fatehah*, *Nas*, *Ikhlas* and *Lahāh* in gold damascening. The wooden sheath is covered with faded purple velvet and is mounted with upper and lower fittings.
- | | | |
|--|------------|--|
| | Provenance | Hyderabad |
| | School | Blade-East India Company; Hilt-Deccani |
| | Date | 18th century |

Total length	97.1 cm
Blade	80.5 cm
Hilt	16.6 cm

107. 183/LVI *Talwār*—Curved, single-edged on one side and double-edged at the lower end; the blade has three shallow grooves and several dots pressed on it. The hilt consists of a dome-shaped tang fitted with a perforated ring, saucer pommel, oval grip, short and stubby quillons and triangular langets. The entire hilt is damascened in gold in *zarbuland* technique. The wooden scabbard is encased with faded red velvet and is fitted with upper and middle fittings and chape.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Late Mughal
Date	Early 18th century
Total length	93.7 cm
Blade	77.5 cm
Hilt	16.2 cm

108. 189/LVI *Talwār*—Curved, single-edged on one side and double-edged at the lower end. The blade has two grooves at the upper part and one deep groove at the lower part and has an inscription. The hilt has a perforated tang, big disc pommel, oval and ridged grip, quillons with semi-circular tops and long langets. The entire hilt is gold-plated in *koftgāri* and at places it is damascened in Hyderābādī style. It has a knuckle-guard which is similarly ornamented. The damascened wooden sheath is encased with faded silk and has a chape damascened in gold.

Provenance	Bikaner, Rajasthan
School	Rajput
Date	Early 18th century
Total length	92.7 cm
Blade	74.4 cm
Hilt	18.3 cm

109. 198/LVI *Talwār*—Slightly curved plain blade with a false edge at lower end. A mark of umbrella is in gold on the blade. The Mughal hilt is damascened all over in gold in floral and creeper design in *zarbuland* style. Wooden sheath is covered with brown leather and has a chape of some other sheath damascened in gold.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	17th century
Total length	96.8 cm
Blade	80.7 cm
Hilt	16.1 cm

110. 199/LVI *Talwār*—Single-edged from the beginning and double-edged at the lower end; curved sword; blade is European and was added later. It has three ribs. The hilt has a perforated tang, a small pommel, an oval-shaped grip,

very small quillons and triangular langets. The whole hilt is profusely damascened in gold in floral and creeper design in typical Hyderābādī style. The wooden sheath is encased with faded brown cloth. Its chape is damascened in gold and the upper fitting is missing.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	Hilt-late 17th century Blade-late 18th century
Total length	94.6 cm
Blade	77.8 cm
Hilt	16.8 cm

111. 202/LVI *Talwār*—Fitted with a *shamshīr* blade, curved, *jauhar* not visible. On one side a stamp in gold is engraved and the blade near ricasso is strengthened by additional metal. The Mughal hilt is gold damascened in floral and creeper design all over. The damaged wooden sheath is covered with brown leather and a perforated chape of silver of some other sheath.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	Late 17th century
Total length	92.6 cm
Blade	76.7 cm
Hilt	15.9 cm

112. 203/LVI *Talwār*—Single-edged curved blade with a false edge at the lower end. The blade shows some dots engraved upon it. Mughal hilt is damascened all over in medallions. The wooden sheath is covered with brown leather and has a gold damascened chape of some other sheath.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	17th century
Total length	94.7 cm
Blade	78.5 cm
Hilt	16.2 cm

113. 207/LIV *Talwār*—Fitted with a *shamshīr* blade of early date, but at a later stage this was shaped to look like *sosun-paṭṭā*. On one side of the blade good quality *jauhar* is visible and the other side (probably polished) is plain. The plain side has a shallow stamp in gold. The Mughal hilt is of Damascus steel with its border damascened in gold in floral design. The wooden sheath is covered with shagreen leather and has a chape ornamented in the style of the hilt.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Sultanate period
Date	Late 15th century
Total length	90.8 cm
Blade	73.7 cm
Hilt	17.1 cm

114. 210/LIV *Talwār*—Serpentine blade of Damascus steel, single-edged. Usual *talwār* hilt with a buckle is damascened in gold and silver in floral and creeper design. The ornamentation has faded at places.
- | | |
|--------------|--------------------|
| Provenance | Uttar Pradesh |
| School | North Indian |
| Date | Early 17th century |
| Total length | 101.7 cm |
| Blade | 85.4 cm |
| Hilt | 16.3 cm |
115. 213/LIV *Talwār*—Curved blade with edge on convex side and a false edge at the lower end. The blade on both the sides is divided into panels and is engraved with the ten incarnations of Vishṇu on each side. A few of the incarnations cannot be identified. Usual *talwār* hilt bears traces of gold and silver damascening.
- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| Provenance | Rajasthan |
| School | Rajput |
| Date | 18th century |
| Total length | 93.1 cm |
| Blade | 76.6 cm |
| Hilt | 16.5 cm |
116. 222/LIV *Talwār*—Curved *shamshīr* blade of Damascus steel bearing three grooves on each side and an inscription reading *Amal-i-Asādullāh*. Usual *talwār* hilt with a buckle is damascened all over in gold in floral and creeper design. Wooden sheath is covered with black leather and has a chape matching the hilt in ornamentation.
- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| Provenance | North India |
| School | Mughal |
| Date | 18th century |
| Total length | 101.2 cm |
| Blade | 83.5 cm |
| Hilt | 17.7 cm |
117. 228/LIV-A *Talwār*—Curved blade engraved in relief all over on both sides with the verses from the holy *Qurān* and the date 1102 A.H. on one side. Usual *talwār* hilt is inscribed in gold all over with *Nād-i-Ālī* and *Sūrāh Ikhlās*.
- | | |
|--------------|-------------|
| Provenance | North India |
| School | Mughal |
| Date | 1102 A.H. |
| Total length | 95.4 cm |
| Blade | 78.8 cm |
| Hilt | 16.6 cm |
118. 229/LIV *Talwār*—Curved *shamshīr* blade of Damascus steel, engraved on one side with inscription reading: *Yā Kasīval hajād, Bande Shāh Vilāyath Abbāsī, Bande Shāh Vilāyath Ismail, Bande Shāh Vilāyat Hanagī, Amal-i-Asādullāh Khurāsānī*. On the other side is recorded: *Yā dajiyāl Baliyāth*. The usual *talwār* hilt is

divided into panels and is damascened all over in floral and creeper design. Modern sheath has an original chape.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	17th century
Total length	104.0 cm
Blade	88.2 cm
Hilt	15.8 cm

119. 233/LIV *Talwār*—Curved blade with edge on the convex side and a false edge at the lower end. The blade on both the sides is divided into panels and is engraved with the ten incarnations of Vishṇu on each side. Some of the incarnations cannot be identified. Usual *talwār* hilt bears traces of gold and silver damascening.

Provenance	Rajasthan
School	Rājput
Date	18th century
Total length	96.4 cm
Blade	81.6 cm
Hilt	14.8 cm

120. 238/LIV-A *Talwār*—Fitted with a curved *shamshīr* blade having an illegible inscription in gold. *Jauhar* not visible. The Mughal hilt is decorated with floral and creeper design in *zarbuland* style. It has a knuckle-guard. The wooden sheath is covered with similar ornamented yellow velvet and has two metal mounts and a chape damascened in gold of some other sheath.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	Blade—Early 17th century Hilt—early 18th century
Total length	98.2 cm
Blade	82.1 cm
Hilt	16.1 cm

121. 239/LIV-A *Talwār*—Curved *shamshīr* blade of Damascus steel. On one side of the blade is engraved *kazā sulemān* (the work of slaves). Usual *talwār* hilt is damascened all over in floral and creeper design in gold. Wooden sheath is covered with faded black leather and has a long chape ornamented in the style of the hilt.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	Mid. 17th century
Total length	91.6 cm
Blade	74.7 cm
Hilt	16.9 cm

122. 251/LIV-A *Talwār*—Curved *shamshīr* blade fitted to a Mughal *talwār* hilt. The hilt is de-

corated with floral and creeper design in gold damascening in *zarbuland* style all over. Sheath modern.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	18th century
Total length	104.9 cm
Blade	88.5 cm
Hilt	16.4 cm

123. 252/LIV-A *Talwār*—Curved *shamshīr* blade, *jauhar* not visible. Mughal hilt embellished all over with gold damascening in floral and creeper design in *zarbuland* style. Wooden sheath is covered with red faded velvet and has a chape damascened in gold in the style of the hilt.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	17th century
Total length	102.0 cm
Blade	85.1 cm
Hilt	16.9 cm

124. 257/LIV-A *Talwār*—Curved *shamshīr* blade fitted to a *talwār* hilt. The hilt is damascened in gold in high relief showing floral and creeper design. Sheath modern.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	18th century
Total length	103.6 cm
Blade	87.3 cm
Hilt	16.3 cm

125. 255/LIV-A *Talwār*—Curved *shamshīr* blade of Damascus steel. One side of the blade bears an inscription damascened in gold; it reads: *Bande Shāh Vailāyat Abbās 1165 A.H. Amal-i-Kalbe Alī Khurāsānī*. There is also a couplet in Persian: ई तेगे गफूर तिराने नुसरत जौहर शोल—मेआबदार अल्यास गौह "This sword of Damascus steel is the symbol of victory. It shines like a flame and glitters like a gem". Usual *talwār* hilt is damascened all over with gold work in floral and creeper design. Wooden sheath is covered with red faded velvet and has a long chape damascened in the style of the hilt.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Persian blade fitted to a Deccani hilt
Date	1165 A.H.
Total length	99.0 cm
Blade	84.0 cm
Hilt	15.5 cm

126. 273/LIV-A *Talwār*—Fitted with curved *shamshīr* blade of watered steel. On one side of the blade is an inscription *Allāh Mukhtārul Mulh* in Persian. Usual *talwār* hilt with a buckle is damascened in gold in floral and creeper design all

over. Sheath modern with an original chape damascened in the style of hilt.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	Blade-17th century Hilt-closing years of the 18th century
Total length	97.1 cm
Blade	81.2 cm
Hilt	15.9 cm

127. 280/LIV-A *Talwār*—Fitted with *shamshīr* blade of watered steel. On one side is an inscription in gold which reads *Allāh Mukhtārul Mulk* in Persian. Usual *talwār* hilt with a buckle is damascened all over in gold in floral and creeper design. Wooden sheath is covered with faded red velvet and has a chape damascened in the style of the hilt.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	Blade-17th century Hilt-closing years of the 18th century
Total length	97.2 cm
Blade	81.0 cm
Hilt	16.2 cm

128. 281/LIV-A *Talwār*—*Shamshīr* blade, *jauhar* not visible. Evenly curved Mughal hilt is decorated with floral design all over in *zarbuland* style. The wooden sheath is covered with faded red velvet and has a chape ornamented in the style of the hilt.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	17th century
Total length	93.9 cm
Blade	78.2 cm
Hilt	15.7 cm

129. 282/LIV-A *Talwār*—Curved *shamshīr* blade of Damascus steel bearing an inscription in gold recording Qurānic verses and *Amal-i-Abdullāh Husainī* along with a Persian couplet in gold. The usual *talwār* hilt with a buckle is damascened in floral design all over in *tehnishān* style. The wooden sheath is covered with black velvet and has a chape ornamented in the style of the hilt.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	17th century
Total length	96.9 cm
Blade	80.5 cm
Hilt	16.4 cm

130. 286/LIV-A *Talwār*—Curved *shamshīr* blade of Damascus steel of *Karknarduban* variety.

One side is engraved with verses from the holy *Qurān* and *Amal-i-Hasan* along with date 1102 A.H. and *Bande Shāh Vilāyath Abbās*. Usual *talwār* hilt is damascened all over in flower and creeper design. Wooden sheath covered with red velvet has a chape of some other scabbard.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Mughal
Date	1102 A.H.
Total length	97.6 cm
Blade	81.7 cm
Hilt	15.9 cm

131. 303/LVI *Talwār*—Slightly curved blade with punch marks. The *Delhishāhī* hilt has floral and creeper design in relief. Wooden sheath has brown leather and metallic perforated chape.

Provenance	North India
School	Late Mughal
Date	Late 18th century
Total length	92.1 cm
Blade	76.0 cm
Hilt	16.1 cm

132. 306/XLIX *Talwār*—Curved blade, single-edged on one side and double-edged at the lower end. On one side is an umbrella and an inscription in gold in Persian which reads: *Shamshīr-i-Bahādur Shāh hagan rah i.e.*, "This curved sword belongs to Bahādur Shāh". It also contains a Persian couplet meaning, "Though the entire human race descends from a common parentage of Adam and Eve, yet the valour differs from person to person". Usual *talwār* hilt with the knuckle-guard is damascened all over in gold in combined *zernishān* and *tehnishān* styles. A buckle on the top of the hilt contains an embroidered sword-knot strap from which are hanging ten green stones. Wooden sheath is covered with faded velvet and has a chape of some other sheath.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	19th century
Total length	103.2 cm
Blade	86.8 cm
Hilt	16.4 cm

133. 305/LVI *Talwār*—Double-edged blade terminating into a point. In the forte of four sides is stamped a seal of *Nūruddīn* (Jahangir?) The hilt is divided into panels and is damascened in gold showing the landscape including mosques, tombs, gateway of a mosque, rivers, flowers and creepers. Wooden sheath, covered with green velvet, has a chape damascened in gold.

Provenance	Agra
School	Mughal
Date	Jahangir period (1605-1627 A.D.)

Total length	106.8 cm
Blade	89.5 cm
Hilt	17.3 cm

134. 306/LIV *Talwār*—Double-edged, straight blade of plain steel. The hilt consists of a small tang, globular pommel, oval grip, short quillons, triangular langets and a knuckle-guard. An additional knuckle-guard consisting of two curved rods has been added. The entire hilt is damascened in floral design in gold. The wooden sheath covered with brown velvet has a chape damascened in gold.

Provenance	Maharashtra
School	Maratha
Date	18th century
Total length	103.7 cm
Blade	83.1 cm
Hilt	20.5 cm

135. 307/LVI *Talwār*—Single-edged in the beginning and double-edged at the lower end. The *Delhīshāhī* hilt is ornamented with floral, creeper and geometrical design in gold. Wooden sheath, covered with black leather, is fitted with gold damascened chape.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Late Mughal
Date	Late 18th century
Total length	100.4 cm
Blade	84.1 cm
Hilt	16.3 cm

136. 315/LIV-A *Talwār*—Curved, single-edged blade divided into panels and engraved in relief all over on both sides with fifty names of Allāh (on both sides) in Naskh script in Arabic language. The usual *talwār* hilt is damascened in gold in *zarbuland* style with inscription all over and has a knuckle-guard and a buckle. The inscription in Naskh script in Arabic language records complete *Nād-i-Ālī* and verses from the holy *Qurān*. The date 1011 A.H. is on the lower part of the pommel.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Early Mughal period
Date	1011 A.H.
Total length	95.5 cm
Blade	75.2 cm
Hilt	20.3 cm

137. 342/LIV *Talwār*—Curved blade, single-edged on the convex side and double-edged at the lower end. The blade bears three shallow grooves and has an umbrella in gold along with an inscription in Urdu saying *Zehyarer lagab yaft Bārkeh ajal*. The *Delhīshāhī* hilt has gold damascening work done jointly in *tehnishān* and *zarbuland* styles. The wooden sheath is covered with brown

velvet and is fitted with a steel chape bearing the ornamentation like that of the hilt.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	Closing years of the 17th century
Total length	94.7 cm
Blade	79.3 cm
Hilt	15.4 cm

138. 354/LIV-A *Talwār*—The blade of *shamshīr* depicts *Kirknarduban* pattern on Damascus blade on both sides. On one side an umbrella is damascened in gold. The Mughal hilt is damascened in gold in floral and creeper design all over in *tehnishān* style. Damaged wooden sheath is covered with black leather without mounts.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani hilt; North Indian blade
Date	Blade-early 17th century Hilt-early 18th century
Total length	98.0 cm
Blade	82.0 cm
Hilt	16.0 cm

139. 384/LIV *Talwār*—Single-edged from the beginning and double-edged at the lower end; the blade has two grooves, some punch marks and an inscription in gold saying *Janāb Ālamgīrī*. The hilt consists of a circular pommel and cylindrical grip. It has no quillons or langets. The wooden sheath, covered with cloth, is fitted with gold damascened *muhnāl* and *tehnāl*.

Provenance	North India
School	Late Mughal
Date	Late 18th century
Total length	89.0 cm
Blade	75.5 cm
Hilt	13.5 cm

- 140.389/LIV *Talwār*—Straight, single-edged blade with a false edge at lower end; two grooves on each side; usual *talwār* hilt of solid plain ivory (cracked).

Provenance	Delhi
School	Late Mughal
Date	18th century
Total length	111.3 cm
Blade	93.5 cm
Hilt	17.8 cm

- 141.390/LIV *Talwār*—Plain blade with a groove, single-edged from the beginning and double-edged at the lower end. *Delhīshāhī* hilt is of ivory. Sheath modern.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Late Mughal

Date	Hilt-early 17th century Blade-late 18th century
Total length	103.4 cm
Blade	86.7 cm
Hilt	16.7 cm

142. 395/LIV *Talwār*—Plain blade with a groove, single-edged from the beginning and double-edged at the lower end. *Delhīshāhī* hilt is of ivory. Sheath original, the ivory hilt is carved and has a locket.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Mughal
Date	Blade-late 18th century Hilt-early 17th century
Total length	95.0 cm
Blade	79.0 cm
Hilt	16.8 cm

143. 398/LIV *Talwār*—Curved, grooved plain blade, single-edged in the beginning and double-edged at the lower end. *Delhīshāhī* hilt whose pommel is missing. Sheath modern but the carved ivory chape is original.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Late Mughal
Date	Blade-late 18th century Hilt-early 17th century
Total length	92.3 cm
Blade	78.7 cm
Hilt	13.6 cm

SOSUN-PAṬṬĀ

144. 38/LIII

Sosun-paṭṭā—Curved blade, single-edged on one side and double-edged at the lower end. The blade has two shallow grooves, a forte and a few letters stamped on it. The hilt consists of a dome-shaped tang with a perforated ring, a large flat pommel, oval grip, thin quillons with dome-shaped tops, long langets and a knuckle-guard whose one end terminates in the head of a tiger. The entire hilt is covered with silver and is enamelled in blue and green colour in floral and creeper design. The damaged wooden sheath is encased with badly faded green velvet and is fitted with a silver chape.

Provenance	Jaipur
School	Rajput
Date	Late 18th century
Total length	91.0 cm
Blade	73.4 cm
Hilt	17.6 cm

145. 77/LIV-A Curved *yātāghan* blade of Damascus steel, edge on concave side, part near ricasso is engraved with floral design. Usual *talwār* hilt is damascened in gold in floral and creeper design. Modern sheath.

- | | | |
|--|--------------|--------------|
| | Provenance | South India |
| | School | Deccani |
| | Date | 18th century |
| | Total length | 82.2 cm |
| | Blade | 66.6 cm |
| | Hilt | 15.6 cm |
146. 78/LIV-A *Sosun-paṭṭā*-*Yātāghan* blade bearing inscription in gold on both sides recording the verses from the holy *Qurān*. On one side a proverb in Arabic is also engraved which says *Al Horbu Khandau*. The part near ricasso and the back edge is damascened in gold. Usual *talwār* hilt with its buckle and knuckle-guard is damascened in gold in floral and creeper design all over. There is another inscription in Arabic on one side of the blade reading *min biladi ziffatil Misr* (the sword has been made in Egypt). Modern sheath has original *muhnāl* and *tehnāl* of perforated silver.
- | | | |
|--|--------------|-----------|
| | Provenance | Hyderabad |
| | School | Deccani |
| | Date | 1175 A.H. |
| | Total length | 85.8 cm |
| | Blade | 70.0 cm |
| | Hilt | 15.8 cm |
147. 79/LIV-A *Sosun-paṭṭā*-Curved blade of Damascus steel engraved with a date on one side in Arabic which reads 1240 A.H. The part of the blade near the hilt is damascened in gold. The hilt is of Mughal style embellished all over with floral design in gold and has a knuckle-guard. The damaged wooden sheath is covered with faded green velvet and is fitted with upper and lower fittings of perforated silver.
- | | | |
|--|--------------|---------------------------------------|
| | Provenance | North India |
| | School | Blade and sheath-Turkish; Hilt-Mughal |
| | Date | 1240 A.H. |
| | Total length | 90.3 cm |
| | Blade | 75.0 cm |
| | Hilt | 15.3 cm |
148. 80/LIV-A *Sosun-paṭṭā*-Same as No. 89/LIV-A
- | | | |
|--|--------------|--------------|
| | Provenance | Deccan |
| | School | Turkish |
| | Date | 19th century |
| | Total length | 84.6 cm |
| | Blade | 67.8 cm |
| | Hilt | 16.8 cm |
149. 81/LIV-A *Sosun-paṭṭā*-Curved blade, *jauhar* visible. On one side of the blade is an inscription in gold in Arabic describing the Qurānic verse in a rectangle. On the other side on an embossed circular medallion it records *Zarbe ar Basrāh fi Qustuntuniyāh 1299 A.H.* It is fitted with a Mughal hilt profusely or-

namented in floral design in gold and has a knuckle-guard. The wooden sheath is fitted with a red velvet of later date and a *muhnāl* and *tehnāl* of some other sheath.

Provenance	North India
School	Turkish blade; Mughal hilt
Date	1299 A.H.
Total length	86.4 cm
Blade	70.6 cm
Hilt	15.8 cm

150. 82/LIV-A *Sosun-pattā*—Curved blade of Damascus steel inscribed on one side with the verses from the holy *Qurān* in gold and on the other side are seen some geometrical pattern in silver. *Delhishāhī* hilt is damascened in gold in floral and creeper design. Wooden sheath is covered with black leather and is fitted with a chape ornamented in the style of the hilt.

Provenance	North India
School	Turkish blade; Mughal hilt
Date	Early 18th century
Total length	88.4 cm
Blade	73.0 cm
Hilt	15.9 cm

151. 83/LIV-A *Sosun-pattā*—Curved blade with edge on convave side. On one side are seen floral, creeper and geometrical design in silver damascening and the inscription *Hussain*. On the other side, along with the design, an inscription reads 1219 A.H. *Māshā Allā Mutabhir*. Mughal hilt is damascened all over in gold with *būfī* (small flowers) design and also has a knuckle-guard. The wooden sheath is covered with brown leather having *muhnāl* and *tehnāl* of perforated silver. Two silver loops are fitted at *muhnāl*.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	17th century
Total length	87.4 cm
Blade	70.8 cm
Hilt	16.6 cm

152. 84/LIV-A *Sosun-pattā*—Curved blade of Damascus steel. On both the sides of the blade it bears the date 1225 A.H. and on one side verses from the holy *Qurān* in Arabic. The Mughal hilt with knuckle-guard is profusely embellished with faded green velvet and is fitted with a chape ornamented in the style of the hilt.

Provenance	Deccan
School	Hilt-Mughal, Blade-Turkish
Date	1225 A.H.
Total length	86.1 cm
Blade	70.5 cm
Hilt	15.6 cm

153. 88/LIV-A *Sosun-paṭṭā*-*Yātāghan* blade inscribed in gold on both sides. On one side it reads *Bazore saire ashar jahe shamshīr je haibet mom gardat sange-e-khāra*, i.e. (the sword is capable of conversing a hand grove into a soft vase). It bears the date of 1281 A.H. On the other side the verses from the holy *Qurān* are recorded. Usual *talwār* hilt with a buckle and a knuckle-guard are damascened all over in gold in floral and creeper design. Wooden sheath, covered with faded yellow velvet, has a chape of perforated silver.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	1281 A.H.
Total length	85.1 cm
Blade	69.2 cm
Hilt	16.0 cm

154. 89/LIV-A *Sosun-paṭṭā*-*Yātāghan* blade, the part near ricasso is damascened in gold in floral and creeper design on both sides. On one side of the blade is engraved *Alī Abdullāh Saif Bābar*. Usual *talwār* hilt with a buckle and knuckle-guard is damascened all over in gold in floral and creeper design in *tehnishān* style. Wooden sheath is covered with faded red velvet and has a *muhnāl* and *tehnāl* of perforated silver. A small buckle is attached to the *muhnāl*.

Provenance	Deccan
School	Turkish
Date	19th century
Total length	88.3 cm
Blade	72.5 cm
Hilt	15.8 cm

155. 90/LIV-A *Sosun-paṭṭā*-Curved blade of Damascus steel inscribed with the verses from the holy *Qurān* in silver. On the other side it is engraved with geometrical pattern in silver damascening all over. The hilt is damascened in gold in floral, creeper and star design in *zarbuland* style. The wooden sheath is covered with brown leather and is fitted with a chape of later date.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	18th century
Total length	91.0 cm
Blade	74.7 cm
Hilt	16.3 cm

156. 91/LIV-A *Sosun-paṭṭā*-Curved *yātāghan* blade inscribed all over on both sides. On one side is recorded *Sāhebā Hasan Āghā* (wife of Hasan Āghā); on the other side is engraved *Mustafā*. Usual *talwār* hilt with a buckle is damascened all over in floral and creeper design in gold in *tehnishān* style. Wooden sheath is covered with faded yellow velvet and has a chape of perforated silver.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani

Date	Late 18th century
Total length	91.0 cm
Blade	71.5 cm
Hilt	19.5 cm

157. 92/LIV-A *Sosun-pattā*—Curved blade of *yātāghan* type, edge on the concave side, strong back edge all through. The blade is inscribed all over on both sides; the upper part bears inscription damascened in gold amidst floral design in Arabic. On one side verses from *Sūrāh Fateh* of the holy *Qurām* are inscribed. On the other side the Quranic verses from *Sūreb- a-Ālī Imrān* are recorded. On one side of the blade are engraved a few names in Kūfic script; some of them are Ālī, Yussuf, Latīf, etc. On the other side is engraved the name of Muhammad (which can also be the name of the maker) with big geometrical design. The usual *talwār* hilt is damascened in gold in floral and creeper design all through. Wooden sheath is covered with damaged black leather.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Mughal
Date	c 1700 A.D.
Total length	83.7 cm
Blade	67.6 cm
Hilt	16.1 cm

158. 93/LIV-A *Sosun-pattā*—Curved blade bearing a *jauhar* of Turkish style. The inscription in silver damascening reads *Ālī Osmān Talma Rosch Daryish, 1227 A.H.* The *Qurānic* verses and the name of Muhammad are on the other side. The *Delhīshāhī* hilt is ornamented all over with poppy flower design and carries a knuckle-guard. The wooden sheath is covered with faded yellow velvet and has a chape of perforated silver.

Provenance	North India
School	Turkish blade, North Indian hilt
Date	1227 A.H.
Total length	77.9 cm
Blade	62.3 cm
Hilt	15.6 cm

159. 95/LIV-A *Sosun-pattā*—Plain blade, on one side it is adorned with silver damascening in geometrical pattern. On the other side is an illegible inscription in silver and the date 1211 A.H. The upper part of the hilt is plated with silver and embossed with floral and creeper design. The steel hilt is covered with two pieces of ivory.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	1211 A.H.
Total length	73.4 cm
Blade	60.0 cm
Hilt	13.4 cm

160. 97/LIV-A *Sosun-pattā*—Plain curved blade is inscribed on both sides which reads *Sheikh Aghlū Hājī Ibrāhīm Amal-i-Auzān Mustafā 1212 A.H.* in Arabic. The Mughal hilt is damascened in gold in floral and creeper design. The wooden sheath, covered with velvet of purple colour, has middle and lower fittings ornamented in the style of the hilt.
- | | |
|--------------|-----------|
| Provenance | Delhi |
| School | Mughal |
| Date | 1212 A.H. |
| Total length | 73.9 cm |
| Blade | 58.2 cm |
| Hilt | 15.7 cm |
161. 127/LIV *Sosun-pattā*—Curved blade, single-edged on one side and double-edged at the lower end with blade bearing grooves on both sides. The inscription in gold reads *Yā Fatah* (a name of Allāh) in Naskh script and Arabic language. The hilt has a knuckle-guard and bears traces of gold work. Sheath modern.
- | | |
|--------------|--------------------------------------|
| Provenance | Hyderabad |
| School | Blade-Turkish, Hilt-Deccani |
| Date | Blade 15th century, hilt c 1720 A.D. |
| Total length | 81.1 cm |
| Blade | 65.6 cm |
| Hilt | 15.5 cm |
162. 125/LIV *Sosun-pattā*—Plain curved blade, single-edged on one side and double-edged at lower end; two grooves and four holes stuffed with copper. The *Delhīshāhī* hilt with knuckle-guard is decorated with floral design. Sheath modern. The sword was specially produced for the young princes.
- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| Provenance | North India |
| School | Late Mughal |
| Date | 18th century |
| Total length | 81.2 cm |
| Blade | 67.1 cm |
| Hilt | 14.1 cm |
163. 199/LIV *Sosun-pattā*—Plain blade, single-edged from the beginning and double-edged at the lower side; a crescent and a star damascened in gold are seen on the side of the blade near forte. The *Delhīshāhī* hilt is beautifully ornamented in Bidri work in Hyderābādī style. Sheath modern.
- | | |
|--------------|--------------------|
| Provenance | Bidar (Karnataka) |
| School | Deccani |
| Date | Early 18th century |
| Total length | 86.0 cm |
| Blade | 69.3 cm |
| Hilt | 16.7 cm |
164. 212/LIV *Sosun-pattā*—Fitted to a *talwār* hilt. The blade is unusual since it is watered

steel on one side and is plain on the other. The watered steel side has several small grooves while the plain side has two long grooves and some punch marks. The usual *talwār* hilt has a knuckle-guard and is damascened in gold in floral and creeper motif in relief all over. Sheath modern.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	Early 18th century
Total length	91.4 cm
Blade	75.0 cm
Hilt	16.4 cm

165. 352/LIV *Sosun-patṭā*—Fitted to a *talwār* hilt. Plain blade, slightly curved, single-edged on one side and double-edged at the lower end. The steel hilt is unusual and it has two different kinds of gold damascened floral design; each side is different from the other. Sheath modern. The sword was meant for the young princes.

Provenance	Bikaner, Rajasthan
School	Rajput
Date	c 1740 A.D.
Total length	81.2 cm
Blade	67.1 cm
Hilt	14.1 cm

FIRANGĪ

166. 82/LIV *Firangī*—Double-edged straight sword tapering to a point. *Khāndā* type hilt is decorated all over with gold damascening in floral and creepign in *zarbuland* style. The quillons have been moulded in the shape of two human figures. Inside padding is of velvet stuffed with cotton.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	Late 17th century
Total length	120.9 cm
Blade	87.8 cm
Hilt	33.1 cm

167. 83/LIV *Firangī*—Straight double-edged blade bearing inscription in English language on both sides. On one side it reads *Espadeiro* and on the other *Delrei 1639*. Plain *khāndā* type hilt has small seatings riveted to the blade. Wooden scabbard is covered with maroon velvet of later date.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	1639 A.D.
Total length	133.9 cm
Blade	104.0 cm
Hilt	29.9 cm

168. 156/LIV *Firangī*—Double-edged, serpentine blade bearing some letters in English.

The basket hilt is engraved with floral and creeper design in relief and is gold-plated. The damaged wooden sheath is covered with red velvet and its chape is detached.

Provenance	Maharashtra
School	East India Company impact
Date	Early 18th century
Total length	107.6 cm
Blade	85.6 cm
Hilt	22.0 cm

169. 157/LIV *Firangī*—Double-edged, straight, plain, flexible blade; usual *khāndā* hilt with a curved spike, saucer pommel, straight grip, broad guard and knuckle-guard with langets, is damascened all over in floral and creeper design in gold in *tehnishān* style. A buckle is attached to one of the quillons. Sheath modern, chape original and damascened in the style of the hilt.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	Late 17th century
Total length	113.6 cm
Blade	86.2 cm
Hilt	27.4 cm

170. 158/LIV *Firangī*—Straight, ribbed blade, single-edged from the beginning and double-edged at the lower end. The basket hilt consists of a long curved tang, saucer pommel, cylindrical grip, broad knuckle-guard, flat plate for protection and long langets. The entire hilt is profusely damascened in floral and creeper design in gold. Sheath and knuckle-guard padding are modern.

Provenance	Maharashtra
School	Deccani
Date	c 1700 A.D.
Total length	121.4 cm
Blade	91.5 cm
Hilt	29.9 cm

171. 160/LIV *Firangī*—Long, straight, blade, single-edged in the beginning and double-edged at the lower end with two grooves on each side. Usual *khāndā* hilt is damascened in silver all over with floral design. A small buckle is attached to one of the quillons. Wooden sheath is covered with faded velvet and has a chape damascened in silver in the style of the hilt.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	Late 18th century
Total length	123.7 cm
Blade	93.5 cm
Hilt	30.2 cm

172. 219/LIV-A *Firangī*—Plain curved blade, single-edged from the beginning and dou-

ble-edged at the lower end. The hilt has a curved spike, saucer pommel, cylindrical plate guard, knuckle-guard and five inches long langets. Sheath is modern.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	17th century
Total length	129.0 cm
Blade	94.2 cm
Hilt	34.8 cm

173. 220/LIV-A *Firangi*—Long blade, single-edged from the beginning and double-edged at the lower end with two grooves on each side. The hilt has a curved spike, a saucer pommel, a cylindrical grip, broad guard, knuckle-guard, and four inches long langets. The entire hilt is engraved with floral and creeper design in high relief. Sheath modern.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	17th century
Total length	132.0 cm
Blade	101.4 cm
Hilt	30.6 cm

174. 270/LIV-A *Firangi*—Single-edged straight blade with a false edge at the lower end. The blade has three grooves on each side. The *khāndā*-type hilt has a curved spike, saucer pommel, plain cylindrical grip damascened in gold in *zarbuland* style.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	17th century
Total length	124.9 cm
Blade	96.6 cm
Hilt	28.3 cm

175. 271/LIV-A *Firangi*—Long, straight blade single-edged from the beginning and double-edged at the lower end. The hilt has a curved spike followed in succession by a saucer-shaped pommel, cylindrical grip, flat guard and a knuckle-guard. About four inches long perforated langets reinforce the blade. No sheath.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	17th century
Total length	129.3 cm
Blade	100.5 cm
Hilt	26.8 cm

176. 303/XLIX *Firangi*—Long, straight blade tapering to a point; single-edged on one side and double-edged on the other; the blade is flexible and bears grooves on

both the sides. On the upper side are damascened in gold an umbrella and figure of sun along with inscription in Arabic language and Nastāliq script. It reads: *Yā māz Hajayab yā Zulfikār* on the other side *Khutimā bil khairē wass saa dah* (this is the monogram of Abdullāh Qutubshāh). On one side is a royal seal depicting a lion confronting a mythical animal, damascened in gold, with an Arabic inscription. Damaged wooden sheath is covered with faded velvet and has a chape of gold engraved in floral design. Usual *khāndā* hilt is studded all over with semi-precious coloured stones. The back edge is also inscribed in gold in Arabic and Persian which reads: *Hazarath Dāwood alias Salām Sultān Abul Hasan Abdullāh Qutb Shāh* and verses from the holy *Qurān*.

Provenance	Golconda, Hyderabad
School	Qutbshāhī
Date	Abdullāh Qutb Shāh period
Total length	160.6 cm
Blade	132.9 cm
Hilt	27.7 cm

177. 304/XLI *Firangī*—Long, straight, single-edged, flexible blade with a false edge. On one side is an inscription in gold which reads *Ālamgīr Pādshāhī Gāzī*. Usual *khāndā* hilt has a long spike, saucer pommel, straight grip, broad guards and curved knuckle-guard. The hilt is gold-plated. Wooden sheath is covered with faded maroon velvet and has a steel chape with perforated floral design.

Provenance	Deccan
School	Mughal
Date	c 1700 A.D.
Total length	160.6 cm
Blade	132.9 cm
Hilt	27.7 cm

178. 337/LTV *Firangī*—Straight single-edged blade with a false edge at lower end. Two grooves; blade bears some impression in English letters; *khāndā* type hilt is ornamented with gold damascening in floral and creeper design in *zarbuland* style.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	17th century
Total length	130.7 cm
Blade	103.2 cm
Hilt	27.5 cm

PAṬṬĀ

179. 26/LVI *Paṭṭā* —Double-edged straight blade; gauntlet hilt of Damascus steel, borders all over damascened in gold in floral, creeper, animal and fish design; semi-circular hinge; padding of velvet.

Provenance	Deccan
------------	--------

- | | | |
|------------------------------|--|--------------------|
| | School | Maratha |
| | Date | Mid. 18th century |
| | Total length | 140.9 cm |
| | Blade | 90.9 cm |
| | Hilt | 50.0 cm |
| 180. 42/LVI | <i>Pattā</i> –Double-edged, straight blade bearing some illegible inscription. The gauntlet <i>pattā</i> has borders damascened in gold. | |
| | Provenance | Deccan |
| | School | Maratha |
| | Date | Late 18th century |
| | Total length | 130.1 cm |
| | Blade | 83.7 cm |
| | Hilt | 46.4 cm |
| 181. 104/LIII
&. 105/LIII | <i>Pattā</i> –A pair of <i>pattā</i> having double-edged straight blades, very flexible. Both bear some inscription in English. Each has a small grip to hold the <i>pattā</i> and the knuckle is very wide and has a long spike attached to it. The knuckle-guard is damascened in gold and depicts two daggers, two lions and other designs. The sheaths are modern. These were used in a game called <i>pattēbāzī</i> . | |
| | Provenance | Deccan |
| | School | Maratha |
| | Date | Early 19th century |
| | Total length | 108.3 cm |
| | Blade | 81.8 cm |
| | Hilt | 26.5 cm |
| 182. 176/LVI | <i>Pattā</i> –Double-edged straight blade with a groove; gauntlet hilt embossed with floral, creeper and geometrical patterns. Inside padding of red velvet; sheath modern. | |
| | Provenance | Deccan |
| | School | Maratha |
| | Date | 18th century |
| | Total length | 152.5 cm |
| | Blade | 99.7 cm |
| | Hilt | 52.8 cm |
| 183. 192/LVI | <i>Pattā</i> –Double-edged, straight blade; gauntlet hilt is damascened all over in gold in floral and creeper design. Damaged wooden sheath is covered with faded red velvet. | |
| | Provenance | Deccan |
| | School | Maratha |
| | Date | 17th century |
| | Total length | 141.3 cm |
| | Blade | 96.3 cm |
| | Hilt | 45.0 cm |

184. 200/LIV *Pattā*—Straight, double-edged blade of Damascus steel reinforced upto $3\frac{1}{2}$ inches. Small gauntlet hilt has its border damascened in gold; no padding inside. Grip is a cylindrical rod and a semi-circular plate is for the hinge. Sheath is modern.
- | | |
|--------------|-------------|
| Provenance | Maharashtra |
| School | Maratha |
| Total length | 140.4 cm |
| Blade | 108.0 cm |
| Hilt | 32.4 cm |
185. 241/LIV-A *Pattā*—Double-edged straight blade. The hilt of one piece of steel has broad triangular pommel, flat grip and a circular medallion as the knuckle-guard. A semi-circular hinge protects the elbow. It has ridged grip. The seatings are damascened in gold in floral and creeper design on both sides. On the upper side of the knuckle-guard is engraved an inscription stating *Aurangzeb 1111 A.H.* and 43rd (regnal year) in Persian. Modern sheath.
- | | |
|--------------|-----------|
| Provenance | Deccan |
| School | Mughal |
| Date | 1111 A.H. |
| Total length | 128.0 cm |
| Blade | 80.0 cm |
| Hilt | 48.0 cm |
186. 244/LIV-A *Pattā*—Long, double-edged blade, gauntlet hilt embossed with hunting scenes all over. Semi-circular hinge; velvet padding; sheath modern.
- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| Provenance | Deccan |
| School | Maratha |
| Date | 18th century |
| Total length | 149.5 cm |
| Blade | 98.3 cm |
| Hilt | 51.2 cm |
187. 245/LIV-A *Pattā*—Long, straight, double-edged blade bearing some inscriptions in English; gauntlet *pattā* hilt has a small bar and a semi-circular hinge. The outer surface is engraved with hunting scenes.
- | | |
|--------------|-------------------|
| Provenance | Deccan |
| School | Maratha |
| Date | Late 17th century |
| Total length | 145.5 cm |
| Blade | 96.0 cm |
| Hilt | 49.5 cm |
188. 292/LIV-A *Pattā*—Double-edged, straight blade with an inscription in gold. The gauntlet *pattā* hilt and its borders are damascened in gold. The gauntlet is of Damascus steel. The hinge is of several small pieces joined together.
- | | |
|------------|--------|
| Provenance | Deccan |
|------------|--------|

School	Maratha
Date	Early 17th century
Total length	119.6 cm
Blade	86.1 cm
Hilt	33.5 cm

189. 341/LIV *Pattā*—Long, straight, double-edged, flexible, plain blade with two grooves and some illegible markings on each side; reinforced upto about five inches. The gauntlet hilt is beautifully embossed with floral and creeper design and is surmounted with a mythical *yāli* figure. More than a dozen jingles are attached on each side of the gauntlet which make a jingling sound at the time of the movement of the *pattā*. The bar inside is loose. The hinge is made of a semi-circular solid loop. It has no inside padding.

Provenance	Maharashtra
School	Maratha
Date	17th century
Total length	140.7 cm
Blade	99.2 cm
Hilt	41.5 cm

190. 353/LIV *Pattā*—Long, straight, double-edged, flexible blade, reinforced upto elbow and is decorated with vertical lines. There is a bar inside and a hinge to cover and protect the wrist. Sheath is modern.

Provenance	Maharashtra
School	Maratha
Date	17th century
Total length	126.3 cm
Blade	81.7 cm
Hilt	44.6 cm

KIRACH

191. 5/LIV-A *Kirach*—Similar to No.386/LIV, but with original sheath.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	East India Company
Date	Early 19th century
Total length	98.5 cm
Blade	81.0 cm
Hilt	17.5 cm

192. 99/LIV *Fencing Kirach*—Plain tapering blade, blunt at the tip. The long, rectangular handle has a steel cap. At the base it has two steel loops. This was used in tournaments and specially in a sword game still played in Kerala.

Provenance	Kerala
School	East India Company School

- | | | |
|--|--------------|--------------------|
| | Date | Early 19th century |
| | Total length | 109.3 cm |
| | Blade | 87.1 cm |
| | Hilt | 22.2 cm |
193. 100/LIV Fencing Kirach—Plain tapering blade blunt at the tip. The long, rectangular handle has a steel cap. At the base it has two steel loops. This was used in tournaments and specially in a sword game still played in Kerala. Both these *kirachs* (99/LIV and 100/LIV) form a pair.
- | | | |
|--|--------------|---------------------------|
| | Provenance | Kerala |
| | School | East India Company School |
| | Date | Early 19th century |
| | Total length | 109.3 cm |
| | Blade | 87.1 cm |
| | Hilt | 22.2 cm |
194. 313/LIV-A *Curved Fencing Sword*—Plain blade, on one side it bears an inscription *Iudicadomine Nocenteseme Expu Gnaimp Vgnantes Me* with a cross in gold. On the other side an inscription in Persian is embossed which reads *Yā Gausus Samadānī Madade Gulām Qādir*. Some red semi-precious stones are studded in the side, a few of them are missing, crucified Jesus (?), Mary and Jesus (?) and a church are engraved in gold on one side and on the other side a flower vase, an angel, etc., are engraved in gold. The hilt of solid ivory is studded with a crescent on both sides. The sword was specially manufactured in Europe for a Deccan ruler. Sheath is modern.
- | | | |
|--|--------------|--------------------|
| | Provenance | Europe |
| | Date | Early 19th century |
| | Total length | 89.3 cm |
| | Blade | 75.0 cm |
| | Hilt | 14.3 cm |
195. 384/LIV *Kirach*—Plain, straight blade, single-edged from the beginning and double-edged at the lower end. It has a medial-rib and is slightly tapering. The ivory hilt has a globular pommel and curved ribs on the grip. Sheath missing.
- | | | |
|--|--------------|---------------------------|
| | Provenance | Hyderabad |
| | School | East India Company School |
| | Date | Early 19th century |
| | Total length | 89.0 cm |
| | Blade | 75.5 cm |
| | Hilt | 13.5 cm |
196. 386/LIV *Kirach*—Straight, single-edged, pointed, plain, tapering blade. The steel hilt consists of a flat, circular pommel, oval grip, short quillons and triangular langets. The hilt is damascened in gold. Sheath modern and fitted with original middle fitting. The original chape is attached separately.
- | | | |
|--|------------|-----------|
| | Provenance | Hyderabad |
|--|------------|-----------|

- | | | |
|--------------|--|---------------------------|
| | School | East India Company School |
| | Date | Early 19th century |
| | Total length | 98.8 cm |
| | Blade | 82.2 cm |
| | Hilt | 16.6 cm |
| 197. 391/LIV | <i>Kirach-cum-talwār</i> —Similar to No.392/LIV but with inscription at the end of the grip on both sides; sheath modern but <i>tehnāl</i> and <i>muhmāl</i> are original. Inscription records <i>yāde habjā</i> and <i>Barkah ajal</i> . | |
| | Provenance | Deccan |
| | School | East India Company School |
| | Date | Early 19th century |
| | Total length | 91.7 cm |
| | Blade | 78.7 cm |
| | Hilt | 13.0 cm |
| 198. 392/LIV | <i>Kirach-cum-talwār</i> —Plain blade with a groove, single-edged from the beginning but double-edged at the lower part. The hilt consists of a globular pommel, oval grip and a rectangular base. The wooden sheath, covered with faded brown leather, has gold damascened <i>muhmāl</i> and <i>tehnāl</i> with a locking device with decoration similar to the hilt. | |
| | Provenance | Deccan |
| | School | East India Company School |
| | Date | Early 19th century |
| | Total length | 91.7 cm |
| | Blade | 78.7 cm |
| | Hilt | 13.0 cm |
| 199. 394/LIV | <i>Kirach</i> —Straight fencing sword with elastic blade which is single-edged at the lower end. On one side of the blade is an umbrella in gold and an inscription in Urdu which reads <i>Barkah ajal</i> . The hilt has a globular pommel of steel and oval-shaped grip of ivory and the lower part is again of steel. The upper and the lower parts of the hilt are damascened in gold in poppy design. The wooden sheath is covered with faded brown leather and has the upper and lower fittings, ornamented in the style of the hilt. The sheath has a locking device. | |
| | Provenance | Deccan |
| | School | East India Company School |
| | Date | Early 19th century |
| | Total length | 96.1 cm |
| | Blade | 82.6 cm |
| | Hilt | 13.5 cm |

TĒGHĀ

200. 8/LVI *Tēghā*—Curved blade, single-edged on one side and double-edged at the lower end. Plain blade; on one side the inscription is engraved in Urdu which reads *Tēghā Humāyūnī*. It also bears a royal umbrella. The steel hilt

is embossed with floral design in two different kinds of gold and silver. The wooden sheath is covered with faded green velvet and is fitted with a chape ornamented in the style of the hilt.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	Humāyūn's period (1530-1556 A.D.)
Total length	90.2 cm
Blade	73.8 cm
Hilt	16.4 cm

201. 205/LIV *Téghā*—Curved blade, single-edged on one side and double-edged at the lower end; blade bears grooves on both sides. The blade has four inscriptions in gold, two on each side; all are verses from the holy *Qurān*. The Mughal hilt is profusely embellished with gold in poppy design. The wooden sheath is covered with red faded velvet and is fitted with a chape ornamented in the style of the hilt.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Blade-Deccani; hilt-Mughal
Date	Early 18th century
Total length	94.7 cm
Blade	79.0 cm
Hilt	15.7 cm

202. 240/LIV-A *Téghā*—Single-edged blade, double-edged at the lower end, artificial Damascus blade. The upper side is engraved with a person riding on an elephant, several animals and human figures. The steel hilt is covered with ivory and on one side bears inscription in Devanāgarī. The pommel depicts Lord Krishna playing on flute on one side and another male figure on the other.

Provenance	Udaipur, Rajasthan
School	Rajput
Date	18th century
Total length	101.6 cm
Blade	88.2 cm
Hilt	23.4 cm

203. 242/LIV *Téghā*—Heavy curved blade, single-edged on the convex side and double-edged at the lower end. Blade is ridged in the middle. The upper part is engraved with elephants, horses and human figures in relief on both the sides. The central part of the blade, on the back edge, bears some inscription in gold. Blade is of artificial Damascus. Hilt has a small tang, big disc pommel, diamond-shaped grip, small stubby quillons and long langets. Borders of the hilt are damascened in gold.

Provenance	Udaipur, Rajasthan
School	Rajput
Date	18th century

Total length	118.6 cm
Blade	90.5 cm
Hilt	28.1 cm

204. 283/LIV-A *Téghā*—Curved blade, single-edged on one side and double-edged at the lower end, bearing one full and one half grooves on each side. On one side it is inscribed in Nastāliq script of Tughrā style in Persian language which reads *Bandā Shāh Vilāyath Tahmāsp*. The uppermost part of the blade is engraved with floral design. The *Delhīshāhī* hilt is adorned all over with floral and creeper design in gold. The damaged sheath is covered with brown leather and is fitted with a chape ornamented in the style of the hilt.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	Closing years of the 17th century
Total length	92.7 cm
Blade	75.6 cm
Hilt	17.1 cm

205. 284/LIV *Téghā*—Damascus steel blade bearing grooves on both sides. On one side the blade is engraved with verses from the holy *Qurān*, and on the other side it reads *Yā Kazīyal Hajāt* (name of Allāh) along with the monogram depicting a lion. The *Delhīshāhī* hilt is damascened in gold in floral and creeper design all over. Sheath modern.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Mughal
Date	Closing years of the 17th century
Total length	99.1 cm
Blade	82.7 cm
Hilt	16.4 cm

206. 291/LIV-A *Téghā*—Curved blade, single-edged with a false edge on the lower side. On one side is inscribed in Arabic and Persian which reads as follows: Arabic: *Yā Allāh, Yā Muhammad, There is no younger man other than Alī, There is no guard better than Zulfiqār* Persian: *Where there is danger,* *Mūham-mad Shāh Pādshāh Gāzī Shāh Zilā – Ullāh-Tālā son 1205, Amal Hāji Hasan Misrī* on the blade weight 150 *tolās*, length: 9 *gaz*, 9 *girah*, Width: 9 *gaz girah pukhtā* is recorded. Usual *talwār* hilt with its knuckle-guard is damascened in gold.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Late Mughal
Date	1205 A.H.
Total length	102.6 cm
Blade	80.2 cm
Hilt	22.4 cm

207. 293/LIV-A *Téghā*—Single-edged on one side with false edge at lower end, ridged blade of artificial Damascus; upper side of the blade is engraved with lions, elephants, human figures, etc., on both sides and is damascened in gold. Usual *talwār* hilt is damascened in floral design in gold.

Provenance	Udaipur, Rajasthan
School	Mewar, Rajput
Date	18th century
Total length	94.6 cm
Blade	75.0 cm
Hilt	19.6 cm

208. 334/LIV *Téghā*—Curved blade, single-edged on one side and double-edged at the lower end. Three grooves on one side. Usual *talwār* hilt has a knuckle-guard.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	18th century
Total length	90.9 cm
Blade	69.7 cm
Hilt	21.2 cm

NĀIR TEMPLE SWORD

209. 70.15 *Nāir Temple Sword*—Double-edged, recurved blade making a 'L' shape. Brass hilt has circular pommel with jingles, cylindrical grip, flanged quillons and triangular seatings.

Provenance	Tamilnadu
School	Kerala School
Date	18th century
Total length	100.6 cm
Blade	85.6 cm
Hilt	15.0 cm

210. 70.17 *Nāir Temple Sword*—Double-edged, straight blade widened at the lower end looking like a *khāndā* blade. The hilt consists of a pommel of two circular plates surmounted with a petalled flower; grip is plain and flat with flange quillons and long seatings.

Provenance	Tamilnadu
School	Nāir School
Date	18th century
Total length	91.0 cm
Blade	45.2 cm
Hilt	45.8 cm

211. 70.19 *Nāir Temple Sword*—Brass hilt has a plain cylindrical grip. The pommel is of circular brass plate with jingles attached to it. The seating is of a brass plate with hole. The blade is straight upto the 2/3rd and then is curved

like a sickle; the edge is on the convex side.

Provenance	Tanjore, Tamilnadu
School	Nāir School
Date	18th century
Total length	48.6 cm
Blade	35.1 cm
Hilt	15.5 cm

212. 102/LIV *Nāir Temple Sword*—Similar to No. 103/LIV. The pommel is missing.

Provenance	Kerala
School	Nāir School
Date	Late 18th century
Total length	91.5 cm
Blade	82.8 cm
Hilt	7.8 cm

213. 103/LIV *Nāir Temple Sword*—Double-edged, straight blade with a thickened point, rusted and damaged, flanged quillons. The hilt consists of a globular tang button. The grip is round and has a knob in the middle. No sheath.

Provenance	Kerala
School	Nāir School
Date	17th century
Total length	89.6 cm
Blade	63.9 cm
Hilt	25.7 cm

214. 200/LIV *Nāir Temple Sword*—Double-edged, straight, flexible, narrow, blade terminating into a point bearing one groove on either side. Brass hilt has a knob on the top followed in succession by a covered plate having balls making jingling sound, huge globular pommel, plain grip, broad guard and two lions forming the quillons. The outer side of the guard has its borders engraved with floral design. The lions have been moulded and welded to the hilt; wooden sheath is covered with brown leather.

Provenance	Tamilnadu
School	Nāir School
Date	18th century
Total length	140.4 cm
Blade	108.0 cm
Hilt	32.4 cm

PULOVAR

215. 15/LVI *Pulovar*—Curved, single-edged blade with a false edge having two grooves on each side. Steel hilt consists of a globular pommel with some rings inside. Oval grip, perforated handle, triangular langets and drooping quillons. Sheath of wood is covered with upper, middle and lower fittings of steel; the upper and middle fittings have two rings attached to each one of them.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani with Arab influence
Date	18th century
Total length	102.1 cm
Blade	82.7 cm
Hilt	19.4 cm

216. 239/LVI *Pulovar*--Double-edged, zig-zag blade. The steel hilt consists of a triangular pommel, globular grip and drooping quillons. The entire hilt and the part of blade near the forte is engraved with floral, creeper and bird design. The wooden sheath is covered with black leather which is embossed on one side.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani with Arab influence
Date	Early 19th century
Total length	102.3 cm
Blade	84.5 cm
Hilt	17.8 cm

217. 277/LIV-A *Pulovar*--Curved blade of watered steel with grooves and depression on both sides. One side the blade is inscribed in gold which reads *Bandā Shāh Vilāyath Abbās Amal-i-Asādullāh* (Shāh Abbās, the slave of Alī). The hilt is fitted with two pieces of stag horn; the lower part of the hilt is of Damascus steel and has drooping quillons. The sheath is modern.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Mughal
Date	Late 17th century
Total length	102.3 cm
Blade	84.5 cm
Hilt	17.8 cm

218. 362/LIV *Pulovar*--Double-edged straight blade with a mid-rib serrated all over on both sides. Ricasso, wide and circular, is perforated in floral design and is damascened in gold. Hilt is similar to No. 369/LIV. Sheath modern.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	1256 A.H.
Total length	97.1 cm
Blade	77.0 cm
Hilt	20.1 cm

219. 364/LIV *Pulovar*--Same as No. 369/LIV with similar inscription.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	1256 A.H.
Total length	97.8 cm
Blade	77.4 cm
Hilt	20.4 cm

220. 369/LIV *Pulovar*—Double-edged, straight blade with a medial-rib; the part near ricasso is almost circular and bears inscription in gold on both sides reading: *Darsavā riyeḥ Julus Rājā Rāo Rambā Bahādur Āyn Āftābgīrī Tyyar Shud 1256 A.H.* (this sword called *āftābgīrī* was prepared for being carried in the procession of Rājā Rāo Rambā Bahādur). On the other side of the blade same inscription is repeated. The hilt has globular pommel with some balls inside which make jingling sound; oval-shaped grip and drooping quillons. The entire hilt is damascened in floral and creeper design in gold. Modern sheath.
- | | |
|--------------|-----------|
| Provenance | Hyderabad |
| School | Deccani |
| Date | 1256 A.H. |
| Total length | 95.9 cm |
| Blade | 76.0 cm |
| Hilt | 19.9 cm |

KHĀNDĀ

221. 19/LV *Khāndā*—Straight, single-edged blade with a false edge at lower end, widened at tip which is tongue-shaped. Damascus steel blade. The back edge is strengthened with steel in perforated design. Usual *khāndā* type hilt, without padding, is damascened in gold in floral and creeper design in *tehnishān* style.
- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| Provenance | Hyderabad |
| School | Deccani |
| Date | 17th century |
| Total length | 111.1 cm |
| Blade | 81.0 cm |
| Hilt | 30.1 cm |
222. 49/LIII *Khāndā*—Single-edged from the beginning and double-edged at the lower end. Damascus steel blade strengthened on both sides with open cut work in steel. Usual *khāndā* hilt has a ridged dome instead of a spike; the borders of the knuckle-guard are perforated. The entire hilt and its steel strengthening is damascened in gold in floral and creeper design.
- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| Provenance | Hyderabad |
| School | Deccani |
| Date | 17th century |
| Total length | 100.0 cm |
| Blade | 77.4 cm |
| Hilt | 22.6 cm |
223. 59/LIII *Khāndā*—Straight blade slightly widened at the end which is tongue-shaped; watered steel blade, single-edged with a false edge at lower end, strengthened by additional steel into the two-third of the blade. On both sides it bears inscription in Arabic in cartouches meaning "God will

help, victory is near". The hilt is of Damascus steel, without padding, and is riveted to the blade. The inscription, upper part of the blade, and the borders are all damascened in floral and creeper design in gold on both sides.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	Early 17th century
Total length	112.5 cm
Blade	82.8 cm
Hilt	29.7 cm

224. 77/LV *Khāndā*—Single-edged in the beginning and double-edged at the lower end, tongue-shaped point. Damascus steel blade, strengthening of steel in open cut work. The usual *khāndā* hilt of Damascus steel has a padding of velvet stuffed with cotton. The borders of the hilt, full seatings and the strengthening are damascened in gold in floral and creeper design.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	17th century
Total length	109.8 cm
Blade	78.2 cm
Hilt	31.6 cm

225. 365/LIV *Khāndā*—Exactly similar to NO.368/LIV.

226. 368/LIV *Khāndā*—Straight blade, single-edged on one side, double-edged at the lower end. Triangular point, artificial Damascus blade (*sakēlā*); steel strengthening of open cut work on both sides. Usual *khāndā* hilt has a padding of stuffed velvet. The entire strengthening, seatings and borders of the hilt are damascened in gold in floral and creeper design.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	Early 19th century
Total length	95.5 cm
Blade	67.5 cm
Hilt	28.0 cm

KILIJ

227. 31/LVI *Kilij*—Curved blade of Damascus steel. Pistol-shaped hilt is covered with two horn pieces and has a hole in the pommel. The cross-guard shows the traces of gold damascening (broken into two). The hilt is covered with black leather and has upper, lower and two middle fittings, all of them are of Damascus steel and are damascened in gold.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Indo-Turkish
Date	Sultanate period blade, 15th century

Total length	90.7 cm
Blade	74.5 cm
Hilt	16.2 cm

228. 127/LIV *Indo-Turkish Kiliĵ*—Fitted with a *tatwār* hilt; curved bade, single-edged, the lower part of Damascus steel bears an inscription *Yā Fatah* (a name of God) on one side. The *Delhīshāhī* hilt bears the traces of floral design in gold *koftgārī*. Sheath modern.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Indo-Turkish
Date	Sultanate period, blade-15th century Hilt-18th century

Total length	81.1 cm
Blade	65.6 cm
Hilt	15.5 cm

229. 203/LIV *Nīmcha Kiliĵ*—Curved blade with sharp edge on the convex side, the lower part is double-edged. The hilt consists of two pieces of bud-shaped rivets riveted to a steel tang shaped to the size.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	Early 19th century

Total length	54.8 cm
Blade	44.3 cm
Hilt	10.5 cm

230. 261/LIV-A *Kiliĵ*—Curved *shamshīr* blade of Damascus steel with an illegible inscription on one side. The upper side of the blade is strengthened with additional metal sheath which is damascened in gold in floral and creeper design. Plain solid pistol-shaped hilt bears a hole at the curved pommel. Wooden sheath is covered with shagreen leather and is mounted with upper, middle and lower fittings in perforated design. The mountings are of silver.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Indo-Turkish
Date	Sultanate period, 15th century

Total length	97.5 cm
Blade	80.2 cm
Hilt	17.3 cm

SALĀPĀ

231. 40/LIV *Salāpā*—Straight blade, single-edged on one side, double-edged at the lower end having three grooves. The *tatwār* hilt has the pommel like that of a crutch. The steel hilt is plain; only the grip has curvilinear lines. Brown wooden sheath is covered with brown leather.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccan

Date	18th century
Total length	98.8 cm
Blade	81.6 cm
Hilt	17.2 cm

232. 53/LIV *Salāpā*—Straight blade, single-edged at the lower end; the blade has a groove from the beginning to about 3/4 inches of the length. The blade is manufactured in London. The *talwār* hilt has a crutch pommel. The entire hilt is damascened in gold in floral and creeper design in relief. The wooden sheath is covered with brown leather and has a chape, decorated in the style of the hilt.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani with East India Company impact
Date	18th century
Total length	97.2 cm
Blade	82.5 cm
Hilt	14.7 cm

233. 132/LIV *Salāpā*—Straight, long, double-edged blade with a groove bearing some illegible inscriptions in English. Plain *talwār* hilt has a crutch pommel. Wooden sheath is covered with printed velvet.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	Early 19th century
Total length	122.1 cm
Blade	106.6 cm
Hilt	15.5 cm

ZULFIQĀR

234. 68/LIII *Zulfiqār*—Similar to No.69/LIII

Provenance	Almora, Uttar Pradesh
School	Pahārī
Date	16th century
Total length	94.4 cm
Blade	66.0 cm
Hilt	28.4 cm

235. 69/LIII *Zulfiqār*—The blade on the convex side is serrated all through and on the concave side serrated on the lower edge only; the blade bifurcates and has a round hole which looks like the beak of a bird. The blade is flexible and has a strong back edge. Plain *khāndā* hilt is riveted to the blade.

Provenance	Almora, Uttar Pradesh
School	Pahārī
Date	16th century
Total length	98.3 cm
Blade	66.7 cm
Hilt	31.6 cm

236. 121/LVI *Zulfiqār*—The curved sword is bifurcated at the lower end like the beak of a bird. *Jauhar* invisible; an inscription in gold in the middle of the blade reads *Yā Allāh* in Arabic. The part of the blade near the hilt is damascened in gold in floral and creeper design on both the sides. *Delhīshāhī* hilt has gold work in *koftgārī* in floral and creeper design. The wooden sheath is covered with red velvet cloth and is fitted with upper and middle fittings and chape. The upper and middle fittings are damascened in gold; each one of them bears the name *Bājī Sāhāb* at four places. Two steel rings, each to the upper and middle fitting, are attached.

Provenance	North India
School	Hilt Mughal; Blade, East India Company
Date	Early 19th century
Total length	98.4 cm
Blade	82.7 cm
Hilt	15.7 cm

YĀTĀGHAN

237. 276/LIV-A *Yātāghan*—Curved blade of Damascus steel. One side of the blade is inscribed all over in gold damascening recording the names of Allāh and verses in Arabic. The back edge is damascened in gold with verses from the holy *Qurān*. Steel hilt is fitted with two pieces of horns. The pistol-hilt-shaped pommel has a hole. The guard of metal is engraved in relief with bow, arrow and quiver on each side. One quillon is drooping down and the other is curved upwards. A chain is attached to serve as the knuckle-guard. Wooden sheath is covered with black leather and is fitted with long *tehnāl*, long chape and a small middle fitting engraved with a motif of bow, arrow and quiver in relief in the style of the guard.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Indo-Turkish
Date	Sultanate period, 15th century
Total length	102.1 cm
Blade	83.4 cm
Hilt	18.7 cm

238. 288/LIV-A *Yātāghan*—Curved blade of Damascus steel, edge on convex side; the back edge on one side is inscribed in gold reading *Māshā Allāh. Allāh Jawāhar-i-Amala*. On the other side *Amal-i-Foor*. The pistol hilt is covered with two pieces of horn and has a hole on the pommel for the sword-knot. The guard with the long quillons is engraved in high relief with floral and creeper design. The modern sheath is covered with faded green velvet and has a long *muhnāl*, a long *tehnāl* and two middle fittings with steel rings. All these sheath fittings are ornamented in the style of the guard of the hilt.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Indo-Turkish

Date	Sultanate period, 15th century
Total length	99.1 cm
Blade	81.5 cm
Hilt	17.6 cm

SAIF

239. 318/LIV-A *Saif*—Indo-Arabic *saif*, recurved plain blade, single-edged from the beginning and double-edged at the lower part. The hilt, made of silver, consists of a peculiar curved pommel, tubular grip, small bud-shaped quillons and triangular langets (one of them is broken and missing). A sword-knot of silver chain is attached. The wooden sheath is encased completely with thick silver plates having three bands chiselled all over in floral, creeper and geometrical designs. Two loops are attached.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	Late 17th century
Total length	84.7 cm
Blade	67.2 cm
Hilt	17.5 cm

240. 319/LIV-A *Saif*—Indo-Arabic *saif*, almost similar to No.318/LIV-A and both form a pair.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	Late 17th century
Total length	84.0 cm
Blade	67.4 cm
Hilt	16.6 cm

DHĀ

241. 78/LIV *Dhā*—Single-edged, pointed, straight blade with two grooves on each side; the hilt is wrapped with silver wire and capped with perforated silver. The wooden sheath is covered with thick silver plates engraved all over.

Provenance	Assam
School	North-eastern India
Date	18th century
Total length	52.5 cm
Blade	39.2 cm
Hilt	13.0 cm

242. 237/LIV *Khamtī Dhā*—Single-edged, slightly curved, heavy blade with a stout edge. The tip is cut like a crescent. The slightly curved rectangular hilt is of steel. Sheath modern.

Provenance	Assam
School	North-east India
Date	Early 19th century

Total length	61.5 cm
Blade	49.2 cm
Hilt	12.3 cm

NĀGAN

243. 366/LIV & 367/LIV *Nāgan*—Double-edged blade curved like a snake. The blade is decorated with various wild animals in golden wires on both the sides. The steel hilt, shaped like a bird, has a knuckle-guard and is damascened in gold *koftgāri*. The wooden sheath, covered with green velvet, is modern. Both form a pair.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	Early 19th century
Total length	71.4 cm
Blade	59.0 cm
Hilt	12.4 cm

244. 19/LIV-A *Serpentine Sword*—Plain blade, double-edged having one small groove on both sides. On one side it bears inscription in Nastāliq script in Arabic language. It is a part of *Nād-i-Āli*. The hilt is first plated with gold and then floral and creeper designs are engraved upon it. The straight wooden sheath is covered with faded velvet and is fitted with gold-plated chape.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	Beginning of the 19th century
Total length	103.1 cm
Blade	86.6 cm
Hilt	16.5 cm

245. 54/LIII *Pattisā*—Single-edged straight blade slightly wider at the lower end. The point is triangular. The upper side bears mythical figures including Gaṇesh, Durgā, etc. Hilt is like that of a *khāndā* with its quillons shaped like parrots and are drooping down. The hilt bears traces of gold work.

Provenance	Maharashtra
School	Maratha
Date	Late 18th century
Total length	105.4 cm
Blade	85.2 cm
Hilt	20.2 cm

MISC. SWORDS

246. 31/LIII *Turkish Sword*—Slightly curved blade bears grooves. The inscription in Arabic in *zarbuland* style reads: *Karkhane sarakhsikhan walī Daghistān* dated 1112 A.H. The hilt of silver is beautifully engraved and ornamented with niello design. The wooden sheath is covered with silver all over; on one

side it is delicately ornamented with niellow and enamelling, on the other side it is engraved with floral design. It seems that the work on the other side of the silver sheath could not be finished; the drawings are still to be seen.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	1112 A.H.
Total length	93.5 cm
Blade	78.5 cm
Hilt	15.0 cm

247. 39/LIII *Caucasian Sword*—Carved with two grooves and one depression on each side. Half of the blade is decorated with gold against blue background. The hilt, pistol-shaped, is covered with ivory pieces and is damascened in gold. The wooden sheath is covered with red velvet, the one side of which is plain and the other side is fitted with ivory piece damascened in gold all over in the style of the hilt. The sheath has one upper, one lower and two middle fittings.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Indo-Turkish
Date	15th century (gold work was done at a later date)
Total length	95.6 cm
Blade	79.5 cm
Hilt	16.1 cm

248. 51/LIV-A *Rapier*—Straight, narrow sword for fencing; single-edged at the lower end with one groove on each side. The *zafar takiyā* hilt is decorated all over with floral and creeper design in gold in *zarbuland* style. The wooden sheath is covered with brown leather and has a chape in the style of the hilt.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	Early 19th century
Total length	97.5 cm
Blade	82.5 cm
Hilt	15.0 cm

249. 56/LIII *Straight Sword*—Plain blade. A double barrelled flintlock pistol is affixed to it. The pistol is embellished with gold damascening and inscriptions all over. The inscriptions record *Noor Alī Shāh Asrār Hussain* and *Nād-i-Ālī*. Straight hilt of steel has curvilinear design. Wooden sheath is covered with red velvet and is fitted with middle and lower fittings which are ornamented in the style of the pistol.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	Early 19th century

- | | | |
|--|--------------|---------|
| | Total length | 70.6 cm |
| | Blade | 59.0 cm |
| | Hilt | 11.6 cm |
250. 139/LIV *Sword*—Curved blade profusely engraved with floral and creeper design, manufactured by Henry Wilkinson, Pall Mall, London. The name of the firm is written both in English and in Urdu. The pistol-grip-shaped-hilt is of *shamshīr* style. It is made of steel and is fitted with ivory sheets, one of them is completely missing and the second is partly missing and is damaged. The wooden sheath is covered with brown leather and is fitted with upper, middle and lower fittings of silver, profusely ornamented. It was manufactured in London by special appointment for a Deccan ruler.
- | | | |
|--|--------------|-------------------|
| | Provenance | London |
| | School | British |
| | Date | Late 19th century |
| | Total length | 102.8 cm |
| | Blade | 85.1 cm |
| | Hilt | 17.7 cm |
251. 238/LIV *Sword*—Single-edged, straight with slightly curved tip. The back edge is engraved all over with geometrical design. The cylindrical silver hilt, terminating like an antenna, covers the major part of the blade also and is engraved all over with floral and creeper design. The damaged wooden sheath covered with red velvet has perforated silver *muhnāl* and *tehnāl*.
- | | | |
|--|--------------|--------------------|
| | Provenance | Hyderabad |
| | School | Deccani |
| | Date | Early 19th century |
| | Total length | 81.9 cm |
| | Blade | 65.2 cm |
| | Hilt | 16.7 cm |
252. 391/LIV *Sword*—Single-edged straight sword, plain blade with a depression on both sides. The hilt with a globular pommel and oval-shaped grip is profusely damascened in gold in floral and creeper design and bears inscriptions in gold on both sides in Naskh script and Persian language they read *Barkhe ajal* (lighting of death) and *yāde baizā* (white hand of Moses). Sheath is missing.
- | | | |
|--|--------------|-------------------|
| | Provenance | Hyderabad |
| | School | Deccani |
| | Date | Mid. 19th century |
| | Total length | 96.0 cm |
| | Blade | 82.7 cm |
| | Hilt | 13.3 cm |
253. 397/LIV *Sword*—Recurved, plain blade with a deep groove, single-edged from the beginning and double-edged at the lower end. The ivory hilt is shaped like the head of a lion. It has no sheath.

Provenance	Karnataka
School	Mysore Style
Date	Late 18th century
Total length	98.7 cm
Blade	81.7 cm
Hilt	17.0 cm

254. 933/XLIX *Sword*—Presented by the Prince of Wales to Nawāb Mukhtār-ul-Mulk Sir Sālār Jung Bahādur in 1875. The blade was manufactured by Wilkinson in London. The pistol-shaped hilt is covered with two pieces of ivory. Metal sheath is fitted with upper, middle and lower fittings of copper engraved with floral motif and fitted with crown designs in silver.

Provenance	London
School	European
Date	1875 A.D.
Total length	99.2 cm
Blade	83.3 cm
Hilt	15.9 cm

255. 934/XLIX *Curved Sword*—Presented to Nawāb Sālār Jung Bahādur by Viscount Kitchener, the then Commander-in-chief of India, in 1908. The European blade is beautifully etched. The pistol-shaped hilt is covered with two ivory pieces. The cross-guard and the hilt is like that of a Turkish *qilich*.

Provenance	London
School	European
Date	1908 A.D.
Total length	100.0 cm
Blade	84.5 cm
Hilt	15.5 cm

CHAPTER III

DAGGER

ORIGIN

The beginning of a dagger can be traced in the flint handaxes of the Stone Age. Dagger was a weapon with short blade designated for thrusting, and used for close hand to hand fighting or in a situation where the warrior was unable to take the swing with the sword. The princesses invariably kept a dagger or a knife with them for self defence or for committing suicide, if there was no way out to save their chastity. These were also used in hunting, in games, in giving and taking presents and in domestic affairs.¹

CLASSIFICATION

1. *Afghan Knife*

It has a stright, heavy, single-edged blade tapering gradually from the hilt to the point.² The back edge, thick and wide, has a mid-rib. The hilt is formed of two flat pieces of horn, bone or ivory riveted to the flat tang. It is also called Khyber knife since it is the national dagger of the Afridis³ living near the Khyber Pass between India and Afghanistan.⁴ This specimen became very popular in India during the Mughal period.⁵

2. *Bhuj*

It is a short, heavy, single-edged, axe-cum-dagger whose blade is mounted in line with straight handle about 20 inches long. It is the weapon of Bhuj in Gujarat whose name it bears. There is usually an elephant's head at the base of the blade.⁶

3. *Bichhawā*

Literally a 'scorpion',⁷ It was doubly curved and double-edged with a guarded or looped hilt. It was made both right-and-left-handed and sometimes had forked blades. Sometimes it was combined with tiger-claw (*baghnakha*) and the two weapons in one were called *bichhawā-baghnakha*.⁸

4. *Chilanum*

It has double-edged, recurved blade. The pommel and the guard are nearly of the same shape and size and usually forged with one piece with the blade. This was a favourite dagger of the Marathas.⁹

5. *Jambiā*

Its blade is invariably curved and mostly of fine watered steel.¹⁰ The hilt of wood, horn, ivory or metal is delicately carved, sometimes studded with jewels. The scabbards are

covered with stamped leather, silk or velvet and have mounts, locket and chape which are chased, inlaid, enamelled or otherwise ornamented.¹¹

6. *Jamadhar*

Wrongly called *kaṭār*. It is a typical Indian dagger found nowhere else.¹² Its handle is made of two parallel bars connected by two or more cross-pieces.¹³ The triangular-shaped, double-edged blade gradually tapers and has a thickened end. Probably the Maratha gauntlet *paṭṭā* sword might have evolved from the *jamadhar*.¹⁴

7. *Kard*

It is a straight-bladed dagger with a straight hilt and no guard. It was introduced by the Mughals in the 16th century A.D.¹⁵ It is a fanciful weapon generally carried by the princesses. It is mostly of Damascus steel, is single-edged and the point is thickened to permit it to be forced through mail.¹⁶ The small hilt is made of jade, agate, crystal, ivory (both elephant and walrus) or some other metal or precious stone.¹⁷

8. *Khanjar*

This was the favourite of the Mughals. The double-edged, slightly curved blade was usually of fine forging of watered steel.¹⁸ The hilt, made of ivory or metal or semi-precious stone, was frequently set with jewels.¹⁹ The pommel is carved like an animal, a bird or a flower.

9. *Khanjarālī*

It is a Hindu dagger, mainly from Vijayanagar in South India, with a strongly double-edged blade and a large lunette pommel.²⁰ The hilt is made of two pieces of ivory riveted to a flat tang. The blade is recurved and grooved and has a thickened end. It has a small knuckle-guard.

10. *Kindjal*

It originated in Caucasus and was introduced in India by the Turks in the 13th century A.D.²¹ It has a broad, double-edged blade with parallel sides for the greater part of its length, and a very fine long sharp point. It has one deep groove, on both sides, running from the top to a few inches near the bottom. The hilt has broad, hemispherical or dome-shaped pommel with two or more dome-shaped rivets on the front side of the grip.²² Its two variants are *qāmā* and *quaddārā*.

11. *Peshqabz*

Literally 'foregrip'. It was pointed one-edged dagger having a thick straight back to the blade and a straight handle without a guard.²³ The blade of T-section was wide at the hilt, narrowed just below it and then tapered regularly to a very slender point. The hilt has no distinct pommel. A small tang or a ring is often attached to the top of the hilt.²⁴

12. *Qumā*

There is hardly any distinction between a *qumā*, a *kindjal* and a *quaddārā*. All have the same kind of double-edged, straight blade with a deep groove and a typical hilt. However,

the *qumās* vary less in size than *kindjals* and are more uniformly of good workmanship. The *quaddārā* is, in fact, a very long *kindjal*, the longest of the three.

13. *Barā Jamadūdū*

It is a Maratha form of *jamadhar* intermediate in size between the usual *jamadhar* and the gauntlet (*paṭṭā*) sword. It is an elongated *jamadhar*.²⁵ It has a long, double-edged, pointed blade grooved all over. The comparatively short hilt bears a knuckle-guard and is padded with velvet.

14. *Chhurā*

It is a general name for daggers, the smaller ones being called *chhuri*. Technically it refers to the daggers used in the North-west frontiers. The blade is quite wide at the hilt, narrowing suddenly just below it, and then tapering regularly to a slender point. It has no distinct pommel. The sheath of wood is covered with leather.

15. *Tanjore Dagger*

Originated in Tanjore, Tamilnadu hence the name. It has a recurved, double-edged blade (sometimes of brass) terminating into the head of a lion with a knuckle-guard.

16. *Ayda Kaṭṭi*

It has a broad, heavy single-edged blade very much wider at the end than at the hilt and sharp on the concave side. The hilt is either of horn, wood or ivory. It has no guard but has a large kite-shaped pommel. It was mostly worn unsheathed upon the back being passed through a flattened brass ring with a spike projecting from its centre which was attached to a belt fastened by massive silver chains in front. This was very popular among the Moplahs of Coorg (Malabar) and was also used in Karnataka.

CONCLUSION

Most soldiers and kings have carried some kind of a dagger or knife from the earliest times. Changes in styles in daggers were fewer than with the swords and at a given period several types were in use. There are many references of daggers in Indian sculptures, in paintings and on coins and a number of actual specimens of various types are available in the different museums and private collections even today. Mention may be made of an exquisite emerald and ruby fruit knife, encrusted with jewels said to have been owned by Nūr Jahān and the hunting knife of Jahāngīr studded with diamonds, rubies and emeralds – both are in the Salar Jung Museum, Hyderabad.

REFERENCES

1. Generally a 'dagger' and a 'knife' is not distinguished, however, the basic function of a dagger is to thrust, to stab, to penetrate or to pierce while that of a knife is to sever, to peel, to cut and to sharpen.
2. It has been variously named as 'Khyber knife', 'Afghan *chhurā*', *salawār*, *charay*, etc.
3. The pommel of the hilt has a slight projection on one side but the most common variety had the shape like the ridges of a hill. It is generally without a knuckle-guard. The wooden sheath, mostly covered with stamped black leather, is long enough to cover the major part of the hilt also.

4. The blade of Khyber knife is generally of watered steel and measures between 15 to 30 inches.
5. In the National Museum, New Delhi, alone more than 500 such daggers of various shapes, sizes and makes are preserved.
6. Two *bhujs* are displayed in the National Museum, New Delhi. Both are from Sind (now in Pakistan) and are datable to the 18th century A.D. Both contain a small knife each concealed in their handles.
7. The shape is derived from that of the old horn daggers which had the curve of buffalo horns from which they were made. Still *bichhawā* is said to be named for its resemblance to the sting of a scorpion (*bichhawā*).
8. The finest specimens of *bichhawā* were produced in Tanjore (Tamilnadu) in the 17th-18th centuries A.D. Here the blades, generally 9 inches long, are ribbed and the hilts, sometimes of copper but generally of iron, are beautifully carved.
9. The total average length was 15 inches and width of the blade 2 inches. The blade was usually ribbed with thickened end. It may not have a knuckle-guard.
10. It is fundamentally an Arab dagger but is now almost universally found in all those countries where the Arabs lived at some time or the other. The finest examples were produced in Persia and India in the 17th century.
11. In India many varieties of *jambiā* are available in all length and styles. The National Museum, New Delhi, alone has a few hundred *jambiās*.
12. This weapon has very widely been confused with *katār*. The etymology of the word is *jama* = *Yama*, the God of Death, and *dhar* (*dādhī*, tooth) i.e., Jaws of Death.
13. The blade cannot be bent. It is so stiff that nothing could stop it but a cuirass. The total length of the weapon is 2 to 2 1/2 feet, one half of this being the blade.
14. The *jamadhar* is by far the best purely thrusting knife. Some *jamadhars* are plain but most of them are often chiselled, inlaid or perforated. The *jamadhars* have many variants.
15. It became one of the most popular weapons and today it is represented in good numbers in all the museums of India having the collection of arms. More than 200 *kards* are preserved in the National Museum, New Delhi, alone.
16. The *kard* and *pešqabz* sometimes look alike but the two are altogether different weapons. The blade of a *pešqabz* is wider near the ricasso and it abruptly tapers down giving a crescent-shaped look and terminates into a point while the *kard* blade tapers gradually.
17. The average total length of a *kard* is about 12 inches out of which the blade alone measures 8 inches.
18. It was more highly decorated than any other form of knife. The hilts of *khanjar* are perhaps the finest which are made of some hard material and frequently set with jewels. The wooden sheaths, covered with velvet, are studded to match the hilts.
19. In the Salar Jung Museum, Hyderabad, are displayed the personal *khanjars* of Jahāngīr and his wife Nūr Jahān while that of Aurangzēb is exhibited in the National Museum, New Delhi.
20. The peculiarity of the weapon lies in its hilt, specially the pommel.
21. The blades are frequently paneled and marked with seals. The inscriptions, damascened in gold, are found on both sides of the blade.

22. A very common sight is two different cheeks, one of ivory and the second of horn, riveted to the steel tang to form the hilt. The sheaths are covered with shagreen leather and mounted with silver chapes and lockets, tastefully chiselled.
23. The *peshqabz* was fundamentally invented for forcing an opening in mail and it admirably does its job. The sheath of wood is covered with velvet and fitted with silver mountings. Complete silver scabbards, ornamented all over, are also available.
24. A *peshqabz* displayed in the Alwar Museum, Alwar (Rajasthan), has the hilt of steel damascened in gold, the hilt is hollow and conceals a knife, a saw, a chisel and a file with ivory handles.
25. G.C. Stone, *op. cit.*, p. 519, fig. 663.

KARD

256. 21/LIV *Kard*—Single-edged blade of watered steel of *qumā* variety with a thickened tip. The part near the forte is chiselled with flowers and creepers on both sides. The upper band and a part of the back edge is damascened in gold. The tubular plain hilt is of walrus ivory. Wooden sheath, encased with red velvet, is fitted with perforated silver chape.
- | | |
|--------------|-------------|
| Provenance | North India |
| School | Late Mughal |
| Date | c 1730 A.D. |
| Total length | 34.0 cm |
| Blade | 21.9 cm |
| Hilt | 12.1 cm |
257. 22/LIV *Kard*—Fine Damascus steel blade; hilt of two pieces of walrus ivory fixed on the bud-shaped steel tang whose borders are damascened in floral design in gold. Sheath modern.
- | | |
|--------------|-------------|
| Provenance | North India |
| School | Late Mughal |
| Date | c 1725 A.D. |
| Total length | 31.1 cm |
| Blade | 21.0 cm |
| Hilt | 10.1 cm |
258. 23/LIV *Kard*—Damascus steel blade whose upper side has a gold damascened band. Plain tubular hilt of solid walrus ivory. Sheath modern.
- | | |
|--------------|------------------|
| Provenance | Alwar, Rajasthan |
| School | Mughal |
| Date | c 1700 A.D. |
| Total length | 32.9 cm |
| Blade | 21.7 cm |
| Hilt | 11.2 cm |
259. 24/LIV *Kard*—Similar to No.176/LIV
- | | |
|--------------|-------------|
| Provenance | North India |
| School | Late Mughal |
| Date | c 1720 A.D. |
| Total length | 31.4 cm |
| Blade | 21.1 cm |
| Hilt | 10.3 cm |
260. 25/LIV *Kard*—Single-edged, straight blade of watered steel. The upper band is damascened in gold in floral design. The tubular hilt is of walrus ivory. The wooden sheath with red velvet is fitted with perforated silver *muhnāl* and *tehnāl*.
- | | |
|------------|-------------|
| Provenance | North India |
| School | Late Mughal |
| Date | c 1780 A.D. |

Total length	33.0 cm
Blade	21.3 cm
Hilt	11.7 cm

261. 26/LIV *Kard*—Straight blade of Damascus steel. The upper side is damascened in gold in relief. Plain hilt of walrus ivory. Sheath modern. Inscription *Jāmi* on blade.

Provenance	North India
School	Late Mughal
Date	c 1720 A.D.
Total length	28.6 cm
Blade	17.8 cm
Hilt	10.8 cm

262. 27/LIV *Kard*—Two independent *kards* of watered steel blade made as if to form one single *kard*; one half has slits and the second half originally had the knobs (now broken). The tubular hilt is made of two pieces of walrus ivory with a steel base. The wooden sheath with black velvet is encased with perforated *muhnāl* and *tehnāl*.

Provenance	North India
School	Late Mughal
Date	Late 18th century
Total length	32.8 cm
Blade	21.0 cm
Hilt	11.8 cm

263. 28/LIV *Kard*—Single-edged, straight blade of watered steel of *qumā* variety. The part near the forte is damascened in gold *koftgārī*. Plain tubular hilt is of walrus ivory. The wooden sheath, covered with faded blue velvet, has upper and lower fittings of perforated silver.

Provenance	North India
School	Late Mughal
Date	c 1730 A.D.
Total length	34.0 cm
Blade	22.3 cm
Hilt	11.7 cm

264. 29/LIV *Kard*—Similar to No. 189/LIV with little variation in ornamentation.

Provenance	North India
School	Late Mughal
Date	c 1750 A.D.
Total length	34.5 cm
Blade	21.5 cm
Hilt	13.0 cm

265. 30/LIV *Kard*—Watered steel blade, cylindrical hilt of two walrus ivory pieces riveted to the steel plate. The borders of the hilt are damascened in gold in floral and creeper design in *tehnishān* style. Sheath modern.

Provenance	Alwar, Rajasthan
School	Mughal
Date	c 1700 A.D.
Total length	36.0 cm
Blade	23.4 cm
Hilt	12.6 cm

266. 31/LIV *Kard*—Single-edged, watered steel blade of *Karā Khurāssān* variety. The steel hilt is supported by two pieces of plain ivory and its both sides are embellished with Qurānic verses in Arabic in gold. The wooden sheath is covered with black leather.

Provenance	Delhi or Alwar
School	Mughal
Date	c 1700 A.D.
Total length	32.1 cm
Blade	20.9 cm
Hilt	11.2 cm

267. 33/LIV *Kard*—Damascus steel blade with upper side damascened in gold. The hilt consists of two ivory cheeks riveted to a steel plate.

Provenance	Rajasthan
School	Rajput
Date	Early 18th century
Total length	38.3 cm
Blade	27.6 cm
Hilt	10.7 cm

268. 34/LIV. *Kard*—Straight blade, ricasso damascened in gold in low relief showing two birds and flowers on each side. Steel hilt is covered with two pieces of walrus ivory. Sheath modern.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	Late 17th century
Total length	32.3 cm
Blade	20.7 cm
Hilt	11.6 cm

269. 36/LIV *Kard*—Single-edged, straight blade of watered steel engraved with inscription in Persian reading *Taqūi*. The upper part of the hilt is damascened in floral design in gold. The steel hilt is covered with two cheeks of plain ivory; one of them is broken; sheath modern.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Period	17th century
Total length	35.6 cm
Blade	24.0 cm

- | | | |
|-------------|---|--------------|
| | Hilt | 11.6 cm |
| 270. 37/LIV | <i>Kard</i> —Similar to No.180-LIV but the hilt is of two pieces of walrus ivory. Wooden sheath, covered with blue velvet and fitted with <i>muhnāl</i> and <i>teh-nāl</i> , is damascened in floral design in gold. A small steel locket is attached to the <i>muhnāl</i> . | |
| | Provenance | North India |
| | School | Late Mughal |
| | Date | c 1725 A.D. |
| | Total length | 29.4 cm |
| | Blade | 18.5 cm |
| | Hilt | 10.9 cm |
| 271. 38/LIV | <i>Kard</i> —Similar to No.176 LIV. The modern sheath is fitted with original gold-plated <i>muhnāl</i> . | |
| | Provenance | North India |
| | School | Mughal |
| | Date | c 1720 A.D. |
| | Total length | 29.7 cm |
| | Blade | 19.5 cm |
| | Hilt | 10.2 cm |
| 272. 39/LIV | <i>Kard</i> —Straight blade of Damascus steel. Cylindrical hilt of solid one piece stone is encased with a metal cap which is damascened in gold. Modern sheath has an upper and lower fitting beautifully damascened in gold in <i>Gangā-Yamunī</i> work. These fittings, however, belong to some other sheath. | |
| | Provenance | Hyderabad |
| | School | Deccani |
| | Date | 18th century |
| | Total length | 28.1 cm |
| | Blade | 16.9 cm |
| | Hilt | 11.2 cm |
| 273. 40/LIV | <i>Kard</i> —Straight blade of Damascus steel. Ricasso shows a flower with four leaves on each side in high relief and is gold-plated. Damaged cylindrical hilt is of crystal. No sheath. | |
| | Provenance | Hyderabad |
| | School | Deccani |
| | Date | 18th century |
| | Total length | 25.2 cm |
| | Blade | 15.3 cm |
| | Hilt | 9.9 cm |
| 274. 41/LIV | <i>Kard</i> —Single-edged blade of watered steel whose upper part is engraved with floral and creeper design. The portion near the hilt consists of solid head of an elephant whose eyes are studded with two red stones. The octagonal, solid, plain ivory handle has a screw with which the blade is screwed. Sheath missing. | |
| | Provenance | Rajasthan |

- | | | |
|-------------|--|-------------------|
| | School | Rajput |
| | Date | Late 18th century |
| | Total length | 35.6 cm |
| | Blade | 19.3 cm |
| | Hilt | 16.3 cm |
| 275. 42/LIV | <i>Kard</i> —Similar to No. 176 LIV but without gold damascening. | |
| | Provenance | North India |
| | School | Late Mughal |
| | Date | c 1720 A.D. |
| | Total length | 27.6 cm |
| | Blade | 17.2 cm |
| | Hilt | 10.4 cm |
| 276. 43/LIV | <i>Kard</i> —Damascus steel blade; tubular hilt of plain steel; sheath modern. | |
| | Provenance | Hyderabad |
| | School | Deccani |
| | Date | 18th century |
| | Total length | 33.2 cm |
| | Blade | 21.9 cm |
| | Hilt | 11.3 cm |
| 277. 44/LIV | <i>Kard</i> —Damascus steel blade, tubular hilt of plain steel. Sheath modern. | |
| | Provenance | Hyderabad |
| | School | Deccani |
| | Date | 18th century |
| | Total length | 33.5 cm |
| | Blade | 21.4 cm |
| | Hilt | 11.1 cm |
| 278. 45/LIV | <i>Kard</i> —Watered steel blade has one groove on the upper side of the blade and the second groove on the reverse side at the lower end. The hilt, covered with silver plate, is engraved with floral, creeper and dot design. Sheath is modern. | |
| | Provenance | North-west India |
| | School | Paṭhān |
| | Date | 17th century |
| | Total length | 30.8 cm |
| | Blade | 19.7 cm |
| | Hilt | 11.1 cm |
| 279. 46/LIV | <i>Kard</i> —Damascus steel blade, hilt of one piece of jade. Wooden sheath covered with faded velvet has gold-plated <i>tehnāl</i> and <i>muhnāl</i> . | |
| | Provenance | North India |
| | School | Late Mughal |
| | Date | 18th century |
| | Total length | 27.1 cm |
| | Blade | 17.8 cm |

- | | | |
|-------------|---|--------------------------|
| | Hilt | 9.3 cm |
| 280. 48/LIV | <i>Kard</i> —Single-edged, straight blade of watered steel. Its upper side is damascened in gold. The cylindrical hilt of walrus ivory is engraved with floral and creeper motif all over. Sheath modern. | |
| | Provenance | North India |
| | School | Mughal |
| | Date | Late 17th century |
| | Total length | 27.1 cm |
| | Blade | 16.3 cm |
| | Hilt | 10.8 cm |
| 281. 49/LIV | <i>Kard</i> —It was meant for the young princess. It has watered steel blade and a tubular hilt of the solid piece of walrus ivory. The lower part of the hilt is damascened in floral design in gold. Sheath modern. | |
| | Provenance | Lahore (now in Pakistan) |
| | School | Late Mughal |
| | Date | c 1720 A.D. |
| | Total length | 27.5 cm |
| | Blade | 16.9 cm |
| | Hilt | 10.6 cm |
| 282. 50/LIV | <i>Kard</i> —Similar to No. 176 LIV | |
| | Provenance | North India |
| | School | Late Mughal |
| | Date | c 1720 A.D. |
| | Total length | 28.7 cm |
| | Blade | 19.2 cm |
| | Hilt | 9.5 cm |
| 283. 51/LIV | <i>Kard</i> —It was for the young princes made of Damascus steel blade. Cylindrical hilt of walrus ivory is cracked. Sheath modern. | |
| | Provenance | North India |
| | School | Mughal |
| | Date | 17th century |
| | Total length | 23.5 cm |
| | Blade | 13.9 cm |
| | Hilt | 9.6 cm |
| 284. 52/LIV | <i>Kard</i> —Single-edged, straight blade of fine Damascus. The upper side is engraved with floral design and at places is damascened in gold. Plain tubular hilt is of walrus ivory. Sheath modern. | |
| | Provenance | North India |
| | School | Mughal |
| | Date | Late 17th century |
| | Total length | 24.6 cm |
| | Blade | 14.9 cm |
| | Hilt | 9.7 cm |

285. 53/LIV *Kard*—Blade of welded Damascus. The cylindrical hilt is damascened in gold *koftigāri* all over. The tubular steel sheath is profusely damascened in gold and has a silver buckle.
- | | |
|--------------|-------------|
| Provenance | North India |
| School | Late Mughal |
| Date | c 1760 A.D. |
| Total length | 28.6 cm |
| Blade | 18.0 cm |
| Hilt | 10.6 cm |
286. 54/LIV *Kard*—Watered steel blade straight on the side of the edge and curved on the back edge. Cylindrical hilt of one solid stone has a knob on the top (now missing) and a steel cap damascened in gold below. Wooden sheath (damaged) is covered with red velvet.
- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| Provenance | Hyderabad |
| School | Deccani |
| Date | 18th century |
| Total length | 35.0 cm |
| Blade | 22.7 cm |
| Hilt | 12.3 cm |
287. 55/LIV *Kard*—Single-edged, straight blade of watered steel of *Karā Khurāssān* variety. The hollow silver hilt has enamelled blue surface and is inlaid with silver wire in high relief forming floral and creeper design. The wooden sheath with faded red velvet has *muhnāl* and *tehnāl* which are embellished in the style of the hilt.
- | | |
|--------------|-------------------|
| Provenance | Hyderabad |
| School | Deccani |
| Date | Late 18th century |
| Total length | 30.7 cm |
| Blade | 20.3 cm |
| Hilt | 10.4 cm |
288. 56/LIV-A *Kard*—Single-edged, straight blade of watered steel of *qumā* variety with its upper side damascened in gold, in frond design in *zarbuland* technique. The tubular hilt is of dark green plain jade and its lower part is capped with steel and is damascened in frond design in gold in *tehnishān* style. The wooden sheath with its red velvet is encased with steel *tehnāl* and *muhnāl* which are damascened in two different kinds of gold forming floral design in *Gangā-Yamunī* variety.
- | | |
|--------------|--------------------|
| Provenance | Rajasthan |
| School | Rajput |
| Date | Early 18th century |
| Total length | 98.4 cm |
| Blade | 81.6 cm |
| Hilt | 16.8 cm |
289. 57/LIV *Kard*—Similar to No. 180-LIV; Sheath modern.

- | | | |
|--------------|---|--------------------|
| | Provenance | North India |
| | School | Late Mughal |
| | Date | c 1725 A.D. |
| | Total length | 38.5 cm |
| | Blade | 26.4 cm |
| | Hilt | 12.1 cm |
| 290. 61/LIV | <i>Kard</i> —Single-edged, straight blade of Damascus steel of <i>Karā Khurāssān</i> variety. The upper side of the blade is damascened in gold in floral design in <i>tehnishān</i> style. The steel hilt is covered with two pieces of ivory and is damascened in frond design in gold. The wooden sheath is covered with damaged embroidered silk. | |
| | Provenance | Alwar, Rajasthan |
| | School | Mughal |
| | Date | c 1700 A.D. |
| | Total length | 28.9 cm |
| | Blade | 16.8 cm |
| | Hilt | 12.1 cm |
| 291. 62/LIV | <i>Kard</i> —Similar to No. 180 LIV. Sheath modern. | |
| | Provenance | North India |
| | School | Late Mughal |
| | Date | c 1725 A.D. |
| | Total length | 35.2 cm |
| | Blade | 23.7 cm |
| | Hilt | 11.5 cm |
| 292. 132/LIV | <i>Kard</i> —Damascus steel blade. The hilt consists of two plates of steel tang shaped to the size. The borders of the hilt are damascened in gold in geometrical design. Sheath modern. | |
| | Provenance | Hyderabad |
| | School | Deccani |
| | Date | Early 18th century |
| | Total length | 122.1 cm |
| | Blade | 106.6 cm |
| | Hilt | 15.5 cm |
| 293. 163/LIV | <i>Kard</i> —Very long blade of fine Damascus steel. The octagonal hilt of solid steel has gold damascening on its borders. Sheath modern fitted with original <i>muhnāl</i> and <i>tehnāl</i> damascened in gold <i>koftgāri</i> . | |
| | Provenance | North-west India |
| | School | Pathān |
| | Date | Early 18th century |
| | Total length | 38.0 cm |
| | Blade | 25.0 cm |
| | Hilt | 13.0 cm |
| 294. 164/LIV | <i>Kard</i> —Straight blade of Damascus steel; steel hilt covered with two pieces | |

of walrus ivory. The steel hilt contains 12 names of Allāh in Arabic and *Yā Kanī el Hājad* and *Muhammad* and *Alī* in gold. Sheath with *muhnāl* and *teh-nāl* is of perforated silver.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	17th century
Total length	34.4 cm
Blade	22.9 cm
Hilt	11.5 cm

295. 165/LIV *Kard*—Fine Damascus steel blade with a rounded tip and a rib on the back edge. The hilt consists of two pieces of walrus ivory riveted to the steel plate. The sides of the hilt and its lower part are damascened in gold in floral and creeper design in *zarbuland* style. There is a gap between the hilt and the base of the blade which has been fitted with the help of nails. Sheath modern.

Provenance	Lahore (now in Pakistan)
School	Mughal
Date	c 1700 A.D.
Total length	38.8 cm
Blade	25.3 cm
Hilt	13.5 cm

296. 166/LIV *Kard*—Damascus steel blade; hilt of one piece of solid ivory engraved all over with floral and creeper design and studded with six emeralds. Wooden sheath, covered with shagreen leather, has a plain *muhnāl*, a small buckle and long chape of perforated silver.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	Mid. 17th century
Total length	38.5 cm
Blade	26.1 cm
Hilt	12.4 cm

297. 167/LIV *Kard*—Similar to No. 30/LIV. Sheath modern.

Provenance	Alwar, Rajasthan
School	Mughal
Date	c 1700 A.D.
Total length	35.6 cm
Blade	23.7 cm
Hilt	11.9 cm

298. 168/LIV *Kard*—Similar to No. 30/LIV, sheath modern.

Provenance	Alwar (Rajasthan)
School	Mughal
Date	c 1700 A.D.
Total length	35.3 cm

- | | | |
|--------------|--|------------------|
| | Blade | 23.8 cm |
| | Hilt | 11.5 cm |
| 299. 169/LIV | <i>Kard</i> —Similar to No. 173/LIV. Sheath modern. | |
| | Provenance | Delhi |
| | School | Mughal |
| | Date | c 1700 A.D. |
| | Total length | 38.4 cm |
| | Blade | 26.8 cm |
| | Hilt | 11.6 cm |
| 300. 170/LIV | <i>Kard</i> —Single-edged, straight blade of Damascus steel. The hilt is fitted with two cheeks of plain walrus ivory. Blade bears a small inscription in gold reading <i>Taqi</i> . The wooden sheath is covered with damaged red velvet and gold-plated <i>muhñāl</i> and <i>tehnāl</i> . | |
| | Provenance | Hyderabad |
| | School | Deccani |
| | Date | 17th century |
| | Total length | 37.5 cm |
| | Blade | 24.0 cm |
| | Hilt | 13.5 cm |
| 301. 171/LIV | <i>Kard</i> —Fine Damascus steel blade; the part near the forte and above it is beautifully inscribed in gold in <i>tehnishān</i> style. The inscription reads : <i>Sāhabā-i-Sultān Adā</i> . The hilt consists of two cheeks of walrus ivory riveted to the Damascus steel plate. The back edge of the blade is partly inscribed. Sheath missing. | |
| | Provenance | Delhi |
| | School | Sultanate period |
| | Date | 15th century |
| | Total length | 38.4 cm |
| | Blade | 24.0 cm |
| | Hilt | 14.4 cm |
| 302. 172/LIV | <i>Kard</i> —Fine Damascus steel blade; the upper part of the hilt, the forte and side portion of back edge are inscribed in gold damascening in <i>tehnishān</i> style. There is a rib on the groove. The hilt consists of two pieces of walrus ivory fixed to the steel tang, flattened and shaped to the size. Sheath modern. The inscription records the <i>Ailus Hasan</i> from the holy <i>Qurān</i> . | |
| | Provenance | Delhi |
| | School | Sultanate period |
| | Date | 15th century |
| | Total length | 37.2 cm |
| | Blade | 22.8 cm |
| | Hilt | 14.4 cm |
| 303. 173/LIV | <i>Kard</i> —Damascus steel blade. The part near the forte is engraved with floral and creeper design. The hilt consists of two pieces of ivory riveted to a | |

steel plate. The borders and the lower part of the hilt are damascened in floral and creeper design in gold. Sheath modern.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Mughal
Date	c 1700 A.D.
Total length	38.2 cm
Blade	25.8 cm
Hilt	12.4 cm

304. 174/LIV *Kard*—Similar to No. 191/LIV, hilt broken, sheath modern.

Provenance	North-west India
School	Pathān
Date	c 1725 A.D.
Total length	36.5 cm
Blade	24.0 cm
Hilt	12.5 cm

305. 175/LIV *Kard*—Damascus steel blade, single-edged, gradually tapering and with a thickened end. The part near ricasso is engraved in high relief on both sides with inscriptions which are verses from the holy *Qurān* in Arabic language. The plain solid hilt is of silver. The wooden sheath is covered with red faded velvet and is mounted with upper and lower fittings of chased and perforated silver.

Provenance	North India
School	Late Mughal
Date	c 1720 A.D.
Total length	36.6 cm
Blade	24.5 cm
Hilt	12.1 cm

306. 176/LIV *Kard*—Straight blade of Damascus steel, upper part and the bands of the hilt are damascened in gold in floral and creeper design. Steel hilt is covered with two pieces of walrus ivory. Wooden sheath, covered with shagreen leather, has a *muhnāl* and *tehnāl* damascened in gold.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	c 1720 A.D.
Total length	35.8 cm
Blade	24.8 cm
Hilt	11.0 cm

307. 177/LIV *Kard*—Watered steel blade of *Karā Khurāssān* variety, single-edged. The part near the forte is damascened in gold in floral design in *tehnishān* style. The steel hilt is flanked by two plain ivory pieces and its sides are damascened in gold. The damaged wooden sheath, covered with red velvet, has a perforated silver chape.

Provenance	Lahore (now in Pakistan)
------------	--------------------------

- | | | |
|--------------|--|--------------------|
| | School | Mughal |
| | Date | c 1700 A.D. |
| | Total length | 34.4 cm |
| | Blade | 22.6 cm |
| | Hilt | 11.8 cm |
| 308. 179/LIV | <i>Kard</i> —Single-edged straight blade of artificial steel (<i>sakélā</i>) bearing some impressions in English. Steel hilt is covered with two pieces of walrus ivory. Its borders are damascened in gold in floral and creeper design in <i>zarbuland</i> style. | |
| | Provenance | Hyderabad |
| | School | Company School |
| | Date | Early 19th century |
| | Total length | 39.1 cm |
| | Blade | 26.5 cm |
| | Hilt | 12.6 cm |
| 309. 180/LIV | <i>Kard</i> —Fine Damascus steel blade; hilt of two pieces of ivory fixed on the bud-shaped steel tang whose borders are damascened in floral design in gold. Sheath modern. | |
| | Provenance | North India |
| | School | Late Mughal |
| | Date | c 1725 A.D. |
| | Total length | 35.3 cm |
| | Blade | 24.5 cm |
| | Hilt | 10.8 cm |
| 310. 181/LIV | <i>Kard</i> —Single-edged, straight blade of watered steel; steel hilt is fitted with two cheeks of plain walrus ivory. The band of the hilt, all around, is inscribed with illegible inscription in gold, probably verses from the holy <i>Qurān</i> . Sheath modern. | |
| | Provenance | Hyderabad |
| | School | Deccani |
| | Date | 17th century |
| | Total length | 33.7 cm |
| | Blade | 22.0 cm |
| | Hilt | 11.7 cm |
| 311. 182/LIV | <i>Kard</i> —Straight blade of Damascus steel of <i>Kirknarduban</i> style. The cylindrical hilt of Damascus steel has borders damascened in gold. Sheath modern. | |
| | Provenance | Alwar (Rajasthan) |
| | School | Mughal |
| | Date | Mid. 17th century |
| | Total length | 31.5 cm |
| | Blade | 19.5 cm |
| | Hilt | 12.0 cm |

312. 183/LIV *Kard*—Similar to No. 188/LIV.
 Provenance Delhi
 School Mughal
 Date c 1700 A.D.
 Total length 39.5 cm
 Blade 28.1 cm
 Hilt 11.4 cm
313. 184/LIV *Kard*—Similar to No. 188/LIV but the hilt is of elephant ivory.
 Provenance Delhi
 School Mughal
 Date c 1700 A.D.
 Total length 36.4 cm
 Blade 25.0 cm
 Hilt 11.4 cm
314. 185/LIV *Kard*—Straight blade of Damascus steel. The back edge shows pearls running (*moti daudati*) design. Forte is damascened in gold on both sides. Steel hilt is covered with two pieces of walrus ivory. Sheath of some other piece.
 Provenance North India
 School Mughal
 Date c 1720 A.D.
 Total length 34.1 cm
 Blade 20.8 cm
 Hilt 13.3 cm
315. 186/LIV *Kard*—Plain blade. The upper side of the blade and the entire back edge is damascened in gold in floral and creeper design in *tehnishān* style. The tubular hilt of a single piece of ivory has a design of carved flower at the pommel. The wooden sheath, with faded red velvet, has its *muhnāl* and *tehnāl* damascened in gold *koftgāri*.
 Provenance Rajasthan
 School Rajput
 Date c 1700 A.D.
 Total length 35.6 cm
 Blade 23.6 cm
 Hilt 12.0 cm
316. 187/LIV *Kard*—Watered steel blade, cylindrical hilt of two walrus ivory pieces riveted to a steel plate. The borders of the hilt are damascened in gold in floral and creeper design in *tehnishān* style. Sheath modern but *muhnāl* and *tehnāl* are original and beautifully damascened in gold in *zarbuland* style. A small locket is attached at the top. The quality of Damascus steel is very fine.
 Provenance Alwar (Rajasthan)
 School Rajput
 Date c 1700 A.D.
 Total length 37.3 cm

Blade 25.6 cm
Hilt 11.7 cm

17. 188/LIV

Kard—Damascus steel blade. The part near the forte is engraved with floral design on both sides with gold line forming the border. The back edge has a rib all over the hilt consisting of two pieces of walrus ivory riveted to the bud-shaped steel tang. The borders and the lower part of the hilt are damascened in floral design in gold and it has a gold damascened locket at the top.

Provenance Delhi
School Mughal
Date c 1700 A.D.
Total length 34.8 cm
Blade 21.3 cm
Hilt 13.5 cm

18. 189/LIV

Kard—Single-edged blade of watered steel of *qumā* variety. The part near the forte is damascened in floral and creeper design in gold. The two walrus ivory pieces are riveted to the steel hilt whose both sides and lower part are damascened in gold. The wooden sheath, covered with faded red velvet, is fitted with metallic *muhñāl* and *tehnāl* and has a silver locket.

Provenance North India
School Late Mughal
Date c 1750 A.D.
Total length 36.1 cm
Blade 22.0 cm
Hilt 14.1 cm

19. 190/LIV

Kard—Damascus steel blade whose upper side has a gold damascened band. Plain tubular hilt is of solid walrus ivory. Sheath modern.

Provenance Alwar (Rajasthan)
School Mughal
Date c 1700 A.D.
Total length 37.5 cm
Blade 24.8 cm
Hilt 12.7 cm

20. 191/LIV

Kard—Damascus steel blade with a thick tip. The part near the forte is engraved with floral and creeper design. The hilt consists of two pieces of walrus ivory riveted to a steel plate. The part below the hilt is also engraved and bears the traces of gold damascening. Badly damaged wooden sheath has a steel *muhñāl* with a locket.

Provenance North-west India
School Pathān
Date c 1725 A.D.
Total length 38.8 cm
Blade 24.5 cm

- | | | |
|--------------|--|-------------------|
| | Hilt | 14.3 cm |
| 321. 192/LIV | <i>Kard</i> —Similar to No. 30/LIV, hilt badly damaged; sheath modern. | |
| | Provenance | Alwar (Rajasthan) |
| | School | Mughal |
| | Date | c 1700 A.D. |
| | Total length | 36.2 cm |
| | Blade | 23.3 cm |
| | Hilt | 12.9 cm |
| 322. 193/LIV | <i>Kard</i> —Very fine Damascus blade, tubular hilt of solid walrus ivory with a small locket at the top and a steel cap at the bottom which is damascened in gold. The wooden sheath, covered with violet velvet, has <i>muhñāl</i> and <i>tehnāl</i> damascened in floral and creeper design in gold in <i>tehnishān</i> style. Two different kinds of gold have been used giving it a <i>Gangā-Yamunī</i> effect. | |
| | Provenance | North India |
| | School | Mughal |
| | Date | Mid. 17th century |
| | Total length | 41.0 cm |
| | Blade | 27.3 cm |
| | Hilt | 13.7 cm |
| 323. 194/LIV | <i>Kard</i> —Watered steel blade. The part near the forte is perforated and bears the name of Allāh and Muhammad amidst the holes. The hilt consists of two pieces of cracked walrus ivory riveted to a steel plate. The sides of the hilt are perforated and inscribed with the name of Allāh, Muhammad, Fātimā, Hassan and Hussain. Sheath missing. | |
| | Provenance | North-west India |
| | School | Paṭhān |
| | Date | Late 16th century |
| | Total length | 35.5 cm |
| | Blade | 24.1 cm |
| | Hilt | 11.4 cm |
| 324. 196/LIV | <i>Kard</i> —Similar to No. 176/LIV. | |
| | Provenance | North India |
| | School | Mughal |
| | Date | c 1720 A.D. |
| | Total length | 32.3 cm |
| | Blade | 21.5 cm |
| | Hilt | 10.8 cm |
| 325. 197/LIV | <i>Kard</i> —Single-edged blade of watered steel of <i>qumā</i> variety. The part near the forte is chiselled with creeper design. The tubular hilt is of walrus ivory. The wooden sheath, covered with violet velvet, is fitted with perforated silver <i>muhñāl</i> and <i>tehnāl</i> . | |
| | Provenance | North India |

- | | | |
|--|--------------|-------------|
| | School | Late Mughal |
| | Date | c 1750 A.D. |
| | Total length | 32.1 cm |
| | Blade | 20.3 cm |
| | Hilt | 11.8 cm |
326. 198/LIV *Kard*—Straight blade; on the top of the back edge is inscribed verses from the holy *Qurān* in gold in Arabic. Steel hilt is covered with two pieces of walrus ivory. The borders of the hilt are enamelled in red colour. Wooden sheath, covered with red velvet, has a plain *muhnāl*, a buckle and a bud-shaped *tehnāl* of silver.
- | | | |
|--|--------------|--------------|
| | Provenance | Rajasthan |
| | School | Rajput |
| | Date | 18th century |
| | Total length | 29.9 cm |
| | Blade | 18.0 cm |
| | Hilt | 11.9 cm |
327. 218/LIV *Kard*—Damascus steel blade, tubular hilt of one piece of ivory. The steel cap, joining the hilt and the blade, is damascened in gold. Sheath modern.
- | | | |
|--|--------------|--------------------|
| | Provenance | Rajasthan |
| | School | Rajput |
| | Date | Early 18th century |
| | Total length | 29.1 cm |
| | Blade | 17.3 cm |
| | Hilt | 11.8 cm |
328. 219/LIV *Kard-cum-peshkabz*—Slightly curved, single-edged blade of watered steel with grooves on both sides near the back edge. Similar short grooves are seen on the back edge also. The damaged hilt consists of two pieces of walrus ivory riveted to the steel tang shaped to the size. The borders are covered with a chiselled silver plate. Wooden sheath is covered with brown velvet and has a gold damascened *muhnāl* with a small locket.
- | | | |
|--|--------------|-------------------|
| | Provenance | North India |
| | School | Late Mughal |
| | Date | Mid. 18th century |
| | Total length | 32.8 cm |
| | Blade | 21.2 cm |
| | Hilt | 11.6 cm |
329. 220/LIV-A *Kard*—Watered steel blade. The hilt consists of two ivory pieces riveted to a steel tang. The borders of the steel hilt and the part near the forte is damascened in gold *koftgāri*. The ivory cheeks of the hilt are engraved with human figures, two on each side. Sheath modern.
- | | | |
|--|------------|--------------------------------------|
| | Provenance | Delhi |
| | School | Mughal |
| | Date | Shāh Jahān's period (1627-1658 A.D.) |

Total length	30.7 cm
Blade	19.5 cm
Hilt	11.2 cm

330. 222/LIV *Kard*—Almost similar to No. 230/LIV. The stones from both the eyes are missing. The hilt is without bands.

Provenance	Agra or Delhi
School	Mughal
Date	Shāh Jahān's period (1627-1658 A.D.)
Total length	34.7 cm
Blade	22.2 cm
Hilt	12.5 cm

331. 222/LIV *Kard*—Straight single-edged blade of watered steel. The hilt of one piece of walrus ivory has its pommel shaped like a ram whose one horn is broken and missing. The part near the ricasso is damascened in gold.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Mughal
Date	Mid. 17th century
Total length	32.5 cm
Blade	21.1 cm
Hilt	11.4 cm

332.230/LIV *Kard*—Single-edged, watered steel blade of *Karā Khurāssān* variety. The hilt of walrus ivory is carved like a ram whose eyes are fitted with semi-precious red stones (one missing). The hilt is wrapped with three gold-plated steel bands. Sheath missing.

Provenance	Delhi or Agra
School	Mughal
Date	Shāh Jahān period (1627-1658 A.D.)
Total length	32.6 cm
Blade	21.2 cm
Hilt	11.4 cm

333. 251/LVI *Kard*—Damascus steel blade, cylindrical hilt of blue stone; sheath missing.

Provenance	North India
School	Late Mughal
Date	c 1760 A.D.
Total length	32.9 cm
Blade	21.2 cm
Hilt	11.7 cm

334. 252/LVI *Kard*—Similar to No. 251/LVI with green jade hilt.

Provenance	North India
School	Late Mughal
Date	c 1760 A.D.
Total length	33.1 cm

Blade	21.4 cm
Hilt	11.7 cm

JAMBIĀ

335. 104/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Double-edged curved blade with medial-rib on both sides. The ricasso is engraved with hunting scenes on both sides. The steel hilt is engraved all over with floral, creeper and bird design. The wooden sheath is covered with steel and is engraved all over with human figures.
- | | |
|--------------|-----------------|
| Provenance | Delhi |
| School | Delhi Sultanate |
| Date | 15th century |
| Total length | 39.5 cm |
| Blade | 26.6 cm |
| Hilt | 12.9 cm |
336. 107/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Curved, double-edged blade with a medial-rib on each side of the blade of Damascus steel. The upper side of the blade is inscribed, on both sides, in gold which reads *Yā Allāh yā Hāfeez* in Naskh script and Arabic language. The hilt is engraved with hunting scenes in relief. Wooden sheath, covered with brown leather, has a silver chape.
- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| Provenance | North India |
| School | Mughal |
| Date | 17th century |
| Total length | 30.5 cm |
| Blade | 21.0 cm |
| Hilt | 9.5 cm |
337. 107/LIV *Jambiā*—Double-edged, curved blade of Damascus steel with a prominent medial-rib and a thickened tip. The part near the forte is engraved with a lotus flower design on each side. The hilt is shaped like a cylinder which terminates in 'three petal' pattern and consists of two pieces of ivory riveted to the steel plate. The sides of the plate are damascened in gold in floral and creeper design. Sheath missing.
- | | |
|--------------|--------------------------|
| Provenance | Lahore (now in Pakistan) |
| School | Mughal |
| Date | 17th century |
| Total length | 31.3 cm |
| Blade | 20.2 cm |
| Hilt | 11.1 cm |
338. 108/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Double-edged, curved blade of Damascus steel with a medial-rib. The hilt of metal is engraved with flower and creeper design in relief and is gold-plated. Damaged wooden sheath is covered with faded velvet.
- | | |
|--------------|-------------------|
| Provenance | Hyderabad |
| School | Deccani |
| Date | Late 17th century |
| Total length | 31.8 cm |

- | | | |
|--|-------|---------|
| | Blade | 21.9 cm |
| | Hilt | 9.9 cm |
339. 110/LIV *Jambiā*—Curved, double-edged blade with a prominent mid-rib. *Damarū* shaped hilt of ivory. Sheath modern.
- | | | |
|--|--------------|--------------|
| | Provenance | Hyderabad |
| | School | Deccani |
| | Date | 18th century |
| | Total length | 31.8 cm |
| | Blade | 21.0 cm |
| | Hilt | 10.8 cm |
340. 110/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Watered steel blade, double-edged, with a medial-rib and a small thickened end. The steel hilt is engraved with inscriptions in gold all over in relief along with floral and creeper design. The inscription in Naskh script in Arabic language describes full *Ayātul Qursī* (verses from the holy *Qurān* referring to the victory) and is dated 801 A.H. The wooden sheath covered with faded purple velvet is mounted with *muhnāl* and *tehnāl* of steel damascened in gold in the style of the hilt but without inscriptions.
- | | | |
|--|--------------|------------------|
| | Provenance | Delhi |
| | School | Sultanate School |
| | Date | 801 A.H. |
| | Total length | 37.3 cm |
| | Blade | 25.8 cm |
| | Hilt | 11.5 cm |
341. 111/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Curved, double-edged blade with a prominent medial-rib on both sides. The watered steel is of *Qumā* variety. The hollow steel hilt contains several miniature instruments such as saw, pair of scissors, needles, pricker, scale, divider, sewing needle, etc., all of steel. These instruments are kept inside the hilt, the upper part of the hilt acts as an openable lid screwed by two screws. The outer side of the hilt is profusely damascened in gold in frond design. The wooden sheath, covered with faded red velvet, has upper and lower fittings damascened in the style of the hilt. The sheath has a spring locking device and a leaf-shaped buckle, which is inscribed on both sides and is dated Rajab 11, 1301 A.H. (*i.e.*, 1880 A.D.)
- | | | |
|--|--------------|-----------------------|
| | Provenance | North India |
| | School | Late Mughal |
| | Date | 1301 A.H. = 1880 A.D. |
| | Total length | 34.8 cm |
| | Blade | 21.8 cm |
| | Hilt | 13.0 cm |
342. 112/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Curved blade, double-edged, with a prominent medial-rib on both sides. The upper part is chiselled with creeper design, partly damascened in gold inscription. The *damarū*-shaped plain hilt is of walrus ivory. The wooden sheath, encased with velvet of violet colour, is fitted with *muhnāl*

and *tehnāl* of perforated silver. It bears the name of the maker Ali Akbar and records *Amal-i-kaṭārin Alī Akbar*.

Provenance	North India
School	Late Mughal
Date	c 1750 A.D.
Total length	39.4 cm
Blade	27.0 cm
Hilt	12.4 cm

343. 112/LIV *Jambiā*—Curved blade of watered steel with a medial-rib on both sides. The steel hilt is damascened in gold all over and amidst the floral and creeper design bears inscription in Naskh script and arabic language referring to the names of *Panjatan* (Allāh, Muhammad, Alī, Fātimā, Hassan, Hussain). The wooden sheath, covered with green faded velvet, is mounted with upper and lower fittings inscribed in gold with the names of allāh and Muhammad.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	17th century
Total length	28.7 cm
Blade	17.9 cm
Hilt	10.8 cm

344. 113/LIV *Nimchā Jambiā*—Double-edged, curved blade with a medial-rib. The hilt of ivory is covered with perforated silver plates. Sheath modern.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	18th century
Total length	20.8 cm
Blade	12.3 cm
Hilt	8.5 cm

345. 113/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Double-edged curved blade of Damascus steel with a mid-rib and a thickened end. The hilt is of one solid piece of walrus ivory. Damaged wooden sheath is covered with faded yellow velvet.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Mughal
Date	17th century
Total length	36.7 cm
Blade	24.4 cm
Hilt	12.3 cm

346. 115/LIV *Jambiā*—Similar to No. 107/LIV with the part near the forte perforated and damascened in gold, in floral design. Sheath modern.

Provenance	Lahore (now in Pakistan)
School	Mughal
Date	19th century

- | | | |
|----------------|--|--------------------|
| | Total length | 35.7 cm |
| | Blade | 22.8 cm |
| | Hilt | 12.9 cm |
| 347. 115/LIV-A | <i>Jambiā</i> —Double-edged, curved blade of watered steel with a medial-rib and thick end; the part near the forte is chiselled with <i>shikārgāh</i> (hunting) scenes. <i>Damarū</i> -shaped hilt is of walrus ivory. Sheath is missing. | |
| | Provenance | Delhi |
| | School | Mughal |
| | Date | c. 1700 A.D. |
| | Total length | 35.6 cm |
| | Blade | 24.5 cm |
| | Hilt | 11.1 cm |
| 348. 116/LIV | <i>Jambiā</i> —Similar to No. 115/LIV-A but slender. It has the sheath and its fittings are of bigger size. | |
| | Provenance | Delhi |
| | School | Mughal |
| | Date | c. 1700 A.D. |
| | Total length | 31.1 cm |
| | Blade | 20.4 cm |
| | Hilt | 10.7 cm |
| 349. 117/LIV | <i>Jambiā</i> —Small in size meant for the young prince or the princess, Damascus blade, mid-rib, curved. Ricasso is engraved with one flower and four leaves on each side. Plain hilt is of solid walrus ivory. Damaged wooden sheath is covered with red velvet. | |
| | Provenance | North India |
| | School | Mughal |
| | Date | Late 17th century |
| | Total length | 26.2 cm |
| | Blade | 16.6 cm |
| | Hilt | 9.6 cm |
| 350. 119/LIV | <i>Jambiā</i> —Double-edged, curved blade with prominent medial-rib and grooves. The <i>damarū</i> -shaped hilt is of plain ivory studded with four metallic stars. The wooden sheath has a metallic chape. | |
| | Provenance | Hyderabad |
| | School | Deccani |
| | Date | Early 19th century |
| | Total length | 32.4 cm |
| | Blade | 21.4 cm |
| | Hilt | 11.0 cm |
| 351. 119/LIV-A | <i>Jambiā</i> —Double-edged blade of Damascus steel with a medial-rib and a small thickened end; metal hilt of one piece. The hilt has its borders chased in floral designs. | |
| | Provenance | North India |

- | | | |
|----------------|---|--------------------------|
| | School | Mughal |
| | Date | Late 17th century |
| | Total length | 35.4 cm |
| | Blade | 23.4 cm |
| | Hilt | 12.0 cm |
| 352. 120/LIV | <i>Jambiā</i> —Similar to No. 110/LIV-A. The hilt of walrus ivory is shaped like a <i>damarū</i> and on one side is riveted with a perforated silver sheath. Sheath modern. | |
| | Provenance | Delhi |
| | School | Sultanate School |
| | Date | 15th century |
| | Total length | 30.8 cm |
| | Blade | 18.4 cm |
| | Hilt | 12.4 cm |
| 353. 121/LIV | <i>Jambiā</i> —Similar to No. 107/LIV with a modern sheath. | |
| | Provenance | Lahore (now in Pakistan) |
| | School | Mughal |
| | Date | 17th century |
| | Total length | 31.3 cm |
| | Blade | 21.0 cm |
| | Hilt | 10.3 cm |
| 354. 121/LIV-A | <i>Jambiā</i> —Double-edged, curved blade with mid-rib, forte engraved with floral design on both sides. Hilt of steel is engraved with floral design and is gold-plated. | |
| | Provenance | Hyderabad |
| | School | Deccani |
| | Date | Late 19th century |
| | Total length | 31.3 cm |
| | Blade | 21.0 cm |
| | Hilt | 10.3 cm |
| 355. 123/LIV | <i>Jambiā</i> —Double-edged, curved blade of watered steel with prominent mid-rib on both sides. The hilt is made of one solid piece of wood and is engraved all over with floral and creeper design. The sheath, of the same wood, is similarly decorated. | |
| | Provenance | Hyderabad |
| | School | Deccani |
| | Date | Mid. 18th century |
| | Total length | 33.0 cm |
| | Blade | 20.8 cm |
| | Hilt | 12.2 cm |
| 356. 124/LIV | <i>Jambiā</i> —Plain, curved blade. The hilt has a triangular pommel and is encased with decorated silver plate. The wooden sheath is covered with thick perforated silver sheath and has four rings attached to it. | |

Provenance	South India
School	Tanjore
Date	Early 19th century
Total length	48.0 cm
Blade	35.5 cm
Hilt	12.5 cm

357. 138/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Double-edged, curved blade with a thickened point and a mid-rib; the upper part is supported by steel plates on both sides which are damascened in gold in floral and creeper design. Pistol-shaped hilt of plain crystal; sheath of later date.

Provenance	Lahore (now in Pakistan)
School	Mughal
Date	18th century
Total length	39.2 cm
Blade	26.0 cm
Hilt	13.2 cm

358. 144/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Double-edged, curved blade of Damascus steel with a mid-rib. Ricasso is engraved with floral design and is gold-plated. The hilt of one piece of ivory is decorated with perforated design. Sheath is modern but its *muhnāl* is original and has the design of the hilt.

Provenance	Gujarat
School	Western India
Date	Late 17th century
Total length	38.6 cm
Blade	25.3 cm
Hilt	13.3 cm

359. 151/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Damascus steel, double-edged, curved blade with mid-rib. Gold damascening on the upper side with an inscription reading *Amal-i-Hādī*. Hilt of one piece of solid jade. Wooden sheath covered with *muhnāl* with a buckle and *tehnāl* of delicately carved silver.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Mughal
Date	c 1700 A.D.
Total length	33.6 cm
Blade	22.6 cm
Hilt	11.0 cm

360. 152/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Double-edged, curved blade with prominent mid-rib. *Damarū*-shaped plain hilt is of green jade. The wooden sheath is covered with perforated silver *muhnāl*, *tehnāl* and locket.

Provenance	Delhi or Agra
School	Mughal
Date	c 1700 A.D.
Total length	34.2 cm

Blade 22.1 cm
Hilt 12.1 cm

361. 154/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Double-edged, curved blade of Damascus steel with medial-rib. The walrus ivory hilt is plain. On the top and bottom of each side of the blade are inscribed Persian couplets : 1) *Kabjayé khanjarath Jahāngīrust Garhé vak musté Hustakan-Bāshath*, 2) *Na rasath kalé alamī Ba Nijām warnā Bazīyath miyā Bāsath*.

Provenance Delhi
School Late Mughal
Date Closing years of the 18th century
Total length 34.6 cm
Blade 22.6 cm
Hilt 12.0 cm

362. 155/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Double-edged, curved blade; *jauhar* not visible. It has a medial-rib on both sides. The ivory hilt is engraved with a figure of a king flanked by two courtiers on one side and two females on the other. The upper and lower side of the hilt is inscribed with Persian couplets in Naskh script and Persian language. it reads : *दस्त-ये-खंजरत जहांगीरस्त न रसद काटे आलमी व निजाये गिरियाद पायेतु दरमियां*

Provenance Delhi
School Late Mughal
Date Closing years of the 18th century
Total length 33.3 cm
Blade 20.8 cm
Hilt 12.5 cm

363. 156/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Double-edged, curved blade of Damascus steel with a mid-rib. The hilt of walrus ivory depicts a royal figure flanked by two persons on each side. Sheath modern.

Provenance Delhi
School Mughal
Date Late 17th century
Total length 39.0 cm
Blade 26.2 cm
Hilt 12.8 cm

364. 157/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Double-edged, curved blade of watered steel. The prominent medial-rib is seen only upto the three-fourth of the blade on both sides. The *damarū*-shaped ivory hilt is engraved with human figures in relief and has inscriptions on its upper and lower bands on both sides. The damaged wooden sheath, in violet velvet, has a perforated silver chape.

Provenance Delhi
School Mughal
Date Shāh Ālam period c. 1750 A.D.
Total length 42.7 cm

- | | | |
|--|-------|---------|
| | Blade | 29.6 cm |
| | Hilt | 13.1 cm |
365. 158/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Double-edged, curved blade of watered steel with medial-rib. The walrus ivory hilt has two human figures on each side. Quranic verses in Arabic are inscribed on the top of one side and on the other side some names with a probable date of 941 A.H. are inscribed. Sheath is modern.
- | | | |
|--|--------------|------------------|
| | Provenance | Delhi |
| | School | Sultanate School |
| | Date | 941 A.H. |
| | Total length | 36.9 cm |
| | Blade | 24.4 cm |
| | Hilt | 12.5 cm |
366. 159/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Double-edged blade with mid-rib. The hilt of one piece of solid walrus ivory is engraved with a male figure on one side and a female figure on the other side. Sheath modern.
- | | | |
|--|--------------|--------------------|
| | Provenance | Hyderabad |
| | School | Deccani |
| | Date | Early 18th century |
| | Total length | 30.9 cm |
| | Blade | 20.6 cm |
| | Hilt | 10.3 cm |
367. 160/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Double-edged, curved blade of Damascus steel with a mid-rib. Solid hilt of one piece of walrus ivory is plain.
- | | | |
|--|--------------|--------------------|
| | Provenance | Delhi or Agra |
| | School | Mughal |
| | Date | Early 17th century |
| | Total length | 33.1 cm |
| | Blade | 21.5 cm |
| | Hilt | 11.6 cm |
368. 162/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Double-edged, curved blade of Damascus steel with a mid-rib; on the upper side of the blade some geometrical designs are seen. The hilt consists of one solid walrus ivory. The wooden sheath is covered with shagreen and has a small silver plaque as its *muhnāl* and a silver bud as its *tehnāl*. A small silver buckle is attached near the *muhnāl*.
- | | | |
|--|--------------|------------------|
| | Provenance | Delhi |
| | School | Sultanate School |
| | Date | 15th century |
| | Total length | 30.1 cm |
| | Blade | 19.5 cm |
| | Hilt | 10.6 cm |
369. 163/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Curved blade of watered steel with a mid-rib on both sides. The wooden sheath, encased with faded green velvet, is fitted with perforated silver *muhnāl*, *tehnāl* and a locket.

Provenance	North India
School	Late Mughal
Date	c 1720 A.D.
Total length	35.4 cm
Blade	23.7 cm
Hilt	11.7 cm

370. 164/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Double-edged curved blade of Damascus steel with a mid-rib. The hilt consists of one piece of solid walrus ivory. Sheath modern.

Provenance	North India.
School	Mughal
Date	17th century
Total length	36.3 cm
Blade	23.7 cm
Hilt	12.6 cm

371. 165/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Double-edged, curved blade with thickened end and medial-rib on both sides; Damascus steel of *Karā Khurāssān* variety. The upper part is damascened in gold in floral and creeper design in *zarbuland* style on both sides. The wooden sheath, with damaged violet velvet, is covered with silver upper and lower fittings.

Provenance	Delhi or Agra
School	Mughal
Date	c 1700 A.D.
Total length	36.7 cm
Blade	24.3 cm
Hilt	12.4 cm

372. 166/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Double-edged curved blade of watered steel with a medial-rib and thick end; the part near the forte is chiselled with *shikārgāh* (hunting) scene. *Damarū*-shaped hilt is of walrus ivory. The wooden sheath, covered with red faded velvet, has silver *muhnāl* and *tehnāl*.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	c 1700 A.D.
Total length	35.1 cm
Blade	23.0 cm
Hilt	12.1 cm

373. 168/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Slightly curved blade with medial-rib. The blade is inscribed all over, except the upper part, on both sides in Tughrā script and Arabic language reading *Sultān bin Sultān bin Sultān Ali* and bearing date 911 A.H. The upper side of the hilt bears the figure of a king on either side with two birds. The hilt is of plain ivory. Sheath is missing.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Delhi Sultanate
Date	911 A.H.

Total length	36.4 cm
Blade	24.4 cm
Hilt	12.0 cm

374. 169/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Curved blade of Damascus steel with a mid-rib. Hilt is one piece of solid walrus ivory. The Grip is cylindrical. Wooden sheath is covered with metal whose borders are engraved with floral design. Two metal rings are attached on the upper side of the sheath.

Provenance	Deccan
School	Indo-Turkish
Date	Late 17th century
Total length	34.4 cm
Blade	20.0 cm
Hilt	14.4 cm

375. 170/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Curved blade, double-edged, medial-rib on both sides. The blade is engraved with illegible Arabic inscriptions in low relief. Some parts are read as *Ambér*. The hilt of solid walrus ivory is covered with perforated metal. It bears an inscription and date which may probably be 1120 A.H. The wooden sheath is covered with a single piece of steel and has two rings.

Provenance	Deccan
School	Deccani
Date	Early 18th century
Total length	30.1 cm
Blade	18.0 cm
Hilt	12.1 cm

376. 177/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Curved, double-edged blade with a thick end and a prominent medial-rib on both the sides. The *damarū*-shaped hilt is of walrus ivory. Watered steel blade bears inscription on both sides. The wooden sheath is covered with damaged red velvet and is fitted with copper chape.

Provenance	Lahore (now in Pakistan)
School	Islamic
Date	c 1700 A.D.
Total length	37.4 cm
Blade	25.0 cm
Hilt	12.4 cm

377. 178/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Double-edged, curved blade of Damascus steel of *Karā Khurāsān* variety with a medial-rib on both sides. The part of the blade at the forte is engraved with frond design. Plain *damarū*-shaped hilt is of walrus ivory. The wooden sheath, covered with red faded velvet, is damaged and has no fittings.

Provenance	Amritsar, Punjab
School	Islamic
Date	c 1720 A.D.

Total length	39.1 cm
Blade	26.7 cm
Hilt	12.4 cm

378. 179/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Double-edged curved blade of watered steel with a mid-rib. The upper part of the blade is engraved with geometrical design on both sides. Solid one piece hilt of ivory is engraved on both sides with two female figures and a male horse rider, while the other side is plain. Sheath modern.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Sultanate School
Date	15th century
Total length	27.4 cm
Blade	15.8 cm
Hilt	11.6 cm

379. 180/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Double-edged curved blade with a medial-rib from ricasso to the tip. The ricasso is engraved with hunting scenes on both sides. The hilt consists of one piece of walrus ivory and is beautifully engraved on one side with a bird amidst flowers and creepers; on the other side of the hilt are two bands which bear inscription in Nastāliq script in Persian language. Upper line: *Kabjé ye Khanjarath Jahāngīrust*; Lower Line: *Agarché Yék Musthé Usthukhān Bāshad* (Though the hilt is made of bone yet it has the capacity to conquer the whole world). The word 'Jahāngīr' engraved here means — 'world conquerer' Sheath modern.

Provenance	Mughal
School	Delhi
Date	Shāh Jahān period (1627-1658 A.D.)
Total length	33.3 cm
Blade	21.3 cm
Hilt	12.0 cm

380. 181/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Curved blade of Damascus steel, mid-rib, forte is engraved with hunting scene on both sides. Hilt of one piece of solid walrus ivory.

Provenance	North India
School	Late Mughal
Date	c 1710 A.D.
Total length	36.4 cm
Blade	24.3 cm
Hilt	12.1 cm

381. 183/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Double-edged curved blade of Damascus steel with a mid-rib. The upper part of the blade is engraved with geometrical design on both sides. Hilt is of one piece of plain walrus ivory. Sheath modern.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	Early 17th century

Total length	34.4 cm
Blade	23.0 cm
Hilt	11.4 cm

382. 184/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Watered steel blade, double-edged curved blade with prominent mid-rib. The name of the maker Muhammad is inscribed in gold on one side of the blade and on the other side some illegible date is given. The *damarū*-shaped hilt is of walrus ivory. The wooden sheath, encased with faded red velvet, has a chape of ivory.

Provenance	North India
School	Late Mughal
Date	c 1720 A.D.
Total length	33.2 cm
Blade	21.4 cm
Hilt	11.8 cm

383. 186/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Double-edged, slightly curved blade of Damascus steel of *Qumā* variety with a medial-rib on both sides. Plain *damarū*-shaped hilt of walrus ivory. The damaged wooden sheath, covered with faded red velvet, is fitted with brass upper and lower fittings.

Provenance	Delhi or Agra
School	Late Mughal
Date	c 1710 A.D.
Total length	37.1 cm
Blade	24.7 cm
Hilt	12.4 cm

384. 187/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Double-edged, Damascus steel, mid-rib, wavy edges, hilt of one solid piece of walrus ivory. Wooden sheath covered with purple velvet is encased with *muhnāl* with a buckle and *tehnāl* of perforated silver.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Mughal
Date	c 1700 A.D.
Total length	36.0 cm
Blade	23.2 cm
Hilt	12.8 cm

385. 191/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Curved double-edged blade with a thickened tip. A prominent medial-rib is on both sides. The blade is made of Damascus steel of *Karā Khurāssān* variety. The *damarū*-shaped plain hilt is of walrus ivory. The wooden sheath is covered with faded green velvet and is encased with perforated silver chape.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	c 1700 A.D.
Total length	40.9 cm
Blade	27.5 cm

- | | | |
|--|------|---------|
| | Hilt | 13.4 cm |
|--|------|---------|
386. 192/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Double-edged curved blade of Damascus steel with a mid-rib. The hilt of one piece of solid walrus ivory is plain. Wooden sheath is covered with shagreen leather and has a small silver band as *muhñāl* and a bud-shaped *tehnāl*.
- | | |
|--------------|------------------|
| Provenance | Delhi |
| School | Sultanate School |
| Date | 15th century |
| Total length | 35.0 cm |
| Blade | 23.5 cm |
| Hilt | 11.5 cm |
387. 194/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Same as No. 187/LIV-A but the edges are straight.
- | | |
|--------------|-------------|
| Provenance | Delhi |
| School | Mughal |
| Date | c 1700 A.D. |
| Total length | 34.6 cm |
| Blade | 22.8 cm |
| Hilt | 11.8 cm |
388. 195/LIV *Jambiā*—Double-edged curved blade of Damascus steel. The blade is bifurcated and has an additional three-pronged blade issuing out of it. The steel hilt is engraved with floral and creeper design and also depicts human figures. The ricasso of the blade is engraved with floral and creeper design on both sides. The wooden sheath is covered with steel and is engraved with hunting scenes all over on both sides.
- | | |
|--------------|------------------|
| Provenance | Delhi |
| School | Sultanate School |
| Date | 15th century |
| Total length | 22.8 cm |
| Blade | 13.8 cm |
| Hilt | 9.0 cm |
389. 196/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Slightly curved blade inscribed all over on both sides in Tughrā script and Arabic language reading *Sultān bin Sultān Alap Arsalān*. The solid steel hilt is engraved all over with floral and creeper design. The wooden sheath is covered with single piece of steel and bears floral and creeper design and human figures.
- | | |
|--------------|------------------|
| Provenance | Delhi |
| School | Sultanate School |
| Date | 15th century |
| Total length | 31.8 cm |
| Blade | 20.6 cm |
| Hilt | 11.2 cm |
390. 206/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Double-edged blade with medial-rib on both sides. The upper part of this blade bears Arabic verses in honour of Alī on both sides in Naskh

script and Arabic language. The solid ivory plain hilt is ornamented with floral, creeper and geometrical design in gold work. Wooden sheath is covered with faded purple velvet and has a gold band on its *muhnāl* and a silver tip on its *tehnāl*. The portion on the top of the hilt is missing.

Provenance	Sindh (now in Pakistan)
School	Islamic
Date	16th century
Total length	32.0 cm
Blade	20.6 cm
Hilt	11.4 cm

391. 210/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Double-edged blade, mid-rib, upper side damascened in gold in *zarbuland* style with half a dozen semi-precious stones studded on each side. Hilt of one piece of solid ivory is stamped on one side with twofold seats bearing illegible inscription. Wooden sheath, covered with black leather, has a chape of perforated silver.

Provenance	North India
School	Late Mughal
Date	18th century
Total length	31.4 cm
Blade	20.0 cm
Hilt	11.4 cm

392. 211/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Curved blade with mid-rib; hilt is covered on one side with ivory and on the other side with silver, delicately carved and then fastened by gold plates. Wooden sheath, covered with green velvet, has *muhnāl* and *tehnāl* of perforated silver.

Provenance	North India.
School	Mughal
Date	Late 18th century
Total length	29.0 cm
Blade	18.6 cm
Hilt	10.4 cm

393. 212/LIV-A *Jambiā*—Plain curved blade, double-edged, mid-rib. Hilt of one piece of solid walrus ivory is covered with perforated silver plate. Wooden sheath, engraved with faded velvet, has a chape of perforated silver.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	Late 18th century
Total length	34.1 cm
Blade	20.8 cm
Hilt	13.3 cm

394. 228/LIV *Jambiā*—Double-edged blade of Damascus steel with a thickened end. Borders near ricasso are damascened in gold. The hilt of metal, shaped like a parrot, is damascened all over in gold in floral design. Sheath modern.

Provenance	Gujarat
School	Western Indian
Date	Late 17th century
Total length	37.3 cm
Blade	28.8 cm
Hilt	8.5 cm

395. 320/LIV *Jambīā*—Plain, double-edged, curved blade with mid-rib. The horn handle is covered with silver plate in the upper half. The damaged wooden sheath, encased with brown leather, has a silver chape. The sheath has a pocket (now damaged) in which another knife with silver handle is kept.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	18th century
Total length	31.0 cm
Blade	19.9 cm
Hilt	11.1 cm

396. 321/LIV-A Exactly similar to No. 320/LIV and both (Nos. 320-LIV and 321/LIV-A) form a pair.

397. 322/LIV-A *Jambīā*—Indo-Arabic, plain, double-edged blade with mid-rib. *Damarū*-shaped hilt of silver is engraved with geometrical design. Highly curved sheath, mostly of silver, is profusely engraved with various designs in bands.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Islamic
Date	Blade early 19th century; Hilt and sheath 17th century
Total length	33.0 cm
Blade	22.0 cm
Hilt	11.0 cm

JAMADHAR

398. 8/LV *Jamadhār*—Double-edged straight blade of Damascus steel with a medial rib. H-shaped hilt with its single horizontal plate is decorated with floral and creeper design in gold damascening and perforated style. The seatings are similarly ornamented. Sheath modern.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	17th century
Total length	52.5 cm
Blade	33.0 cm
Width of the blade	3.6 cm
Cross-bars	19.5 cm

399. 10/LV *Jamadhār*—Double-edged straight blade of Damascus steel with a medial-rib. H-shaped handle and its two horizontal bars are damascened

all over in gold in floral and creeper design. The two seatings are similarly ornamented. Sheath modern.

Provenance	Bidar (Karnataka)
School	Deccani
Date	17th century
Total length	43.2 cm
Blade	25.0 cm
Width of the blade	3.3 cm
Cross-bars	18.2 cm

400. 12/LV

Jamadhar—Fitted with a *jambiā* blade of Damascus steel. The double-edged blade has a mid-rib and a thickened point. The steel hilt, with two globular cross-bars and long langets, is ornamented all over with floral and creeper design in gold. Sheath modern with chape decorated in the style of the hilt.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Mughal
Date	c 1720 A.D.
Total length	44.4 cm
Blade	27.2 cm
Width of the blade	3.8 cm
Cross-bars	17.2 cm

401. 18/LV

Jamadhar—Watered steel blade with heavy thickened lower part. The central mid-rib terminates into three thinner ribs on the top. Profusely decorated hilt with floral and creeper design is damascened in gold and carries six horizontal bands. The wooden sheath is covered with red damaged velvet.

Provenance	Lahore (now in Pakistan)
School	Mughal
Date	c 1700 A.D.
Total length	43.3 cm
Blade	27.2 cm
Width of the blade	3.7 cm
Cross-bars	26.1 cm

402. 22/LV

Jamadhar—Damascus blade with short mid-rib and thickened tip. The steel hilt, having two globular cross-bars, is profusely ornamented all over with floral and creeper design in gold in *tehnishān* style. Sheath modern.

Provenance	Rajasthan
School	Rajput
Date	c 1720 A.D.
Total length	46.1 cm
Blade	26.7 cm
Width of the blade	5.7 cm
Cross-bars	19.4 cm

403. 26/LV *Jamadhār*—Slightly curved double-edged blade of Damascus steel with mid-rib and thickened end. H-shaped heavy hilt and its two horizontal bars are damascened in gold and silver together in floral and creeper design. The seatings are similarly ornamented. Sheath modern.
- | | |
|--------------------|--------------|
| Provenance | North India |
| School | Mughal |
| Date | 17th century |
| Total length | 48.6 cm |
| Blade | 30.0 cm |
| Width of the blade | 3.1 cm |
| Cross-bars | 18.6 cm |
404. 27/LV *Jamadhār*—Double-edged, plain blade. H-shaped hilt and its two horizontal bars are damascened in silver all over and carries the inscription in Naskh script of Arabic language. It records *Nād-i-Ālī*, two couplets from the chapter *Sūrāh-Fatēh* and *Kalmā*, etc.
- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| Provenance | Deccan |
| School | Mughal |
| Date | Late 17th century |
| Total length | 48.8 cm |
| Blade | 29.4 cm |
| Width of the blade | 3.2 cm |
| Cross-bars | 19.4 cm |
405. 30/LV *Jamadhār*—Double-edged straight blade with a medial-rib and thickened end. More than half of the blade is inscribed with *Nād-i-Ālī* in Naskh script and Arabic language in perforated style. H-shaped handle bears traces of gold work. Sheath modern.
- | | |
|--------------------|--------------|
| Provenance | Deccan |
| School | Mughal |
| Date | 17th century |
| Total length | 43.3 cm |
| Blade | 24.5 cm |
| Width of the blade | 3.2 cm |
| Cross-bars | 18.8 cm |
406. 31/LIV *Jamadhār*—Double curved, double-edged blade with a medial-rib and perforated blade. H-shaped hilt with two horizontal bars is decorated with inscriptions in Naskh script in Arabic language describing two Qurānic chapters *Surāh Yé Kalsh* and *Surāh Nasr* and first *Kalmā* of Islam. Sheath is missing.
- | | |
|--------------------|------------------|
| Provenance | South India |
| School | Deccani |
| Date | Early 18 century |
| Total length | 42.8 cm |
| Blade | 26.3 cm |
| Width of the blade | 5.0 cm |

- | | | |
|-------------|--|--------------------|
| | Cross-bars | 16.5 cm |
| 407. 34/LV | <i>Jamadhar</i> —With a thick tip and three ribs. The hilt with two gobular horizontal bands is damascened all over in floral and creeper design in gold. Badly damaged wooden sheath. | |
| | Provenance | North India |
| | School | Rajput |
| | Date | Early 18th century |
| | Total length | 37.7 cm |
| | Blade | 10.0 cm |
| | Width of the blade | 6.2 cm |
| | Cross-bars | 18.7 cm |
| 408. 35/LIV | <i>Jamadhar</i> —Hard steel blade, plain cylindrical hilt of walrus ivory. Sheath missing. | |
| | Provenance | North-west India |
| | School | Mughal |
| | Date | 17th century |
| | Total length | 34.0 cm |
| | Blade | 16.5 cm |
| | Width of the blade | 6.9 cm |
| | Cross-bars | 17.5 cm |
| 409. 35/LV | <i>Jamadhar</i> —Double-edged, straight blade of Damascus steel with a thickened end and a mid-rib. The two side bars of the H-shaped handle are engraved with <i>Nād-i-Ālī</i> in Naskh script and Arabic language in perforated style. Sheath modern. | |
| | Provenance | Delhi or Agra |
| | School | Mughal |
| | Date | Early 17th century |
| | Total length | 36.0 cm |
| | Blade | 17.0 cm |
| | Width of the blade | 7.3 cm |
| | Cross-bars | 19.0 cm |
| 410. 36/LV | <i>Jamadhar</i> —Double-edged blade thickened at the lower part with a prominent mid-rib; the upper part of the blade is chiselled in the form of a cypress tree. The hilt, profusely damascened in gold in frond design, has three horizontal bands. Damaged sheath is covered with red velvet. | |
| | Provenance | Rajasthan |
| | School | Late Mughal |
| | Date | c 1710 A.D. |
| | Total length | 38.5 cm |
| | Blade | 19.4 cm |
| | Width of the blade | 3.8 cm |
| | Cross-bars | 19.1 cm |
| 411. 44/LV | <i>Jamadhar</i> —Similar to No. 36/LV, with slightly smaller blade. | |

- | | | |
|------------|---|---------------------|
| | Provenance | Rajasthan |
| | School | Late Mughal |
| | Date | c 1710 A.D. |
| | Total length | 36.3 cm |
| | Blade | 17.8 cm |
| | Width of the blade | 3.0 cm |
| | Cross-bars | 18.5 cm |
| 412. 45/LV | <i>Nimchā Jamadhar</i> —Small <i>jamadhar</i> for the young princes; double-edged, curved blade has grooves and a thickened end. H-shaped hilt with one globular bar is damascened in gold. Sheath modern. | |
| | Provenance | Hyderabad |
| | School | Deccani |
| | Date | 18th century |
| | Total length | 24.8 cm |
| | Blade | 14.8 cm |
| | Width of the blade | 3.9 cm |
| | Cross-bars | 10.0 cm |
| 413. 48/LV | Slightly curved blade of watered steel with a thick end and <i>motī-daudatī</i> design in the centre. The hilt, with two globular horizontal bands, is profusely damascened in floral design in gold all over. A pair of langets, riveted to the hilt, are, similarly, damascened in gold. The slender, damaged, wooden sheath is covered with faded velvet and has a chape of perforated silver. | |
| | Provenance | Udaipur (Rajasthan) |
| | School | Rajput |
| | Date | Late 17th century |
| | Total length | 39.3 cm |
| | Blade | 23.6 cm |
| | Width of the blade | 3.1 cm |
| | Cross-bars | 15.7 cm |
| 414. 50/LV | <i>Nimchā Jamadhar</i> —Watered steel blade of <i>Qumā</i> variety. Short and broad hilt has two globular bands and is damascened in gold <i>koftgāri</i> . The wooden sheath is encased with shagreen leather and is fitted with perforated silver chape. | |
| | Provenance | North-west India |
| | School | Late Mughal |
| | Date | c 1750 A.D. |
| | Total length | 24.5 cm |
| | Blade | 12.0 cm |
| | Width of the blade | 6.7 cm |
| | Cross-bars | 12.5 cm |
| 415. 55/LV | <i>Jamadhar</i> —Watered steel blade with a thick tip. The steel hilt with its two globular horizontal bands is covered with some white substance and is painted with geometrical design all over. The damaged wooden sheath is | |

covered with red velvet.

Provenance	Unknown
School	Unknown
Date	Early 19th century
Total length	44.0 cm
Blade	23.1 cm
Width of the blade	7.3 cm
Cross-bars	20.9 cm

416. 56/LV *Jamadhar*—Zig-zag blade has a thickened tip and is engraved with cypress tree design on both sides. Plain hilt has four bands. The damaged wooden sheath with red velvet has a perforated copper chape.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	Early 18th century
Total length	45.0 cm
Blade	23.6 cm
Width of the blade	6.2 cm
Cross-bars	21.4 cm

417. 57/LV *Jamadhar*—The upper half of the blade is engraved with floral design in relief on both sides. Plain hilt has two cylindrical bands. The sheath is missing.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	Mid. 18th century
Total length	40.8 cm
Blade	20.4 cm
Width of the blade	5.1 cm
Cross-bars	20.4 cm

418. 58/LV *Jamadhar Sehlīkāneh*—The blade is divided into three parts, each looking like an independent *jamadhar* blade. The central blade is bigger than the side ones and all the three have thickened points and are engraved with cypress tree design. The hilt has seven thin horizontal bands and was once decorated with gold *koftgārī* whose traces are still seen. The wooden sheath, covered with yellow velvet and fitted with three plain steel chape, is divided into three compartments.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Mughal
Date	c 1700 A.D.
Total length	39.8 cm
Blade	19.7 cm
Width of the blade	4.3 cm
Cross-bars	20.1 cm

419. 60/LV *Jamadhar Daulīkāneh*—Blade bifurcated from the beginning to the end

forming two independent blades, each serrated on both sides and is engraved with floral and creeper design. The two blades of Damascus steel have thickened ends. H-shaped handle with two horizontal bars is damascened in floral design in gold. Sheath modern.

Provenance	Delhi or Agra
School	Mughal
Date	Late 17th century
Total length	40.1 cm
Blade	20.5 cm
Width of the blade	5.8 cm
Cross-bars	19.6 cm

420. 128/LIV-A *Jamadhar Sehlikāneh*—It has three blades, the two side blades form the covering for the central blade. There is a spring device in the horizontal bar from where it can be opened and closed. H-shaped handle bears traces of silver damascening. Sheath modern.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani (imitation of a Mughal specimen)
Total length	39.0 cm
Blade	19.0 cm
Width of the blade	6.1 cm
Cross-bars	20.0 cm

421. 135/LIV-A *Jamadhar Sehlikāneh* —Three blades, the two side blades forming a sheath, spring device in the horizontal bar.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	19th century
Total length	39.7 cm
Blade	19.8 cm
Width of the blade	6.0 cm
Cross-bars	19.9 cm

422. 143/LIV *Jamadhar*—Plain blade with a thickened tip. The hilt with two horizontal bands is damascened all over in gold in floral and creeper design. The gold has flaked off at places. Damaged wooden sheath is covered with faded green velvet.

Provenance	North India.
School	Late Mughal
Date	c 1720 A.D.
Total length	40.3 cm
Blade	21.0 cm
Width of the blade	6.7 cm
Cross-bars	19.3 cm

423. 144/LIV *Jamadhar*—Damascus blade with a mid-rib and a thickened tip. The hilt, with two horizontal bands, is damascened all over in floral and creeper

design in gold. Sheath modern fitted with original chape.

Provenance	Delhi or Agra
School	Late Mughal
Date	c 1720 A.D.
Total length	35.5 cm
Blade	19.7 cm
Width of the blade	5.3 cm
Cross-bars	15.8 cm

424. 145/LIV *Jamadhar*—Heavy and comparatively shorter blade with a thickened tip. The medial-rib, inside a deep groove, is shaped like a leaf. The part near the forte is damascened in gold. The hilt is profusely damascened in gold all over and depicts the various incarnations of Vishṇu. The panels that can be identified are *Nṛisimhāvatāra*, *Matsyāvatāra*, *Varāhāvatār*, etc. The gold is flaking off at places. Wooden sheath, encased with red faded velvet, has a gold damascened chape.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	Late 18th century
Total length	39.1 cm
Blade	23.4 cm
Width of the blade	3.1 cm
Cross-bars	15.7 cm

425. 146/LIV *Jamadhar*—Watered steel blade with a medial-rib and a thickened tip. The hilt with two bands has its borders damascened in gold in geometrical design all over. Sheath modern with an original chape.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	Early 18th century
Total length	28.6 cm
Blade	13.8 cm
Width of the blade	6.8 cm
Cross-bars	14.8 cm

426. 147/LIV *Jamadhar*—Short Damascus steel blade with a thickened tip and long langets. The double curved hilt is engraved with a flower in the centre and is damascened in gold in floral design all over. The hilt has a beautiful border. Sheath modern with an original chape.

Provenance	South India
School	Tanjore
Date	Early 18th century
Total length	26.9 cm
Blade	13.6 cm
Width of the blade	4.3 cm
Cross-bars	13.3 cm

427. 148/LIV *Jamadhar*—Double-edged, slightly curved blade of Damascus steel with a medial-rib and a small thickened end. H-shaped hilt with two horizontal bars and long langets is ornamented all over with floral and creeper design in *zarbuland* style. Damaged wooden sheath is covered with faded red velvet.
- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| Provenance | Hyderabad |
| School | Deccani |
| Date | Late 17th century |
| Total length | 37.5 cm |
| Blade | 22.7 cm |
| Width of the blade | 3.0 cm |
| Cross-bars | 14.8 cm |
428. 149/LIV *Jamadhar*—Double-edged blade, more than one half of which has a thickened end; the blade is of Damascus steel and is supported by two semi-circular mouldings of steel. H-shaped hilt has only one globular-shaped bar and the entire handle is decorated with flower design all over in gold. Modern sheath is fitted with a chape of some other scabbard.
- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| Provenance | Vijayanagar |
| School | Vijayanagar |
| Date | Late 16th century |
| Total length | 30.7 cm |
| Blade | 15.0 cm |
| Width of the blade | 6.6 cm |
| Cross-bars | 15.7 cm |
429. 150/LIV *Jamadhar*—Damascus steel blade perforated in the middle; thickened point. The handle shows pearls running design (*motī daudatī*) and has two bars fitted together.
- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| Provenance | Agra |
| School | Mughal |
| Date | Late 17th century |
| Total length | 38.0 cm |
| Blade | 18.7 cm |
| Width of the blade | 6.4 cm |
| Cross-bars | 19.3 cm |
430. 228/LIV *Jamadhar*—Similar to No. 8/LV but smaller in size, with some change in design.
- | | |
|--------------------|----------------------|
| Provenance | Assam |
| School | North-eastern School |
| Date | 18th century |
| Total length | 37.3 cm |
| Blade | 28.8 cm |
| Width of the blade | 3.1 cm |
| Cross-bars | 8.5 cm |

431. 346/LIV-A *Jamadhar*—Triangular, double-edged blade with a thickened point; blade is perforated in floral and creeper design. Handle with its two horizontal bars is damascened in gold and shows lion in relief.
- | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| Provenance | Alwar (Rajasthan) |
| School | Mughal |
| Date | Early 18th century |
| Total length | 44.8 cm |
| Blade | 24.1 cm |
| Width of the blade | 6.0 cm |
| Cross-bars | 20.7 cm |
432. 346/LIV *Jamadhar*—Watered steel blade with thickened tip. On both sides the figure of a deity riding on a lion is engraved. The hilt, with two globular horizontal bands, is profusely damascened in gold in floral, creeper and geometrical design in *zarbuland* style. The damaged wooden sheath, encased with faded red velvet, has a steel chape ornamented like the hilt. A miniature knife of watered steel blade and walrus ivory hilt is kept in a pocket made outside the sheath.
- | | |
|--------------------|-------------|
| Provenance | Rajasthan |
| School | Rajput |
| Date | c 1720 A.D. |
| Total length | 40.3 cm |
| Blade | 20.8 cm |
| Width of the blade | 7.7 cm |
| Cross-bars | 19.5 cm |
433. 347/LIV *Jamadhar*—Damascus steel blade with a thickened tip; an elephant engraved on each side near the forte. The hilt, with two horizontal bands, is damascened all over, in gold in floral and creeper design. The outer side of the hilt is ornamented in *zarbuland* while the inner side is in *tehnishān* style. Sheath modern.
- | | |
|--------------------|------------------------------------|
| Provenance | Delhi |
| School | Mughal |
| Date | Shāh Jahān period (1627-1658 A.D.) |
| Total length | 40.8 cm |
| Blade | 23.0 cm |
| Width of the blade | 4.3 cm |
| Cross-bars | 17.8 cm |
434. 347/LIV-A *Jamadhar*—Straight, double-edged blade with a medial-rib on both sides and a thickened end. H-shaped hilt is decorated with inscriptions all over, in and out, in Arabic, recording the 99 names of Allāh. The wooden sheath, fitted with faded blue velvet, has upper and lower fittings damascened in gold in floral design.
- | | |
|------------|-------------------|
| Provenance | South India |
| School | Deccani |
| Date | Late 17th century |

Total length	36.6 cm
Blade	22.0 cm
Width of the blade	3.6 cm
Cross-bars	14.6 cm

435. 348/LIV	<i>Jamadhar</i> —Similar to No. 347/LIV
	Provenance Delhi
	School Mughal
	Date Mid. 17th century
	Total length 40.8 cm
	Blade 20.9 cm
	Width of the blade 5.9 cm
	Cross-bars 19.9 cm

436. 348/LIV-A	<i>Jamadhar</i> —Watered steel blade with prominent mid-rib and a thick end. The hilt, with two globular horizontal bands, is damascened in gold. The outer side of the hilt is gold-plated and is engraved with <i>Nād-i-Ālī</i> from the holy <i>Qurān</i> in Arabic language. The sheath of the <i>jamadhar</i> is available.
	Provenance Delhi or Agra
	School Mughal
	Date c 1700 A.D.
	Total length 41.8 cm
	Blade 23.1 cm
	Width of the blade 4.5 cm
	Cross-bars 18.7 cm

437. 349/LIV	<i>Jamadhar</i> —Watered steel blade, thickened at the lower part; a flower is chiselled on each side of the blade near the forte. The hilt, having two globular bands, is profusely embellished with floral and creeper design both in <i>tehnishān</i> and <i>zarbuland</i> styles. The wooden sheath, with faded violet velvet, has a steel chape damascened in gold.
	Provenance Rajasthan
	School Rajput
	Date c 1720 A.D.
	Total length 38.3 cm
	Blade 19.6 cm
	Width of the blade 5.8 cm
	Cross-bars 18.7 cm

438. 350/LIV	<i>Jamadhar</i> —Straight, double-edged blade of Damascus steel with a medial-rib on both sides and a thickened end. H-shaped handle, with two horizontal bands, is inscribed all over, in and out, in gold damascening and describes the 99 names of Allāh in Nastāliq script in Arabic language.
	Provenance Delhi
	School Mughal
	Date Late 17th century

Total length	46.6 cm
Blade	24.4 cm
Width of the blade	5.5 cm
Cross-bars	22.2 cm

439. 351/LIV *Jamadhār*—Straight, double-edged blade with a mid-rib and a thickened end. H-shaped hilt, with two horizontal bands, is inscribed all over, in and out, in silver damascening with couplets in Persian asking for help from Prophet Muhammad. Sheath is modern.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	Late 17th century
Total length	48.4 cm
Blade	25.9 cm
Width of the blade	4.7 cm
Cross-bars	22.5 cm

440. 353/LIV-A *Jamadhār*—With a medial-rib and a thickened tip. The hilt, damaged and repaired, is damascened in gold over enamelled blue surface. The wooden sheath with red velvet has a gold-plated chape.

Provenance	Rajasthan
School	Rajput
Date	c 1775 A.D.
Total length	39.9 cm
Blade	23.2 cm
Width of the blade	6.3 cm
Cross-bars	16.7 cm

441. 373/LIV *Jamadhār*—Watered steel blade is engraved with floral and creeper design in relief and has a thickened tip. The thin hilt, with two horizontal rods, is damascened all over in gold in floral and creeper design; the outer design being different from the inner side. Sheath modern.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	Early 18th century
Total length	37.3 cm
Blade	18.9 cm
Width of the blade	9.6 cm
Cross-bars	18.4 cm

442. 374/LIV *Jamadhār*—Double-edged blade of watered steel with three ribs on each side and a thickened end. The H-shaped handle is engraved with verses for the holy *Qurān* and *Nād-i-Ālī* all over in Arabic language on both sides. The langets of the hilt are similarly inscribed. The sheath is modern. The names of Allāh, Muhammad, Ālī, Amēduddīn Shāh Walī are also inscribed.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Mughal

Date	17th century
Total length	50.5 cm
Blade	27.1 cm
Width of the blade	6.3 cm
Cross-bars	23.4 cm

443. 375/LIV *Jamadhar*—Watered steel blade has thickened tip and is engraved all over with floral and creeper motif in relief. The hilt, with two globular horizontal bands, is chiselled with frond design and is gold-plated. The sheath is missing.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	Blade 17th century; Hilt 18th century
Total length	36.5 cm
Blade	18.6 cm
Width of the blade	5.3 cm
Cross-bars	17.9 cm

444. 376/LIV *Jamadhar*—Double-edged curved blade engraved in relief in gold on both sides with verses from the holy *Qurān*. The upper part of blade is damascened in gold in floral design. H-shaped hilt is similarly engraved with verses from the holy *Qurān* in high relief on the outer side. The floral work is in relief on the inner side. Sheath is missing.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	Late 17th century
Total length	47.0 cm
Blade	30.6 cm
Width of the blade	3.8 cm
Cross-bars	16.4 cm

KINDJAL

445. 5/LIV *Kindjal*—Straight, double-edged blade gradually tapering to a point; one deep groove on each side of the blade. One side of the blade is inscribed in gold having couplets in Persian. The steel hilt is fitted with two pieces, one of jade and the other of walrus ivory. On the side of the walrus ivory are riveted two steel knobs and one star like plate. The wooden sheath is covered with brown leather and has steel upper and lower fittings and also a loop. The name 'Muhammad' is inscribed on the blade.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	17th century
Total length	51.8 cm
Blade	38.3 cm
Hilt	13.5 cm

446. 6/LIV *Kindjal*—Similar to No. 87/LIV. The hilt is broken and riveted. Sheath modern.
- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| Provenance | North India |
| School | Mughal |
| Date | 16th century |
| Total length | 51.8 cm |
| Blade | 38.3 cm |
| Hilt | 13.5 cm |
447. 7/LIV *Kindjal*—Double-edged, straight blade tapering to a point with a deep groove on each side of the blade; *jauhar* invisible. An inscription in Persian records *Amal-i-Raham Ali*. The hilt consists of a steel plate flanked by two pieces of walrus ivory supported by three flower-shaped rivets. The wooden sheath is covered with shagreen leather.
- | | |
|--------------|------------------|
| Provenance | Delhi |
| School | Sultanate School |
| Date | 15th century |
| Total length | 60.8 cm |
| Blade | 47.4 cm |
| Hilt | 13.4 cm |
448. 8/LIV *Kindjal*—Shape similar to No. 95/LIV. The hilt consists of two ivory plates riveted to a steel tang. The steel rivets are cone-shaped. Sheath modern.
- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| Provenance | North India |
| School | Mughal |
| Date | 16th century |
| Total length | 47.9 cm |
| Blade | 35.1 cm |
| Hilt | 12.8 cm |
449. 9/LIV *Kindjal*—Double-edged blade tapering to a point with a deep groove on each side. On one side is engraved an inscription in Persian stating *Yā Ali madad*. Steel hilt is flanked by two pieces of horn and is riveted by two dome-shaped studs. The wooden sheath is covered with brown leather.
- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| Provenance | Deccan |
| School | Indo-Turkish |
| Date | 15th century |
| Total length | 65.5 cm |
| Blade | 49.8 cm |
| Hilt | 15.7 cm |
450. 10/LIV *Kindjal*—Shape similar to No. 95/LIV
- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| Provenance | Deccan |
| School | Indo-Turkish |
| Date | 15th century |
| Total length | 52.5 cm |
| Blade | 40.0 cm |

- | | | |
|-------------|---|-------------------|
| | Hilt | 12.5 cm |
| 151. 11/LIV | <i>Kindjal</i> —Double-edged, straight blade tapering to a point with one deep groove on each side of the blade. On one side is engraved <i>Amal-i-Ibrāhīm 1003</i> in Arabic language. The hilt consists of steel plate and is riveted by two round and one elongated studs of silver. Sheath modern. | |
| | Provenance | Delhi |
| | School | Sultanate School |
| | Date | 1003 A.H. |
| | Total length | 61.1 cm |
| | Blade | 46.4 cm |
| | Hilt | 14.7 cm |
| 152. 17/LIV | <i>Kindjal</i> —Similar to No. 95/LIV; sheath modern. | |
| | Provenance | Deccan |
| | School | Indo-Turkish |
| | Date | 15th century |
| | Total length | 61.9 cm |
| | Blade | 47.2 cm |
| | Hilt | 14.7 cm |
| 153. 79/LIV | <i>Kindjal</i> —Plain blade slightly curved at the lower tip, single-edged on one side and double-edged at the lower tip, having one deep groove on each side. On one side of the blade are engraved the verses from the holy <i>Qurān</i> in gold in <i>Nastāliq</i> script and Arabic language. The steel hilt is fitted with two pieces of horn and is studded with two brass knobs on one side. Sheath is missing. | |
| | Provenance | North India |
| | School | Mughal |
| | Date | Late 17th century |
| | Total length | 76.6 cm |
| | Blade | 61.2 cm |
| | Hilt | 15.4 cm |
| 154. 86/LIV | <i>Kindjal</i> —Straight, double-edged dagger with a deep groove on both sides; on one side is an inscription (unidentified language) in gold. The hilt is of solid walrus ivory with two studs on one side. The wooden sheath is covered with black leather; one side is embossed and the other side is plain. It is mounted with upper and lower fittings of silver which are plain on one side and decorated with niello work in creeper design on the other. The plain side of the <i>muhāl</i> bears several stamps. | |
| | Provenance | Delhi |
| | School | Sultanate School |
| | Date | 15th century |
| | Total length | 53.0 cm |
| | Blade | 39.9 cm |
| | Hilt | 13.1 cm |

455. 87/LIV *Kindjal*—Similar to No. 88/LIV but without sheath. The stamped marking is illegible. The hilt is of elephant ivory.
- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| Provenance | North India |
| School | Mughal |
| Date | 16th century |
| Total length | 63.3 cm |
| Blade | 49.3 cm |
| Hilt | 14.0 cm |
456. 88/LIV *Kindjal*—Double-edged, straight blade tapering to a point with one deep groove on each side of the blade. On one side is engraved *Amal-i-Ibrāhīm 1003* in Arabic language. The hilt consists of steel plate and is riveted by two round and one elongated studs of silver. Sheath is modern.
- | | |
|--------------|------------------|
| Provenance | Delhi |
| School | Sultanate School |
| Date | 1003 A.H. |
| Total length | 60.4 cm |
| Blade | 46.6 cm |
| Hilt | 13.8 cm |
457. 89/LIV *Kindjal*—Similar to No. 95/LIV. The hilt is made of two ivory cheeks riveted to the steel tang. The two rivets and the borders of the steel plate are damascened in floral design in gold. Sheath modern.
- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| Provenance | Deccan |
| School | Indo-Turkish |
| Date | 15th century |
| Total length | 58.5 cm |
| Blade | 44.9 cm |
| Hilt | 13.6 cm |
458. 90/LIV *Kindjal*—Double-edged straight blade tapering to a point with a deep groove on each side of the blade. On one side is inscribed *Badesth Soplath* (by hand of Soplath). On the other side numericals 129 (0) ? are engraved. The hilt of solid silver bears design in niello on one side and is chiselled on the other side. Two pentagonal studs are riveted to it. Sheath modern.
- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| Provenance | Hyderabad |
| School | Deccani |
| Date | 19th century |
| Total length | 49.3 cm |
| Blade | 43.4 cm |
| Hilt | 5.9 cm |
459. 91/LIV *Kindjal*—Double-edged, straight blade of Damascus steel terminating into a point, each side has a deep groove. The steel hilt is covered with two pieces of ivory and on one side two dome-shaped ridged studs are riveted to it.

Provenance	Deccan
School	Indo-Turkish
Date	17th century
Total length	69.8 cm
Blade	55.3 cm
Hilt	14.5 cm

460. 92/LIV *Kindjal*—Straight double-edged blade of Damascus steel terminating into a point. On both sides it has a deep groove. The hilt is encased with two pieces of walrus ivory; on one side two gold damascened steel knobs are riveted to it; sheath modern.

Provenance	Deccan
School	Indo-Turkish
Date	17th century
Total length	57.7 cm
Blade	44.8 cm
Hilt	12.9 cm

461. 93/LVI *Kindjal*—Straight double-edged blade with a point. It has one deep groove on each side. The blade is of Damascus steel. On one side is engraved *Yā Waheed* (name of Allāh) and 92. The hilt of solid silver bears two knobs on one side. Sheath modern.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Sultanate period
Date	15th century
Total length	62.8 cm
Blade	49.5 cm
Hilt	13.3 cm

462. 94/LIV *Kindjal*—Double-edged, straight blade tapering to a point with a deep groove on either side of the blade. One Persian inscription on one side of the blade states *Yā Alī madad*. Silver-coated hilt of metal is riveted with two dome-shaped rivets. The wooden sheath is covered with faded red velvet and has a silver-coated chape.

Provenance	Deccan
School	Indo-Turkish
Date	15th century
Total length	65.6 cm
Blade	49.9 cm
Hilt	15.7 cm

463. 95/LIV *Kindjal*—Double-edged blade tapering to a point with one deep groove on each side; *jauhar* not visible. An Arabic inscription recording the names of *Allāh, Muhammad, Alī, Fātimā* is stamped on one side of the blade. The steel hilt is covered with two pieces of horn and is riveted by two cone-shaped and one leaf-shaped rivets. The wooden sheath is covered with green velvet of later date and has an upper and lower fitting damas-

cened in gold.

Provenance	Deccan
School	Indo-Turkish
Date	15th century
Total length	58.3 cm
Blade	42.9 cm
Hilt	15.4 cm

464. 97/LIV *Kindjal*—Shape similar to No.95/LIV. Damascus steel blade; the upper part of the blade bears floral and creeper design in gold damascening. The hilt consists of two ivory pieces riveted to the steel plate. The rivets and the washers are of silver. The side plates of the steel are damascened in gold. Sheath missing.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Sultanate School
Date	15th century
Total length	65.3 cm
Blade	51.4 cm
Hilt	13.9 cm

465. 372/LIV *Kindjal*—Straight, double-edged blade tapering into a point; one deep groove on each side of the blade. The blade bears an inscription damascened in gold which reads *Amal-i-Usmān Hussain* and verses from the holy *Qurān*. The steel hilt is covered with two pieces of horn and two dome-shaped studs of brass. The lower part of the blade is damascened in gold.

Provenance	Deccan
School	Indo-Turkish
Date	16th century
Total length	52.7 cm
Blade	38.8 cm
Hilt	13.9 cm

466. 376/LIV *Kindjal*—Same as No.377/LIV but small in size.

Provenance	Deccan
School	Indo-Turkish
Date	16th century inscription engraved in the 19th century
Total length	47.0 cm
Blade	30.6 cm
Hilt	16.4 cm

467. 377/LIV *Kindjal*—Same as No.372/LIV with an additional inscription reading *Nawāb Sālār Jung Bahādur Mīr Yousuf Alī Khān*.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Indo-Turkish
Date	16th century inscription engraved in the 19th century

Total length	55.7 cm
Blade	41.7 cm
Hilt	14.0 cm

PESHQABZ

468. 63/LIV *Peshqabz*—Watered steel plain blade; the hilt of solid ivory is engraved with floral and creeper design all over. The wooden sheath, covered with yellow velvet, is damaged.

Provenance	Rajasthan
School	Rajput
Date	c 1720 A.D.
Total length	46.2 cm
Blade	34.8 cm
Hilt	11.4 cm

469. 67/LIV *Peshqabz*—Watered steel blade. The cylindrical hilt is of solid stone. Its lower part is capped with steel damascened in gold. Damaged wooden sheath has gold-plated *muhnāl* and *tehnāl*.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	Mid. 18th century
Total length	41.5 cm
Blade	29.5 cm
Hilt	12.0 cm

470. 75/LIV *Peshqabz*—Watered steel blade, rib on the back edge; the hilt consists of a solid, almost rectangular, piece of walrus ivory. A perforated steel locket is attached to the top. Sheath modern.

Provenance	Lahore (now in Pakistan)
School	Mughal
Date	c 1700 A.D.
Total length	43.1 cm
Blade	31.0 cm
Hilt	12.1 cm

471. 76/LIV *Peshqabz*—Damascus steel, plain blade, the steel hilt is damascened all over in floral and creeper design in *tehnishān* style and also bears inscriptions in Persian. The wooden sheath, covered with black leather, is fitted with *muhnāl* and *tehnāl*, both damascened in gold.

Provenance	North India
School	Late Mughal
Date	18th century
Total length	36.6 cm
Blade	24.6 cm
Hilt	12.0 cm

472. 77/LIV *Peshqabz*—Thin blade of Damascus steel broken into two pieces. The part near the forte is perforated and bears an inscription in gold damascening.

The solid steel handle bears floral and creeper design in Bidrī style. The damaged wooden sheath is covered with faded red velvet and is fitted with *muhnāl* and *tehnāl*, both ornamented in Bidrī style.

Provenance	Bidar (Karnataka)
School	Deccanī
Date	c 1800 A.D.
Total length	37.8 cm
Blade	25.6 cm
Hilt	12.2 cm

473. 130/LIV-A *Peshqabz*—Slightly curved blade of Damascus steel of 'T' section. Ricasso and the back edge are engraved with floral and creeper design in low relief. The steel hilt is covered with two pieces of walrus ivory. Sheath modern.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Mughal
Date	Shāh Jahān period (1627-1658 A.D.)
Total length	40.0 cm
Blade	28.2 cm
Hilt	11.8 cm

474. 131/LIV-A *Peshqabz*—Slightly curved blade of Damascus steel, the part near the ricasso and the back edge is chiselled with floral and creeper design and also bears inscription. The hilt consists of steel plate supported by two pieces of walrus ivory, slightly damaged. The steel band is inscribed all over. The buckle on the top is also inscribed and reads *Amal-i-Bāqir 1110 A.H.* and *Surēh Ikhlās* of the holy *Qurān* in Arabic language.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	1110 A.H.
Total length	41.3 cm
Blade	28.6 cm
Hilt	12.7 cm

475. 133/LIV-A *Peshqabz*—Slightly curved blade of watered steel is fitted with two pieces of walrus ivory. The side band is carved with the hunting scenes. The part near ricasso is engraved with floral design. Wooden sheath is covered with damaged velvet and is fitted with *tehnāl* and *muhnāl* of perforated silver.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Mughal
Date	c 1650 A.D.
Total length	31.2 cm
Blade	20.0 cm
Hilt	11.2 cm

476. 139/LIV-A *Peshqabz*—Slightly curved blade of Damascus steel of 'T' section. Ricasso and the back edge are engraved with floral and creeper design. The hilt is made of solid piece of stone. Wooden sheath is covered with red velvet.

- | | | |
|--|--------------|-------------------|
| | Provenance | Hyderabad |
| | School | Deccani |
| | Date | Late 17th century |
| | Total length | 39.5 cm |
| | Blade | 28.1 cm |
| | Hilt | 11.4 cm |
477. 171/LIV *Peshqabz*—Similar to No. 172/LIV. Both seem to be a pair and have been manufactured by the same artist. This also carries *Ayātul Kursī*. The only distinction is that this dagger bears the name *Shāhebā Sultān Āgā*.
- | | | |
|--|--------------|-------------------------------|
| | Provenance | North India |
| | School | Mughal |
| | Date | Closing years of 17th century |
| | Total length | 38.4 cm |
| | Blade | 24.0 cm |
| | Hilt | 14.4 cm |
478. 172/LIV *Peshqabz*—Single-edged blade of Damascus steel of “T” section tapering to a point. The ricasso on both sides, the upper back edge and a portion of the hilt, are damascened in gold with couplet in Arabic referring to the *Ayātul Kursī* of the Holy *Qurān*. The hilt consists of steel fitted with two pieces of walrus ivory. The wooden sheath (damaged) is covered with red velvet.
- | | | |
|--|--------------|-------------------------------|
| | Provenance | North India |
| | School | Mughal |
| | Date | Closing years of 17th century |
| | Total length | 37.2 cm |
| | Blade | 22.8 cm |
| | Hilt | 14.4 cm |
479. 220/LIV *Peshqabz*—Slightly curved blade of Damascus steel with a thickened point; part near ricasso and the back edge is elegantly carved with floral and creeper design. The steel hilt is covered with two pieces of walrus ivory and is further covered with perforated steel plate showing the design of flowers and creepers. Wooden sheath is wrapped with blue velvet and fitted with delicately carved *tehnāl* and *muhnāl*.
- | | | |
|--|--------------|-------------|
| | Provenance | North India |
| | School | Mughal |
| | Date | c 1765 A.D. |
| | Total length | 30.7 cm |
| | Blade | 19.5 cm |
| | Hilt | 11.2 cm |
480. 221/LIV *Peshqabz*—Single-edged, straight blade of watered steel. Two ivory pieces are beautifully chiselled with couplets of Persian poetry evoking Alī for victory in the battle. The ivory pieces are riveted to the plain steel hilt. The wooden sheath, with red velvet, is fitted with perforated silver *muhnāl* and *tehnāl*.

Provenance	Lahore (now in Pakistan)
School	Mughal
Date	c 1700 A.D.
Total length	38.6 cm
Blade	27.2 cm
Hilt	11.4 cm

481. 222/LIV *Peshqabz*—Slightly curved blade of Damascus steel with a medial-rib. Both sides of the blade bear inscriptions in gold recording verses from the holy *Qurān*; the part near the ricasso and the back edge is damascened in floral and creeper design in gold in *tehnishān* style. Steel hilt is covered with two pieces of walrus ivory. Wooden sheath is covered with green faded velvet and has a *muhnāl* and *tehnāl* of perforated silver.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	c 1700 A.D.
Total length	34.7 cm
Blade	22.2 cm
Hilt	12.5 cm

482. 223/LVI *Peshqabz*—Slightly curved blade of Damascus steel of "I" section. The part near ricasso is engraved with floral design and it also bears an inscription in gold on both sides. The inscription records the verses for the holy *Qurān* in Arabic language. The hilt consists of a steel plate flanked by two pieces of walrus ivory. The hilt is damaged. The wooden sheath is of wood covered with faded green velvet and a *muhnāl*.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	Late 17th century
Total length	34.6 cm
Blade	23.3 cm
Hilt	11.3 cm

483. 225/LIV *Peshqabz*—Fine watered steel blade slightly curved at the tip, rib on the back edge. The hilt consists of two pieces of wood riveted to a steel tang shaped to the size. The wooden pieces are carved with frond design. Sheath modern with original chape of copper engraved with floral and creeper design terminating into the shape of a bud.

Provenance	Rajasthan
School	Rajput (blade made in Jaipur, Rajasthan and hilt made in Bijnaur, U.P.)
Date	c 1700 A.D.
Total length	48.9 cm
Blade	36.0 cm
Hilt	12.9 cm

484. 229/LIV *Peshqabz*—Damascus steel blade, rib on the back edge. The hilt consists of

two pieces of walrus ivory riveted to the steel tang shaped to the size. The borders of the hilt are damascened in floral and creeper design in gold. Sheath modern.

Provenance	Lahore (now in Pakistan)
School	Mughal
Date	c 1700 A.D.
Total length	44.4 cm
Blade	32.4 cm
Hilt	12.0 cm

485. 231/LIV *Peshqabz*—Watered steel narrow blade. The hilt is of one piece maroon coloured semi-precious stone. The part near the forte and the back edge are damascened in gold. Sheath modern.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	18th century
Total length	33.2 cm
Blade	22.1 cm
Hilt	11.1 cm

486. 234/LIV *Peshqabz*—Damascus steel plain blade. Two plain ivory pieces are united to the handle of the steel; its borders are damascened in gold. The wooden sheath is covered with brown leather and is fitted with a metallic chape.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	c 1725 A.D.
Total length	34.6 cm
Blade	22.8 cm
Hilt	11.8 cm

487. 235/LIV *Peshqabz*—Slightly curved blade of Damascus steel, single-edged. The part near ricasso and the back edge is strengthened and decorated with floral, creeper and animal design. The steel hilt is covered with two pieces of ivory engraved with floral and creeper design. The bands are damascened in gold and frond design. A small buckle on the top bears inscription in perforated work. The inscription records *Yā Kāji* (the name of Allāh). The modern sheath, covered with faded red velvet, has a plain *muhnāl* with a perforated buckle and a chape of perforated silver.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Mughal
Date	Mid. 17th century
Total length	34.1 cm
Blade	22.5 cm
Hilt	11.6 cm

QUMĀ

488. 3/LIV *Qumā*—Straight, double-edged, leaf-shaped blade with three grooves on

each side. The forte is damascened with floral design in gold. The hilt consists of two pieces of ivory riveted to the steel tang, shaped to size. Two pieces are dome-shaped while the central one is like a leaf. The wooden sheath covered with brown leather has a *muhndl* and in the place of chape has a steel bud.

Provenance	North-west India
School	Mughal
Date	Early 17th century
Total length	44.3 cm
Blade	32.2 cm
Hilt	12.0 cm

489. 10/LIV *Qumā*—Double-edged, straight blade terminating into a point with one deep groove on each side of the blade; the steel hilt is covered with two pieces of walrus ivory and is riveted with two bigger dome-shaped and one smaller stud of a steel. Hilt is modern.

Provenance	Deccan
School	Indo-Turkish
Date	17th century
Total length	52.5 cm
Blade	40.0 cm
Hilt	12.5 cm

490. 12/LIV *Qumā*—Double-edged, straight blade with one deep groove on each side. The hilt is covered with silver plate and is decorated with neillo work, in floral, creeper and geometrical design. It has two studs. The wooden sheath is covered with silver. On one side is needle work and the other side is chiselled with floral and creeper design.

Provenance	Deccan
School	Indo-Turkish
Date	18th century
Total length	48.1 cm
Blade	36.3 cm
Hilt	11.8 cm

491. 13/LIV *Qumā*—Double-edged, straight pointed blade with a deep groove on each side, fine Damascus steel blade, damascened in gold in floral, creeper and bird design on one side of the blade. The hilt consists of two pieces of ivory (one of walrus ivory and the other of elephant ivory) riveted to the steel tang. The sides of the hilt are damascened in gold *koftgāri*. The damaged wooden sheath is covered with faded violet velvet and has a chiselled silver *muhndl*.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Sultanate School
Date	15th century
Total length	43.0 cm
Blade	29.7 cm

Hilt 13.3 cm

492. 16/LIV *Qumā*—Double-edged straight blade tapering to a point with a medial-rib. The upper part of the blade is engraved on both sides. The blade is inscribed with *Ghirāzē nafsi* (aimed at taking life) and Persian couplets. The steel hilt is fitted with two pieces of plain ivory. Damaged wooden sheath is covered with black velvet.

Provenance North India
 School Mughal
 Date Late 17th century
 Total length 31.8 cm
 Blade 20.1 cm
 Hilt 11.7 cm

493. 277/LIV *Qumā*—Straight, curved, double-edged blade with a deep groove on each side. It bears a small gold inscription on both sides; on one side it reads *Yā Alī* and on the other *Daghistān*. The steel plate of the hilt is first covered with horn and finally with a chiselled metal plate. Sheath is missing.

Provenance Deccan
 School Indo-Turkish
 Date Early 18th century
 Total length 29.9 cm
 Blade 21.2 cm
 Hilt 8.7 cm

CHHURĀ

494. 76/LVI *Chhurā*—Similar to No.87/LVI but without the name of the maker.

Provenance Aurangabad
 School Deccani
 Date Early 20th century
 Total length 32.4 cm
 Blade 20.5 cm
 Hilt 11.9 cm

495. 84/LVI *Chhurā*—Similar to No.87/LVI but without sheath.

Provenance Aurangabad
 School Deccani
 Date Early 20th century
 Total length 34.8 cm
 Blade 22.0 cm
 Hilt 12.8 cm

496. 85/LVI *Chhurā*—Similar to No.87/LVI. The hilt contains small knives, cork-opener, pricker, etc.

Provenance Aurangabad
 School Deccani
 Date Early 20th century

Total length	35.0 cm
Blade	23.0 cm
Hilt	12.0 cm

497. 86/LVI *Chhurā*—Similar to No.87/LVI. The hilt of steel, fitted with ivory pieces, contains small knives, pricker and cork-opener, etc. The blade has cut designs. The wooden sheath, in red velvet, has a locking device. Made by Bod Rāj.

Provenance	Aurangabad
School	Deccani
Date	Early 20th century
Total length	34.5 cm
Blade	21.9 cm
Hilt	12.6 cm

498. 87/LVI *Chhurā*—Single-edged from the top and double-edged at the lower end, cylindrical handle of horn with a metallic cap. It bears the name of maker Bod Rāj, Aurangabad. Sheath is missing.

Provenance	Aurangabad
School	Deccani
Date	Early 20th century
Total length	34.5 cm
Blade	21.9 cm
Hilt	12.6 cm

KHANJARALI

499. 9/LIII *Khanjarali*—Recurved blade with four grooves on each side, badly rusted, steel hilt is covered with ivory pieces; pommel is shaped like a crescent and the grip is cylindrical. Hilt is fastened with four steel knobs on each side and has a knuckle-guard. Wooden sheath is covered with black leather.

Provenance	Vijayanagara
School	South Indian
Date	16th century
Total length	29.5 cm
Blade	18.5 cm
Hilt	11.0 cm

500. 10/LIII *Khanjarali*—Recurved blade of Damascus steel with a mid-rib has double-edged, thickened point. Hilt consists of four pieces of ivory with a steel knuckle-guard. The wooden sheath is covered with green velvet but without a chape.

Provenance	Vijayanagara
School	South Indian
Date	16th century
Total length	32.4 cm
Blade	21.0 cm
Hilt	11.4 cm

501. 11/LIII *Khanjarali*—Recurved blade of Damascus steel with a mid-rib. Steel hilt is covered with pieces of ivory and is engraved with floral and creeper design all over. Small knuckle-guard of steel bears traces of gold work. Wooden sheath is covered with shagreen leather (damaged) and is fitted with *muhnāl* with a buckle of perforated silver.
- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| Provenance | Vijayanagara |
| School | South Indian |
| Date | 16th century |
| Total length | 31.5 cm |
| Blade | 21.0 cm |
| Hilt | 10.5 cm |
502. 23/LII *Khanjarali*—Similar to No.10/LIII with a chape.
- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| Provenance | Vijayanagara |
| School | South Indian |
| Date | 16th century |
| Total length | 32.0 cm |
| Blade | 20.5 cm |
| Hilt | 11.5 cm |
503. 24/LIII *Khanjarali*—Recurved plain blade with a medial-rib and a thickened end. Steel hilt is covered with pieces of ivory whose pommel is crescent-shaped; grip is cylindrical and the entire hilt is fastened with six studs on each side. It has a small knuckle-guard. Sheath modern.
- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| Provenance | Vijayanagara |
| School | South Indian |
| Date | 16th century |
| Total length | 29.3 cm |
| Blade | 17.7 cm |
| Hilt | 11.6 cm |

AFGHAN KNIFE

504. 60/LIV *Afghan Knife*—Slightly curved near the tip. The blade has grooves on the back edge. The hilt consists of two pieces of wood riveted to the steel plate. Sheath modern fitted with original *muhnāl*; traces of gold damascening are available on the hilt.
- | | |
|--------------|------------------|
| Provenance | North-west India |
| School | Late Mughal |
| Date | 18th century |
| Total length | 65.8 cm |
| Blade | 52.0 cm |
| Hilt | 13.8 cm |
505. 66/LIV *Afghan Knife*—Single-edged blade of welded Damascus. The cylindrical hilt consists of two ivory pieces affixed to a steel plate whose sides are damascened in gold *koftgāri*. The wooden sheath, encased with faded violet velvet, has perforated and comparatively bigger *muhnāl* and *tehnāl*.

Provenance	North-west India
School	Late Mughal
Date	18th century
Total length	50.0 cm
Blade	36.4 cm
Hilt	13.6 cm

506. 72/LIV *Afghan Knife*—Watered steel blade. The damaged hilt consists of two pieces of horn riveted to the steel plate, the borders damascened in gold in floral design. The damaged wooden sheath, with yellow velvet, has a gold damascened chape.

Provenance	North-west India
School	Late Mughal
Total length	50.9 cm
Blade	37.4 cm
Hilt	13.5 cm

BICHHAWĀ

507. 8/LIII *Bichhawā*—Same as item no. 25/LIII but meant for the left hand. Both (Nos. 25 and 8) form a pair.

Provenance	Maharashtra
School	Maratha
Date	Early 17th century
Total length	34.6 cm
Blade	21.6 cm
Hilt	13.0 cm

508. 25/LIII *Bichhawā*—Recurved blade for the right hand having one rib and a thickened end. The handle is a curved bar with a knuckle-guard. A bud-shaped knob is riveted to the top. The handle is riveted to the blade with two rivets and is profusely ornamented in gold in floral and creeper design.

Provenance	Maharashtra
School	Maratha
Date	Early 17th century
Total length	34.7 cm
Blade	21.2 cm
Hilt	13.5 cm

KHANJAR

509. 143/LIV-A *Khanjar*—Double-edged, slightly recurved blade of Damascus steel with a medial-rib on both sides and a thickened point. Hilt consists of one solid piece of ivory. Pommel slightly curved and shaped like a bud between two leaves. The entire hilt is engraved with flowers and geometrical design. The wooden sheath is modern but the *muhmāl* is original and is of ivory carved in the style of the hilt.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	Mid. 17th century
Total length	39.0 cm
Blade	25.8 cm
Hilt	13.2 cm

510. 213/LVI *Khanjar*—Curved, double-edged, ridged blade; hilt of one piece of ivory, pommel shaped like three flowers. The wooden sheath is covered with green faded velvet.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Deccani
Date	18th century
Total length	36.1 cm
Blade	23.0 cm
Hilt	13.1 cm

CHILĀNUM

511. 7/LIII *Chilānum*—Recurved blade, double-edged, bearing ridges on both sides. The hilt consists of two curved leaves at the pommel and similar ones forming the quillons. The entire hilt is moulded and damascened in gold.

Provenance	Maharashtra
School	Deccani
Date	17th century
Total length	35.8 cm
Blade	22.5 cm
Hilt	13.3 cm

512. 20/LIII *Chilānum*—Recurved, double-edged blade with a thickened point and a medial-rib. The hilt of copper has its pommel depicting on one side a lion crouching upon an elephant and on the other side a peacock fighting an eagle. The quillons droop down and terminate into the forms of two birds. The whole hilt is moulded into a solid copper and is engraved with floral design all over.

Provenance	Maharashtra
School	Deccani
Date	17th century
Total length	38.3 cm
Blade	22.3 cm
Hilt	16.0 cm

BAḌĀ JAMADĀDŪ

513. 21/III *Baḍā Jamadādū*—Triangular, double-edged, ridged blade with thickened point. H-shaped hilt has two globular, horizontal bars and a curved knuckle-guard. Major part of the hilt is damascened in gold in floral and creeper design and the knuckle-guard terminates into a mythical animal.

Wooden sheath, covered with yellow velvet, has a chape in the style of the hilt.

Provenance	Maharashtra
School	Maratha
Date	18th century
Total length	50.0 cm
Blade	33.8 cm
Hilt	16.2 cm

514. 72-50 *Badā Jamadādū*—Double-edged, straight blade with a thickened end. Blade has several ridges. H-shaped handle with its two globular horizontal bars is covered with a recurved knuckle-guard. Sheath is covered with embroidered velvet.

Provenance	Maharashtra
School	Maratha
Date	17th century
Total length	58.0 cm
Blade	42.0 cm
Hilt	16.0 cm

TANJORE DAGGER

515. 16/LIII *Tanjore Dagger*—Recurved, double-edged rusted blade with a mid-rib; heavy hilt of brass terminating into the head of a lion with a knuckle-guard. No sheath.

Provenance	Tanjore Tamilnadu
School	Tanjore School
Date	16th century
Total length	30.3 cm
Blade	17.2 cm
Hilt	13.1 cm

516. 19/LIII *Tanjore Dagger*—Recurved blade, brass hilt shaped like a lion with a curved knuckle-guard. Modern sheath.

Provenance	Tanjore, Tamilnadu
School	Tanjore School
Date	16th century
Total length	26.8 cm
Blade	16.3 cm
Hilt	10.5 cm

AYDA KATTI

517. 70-19 *Ayda Katti*—Curved blade, semi-circular with edge on the concave side and a strong back edge; kite-shaped pommel of horn is fixed to the handle of steel. It was used mostly by the Moplā tribe.

Provenance	Malabar
School	South India

Date	18th century
Total length	48.6 cm
Blade	26.5 cm
Hilt	22.1 cm

518. 89/LVI *Ayda Katti*—Slightly curved blade with edge on the concave side. The blade shows a nick and a tooth like that of a *khukari*. Long handle of wood is capped with a brass sheet engraved with a lion. Damaged wooden sheath is covered with a brown leather. Used by the Moplā tribe in Malabar.

Provenance	Malabar
School	South India
Date	19th century
Total length	35.2 cm
Blade	16.5 cm
Hilt	18.7 cm

BHUI

519. 55/LIII *Bhuj*—Slightly curved blade is single-edged for a greater part and double-edged at the top end. The back edge and other places of the blade are damascened in floral design in gold. The handle is divided into six sections, alternatively octagonal and cylindrical, and is surmounted by an elephant-head. The hollow handle contains a *gupti* inside. The wooden sheath, with red velvet, is fitted with a gold damascened chape. The weapon is an imitation of the Sindhī *Bhuj* produced in Hyderabad since the handle reflects the impact of Bidrī design.

Provenance	Hyderabad
School	Bhuj
Date	Early 18th century
Total length	90.5 cm
Blade	31.0 cm
Hilt	59.5 cm

CHAPTER IV

MACES, BATTLE-AXES AND SPEARS

MACE

Round, thick stone pieces with hole in the centre belonging to the New Stone Age are the earliest mace-heads¹. Mace-heads of copper have been discovered from Harappā only. Other Indus Valley sites have yielded stone mace-heads. Three different shapes have been noticed; pear-shaped, lentoid and circular. Their perforation is of hour-glass form bored at both ends. They were lashed to a handle with leather thongs². These were suitable for self defence, particularly in hand to hand fight in lonely or forest area.

In the Vedic period the mace was used by the well-born and the commoners alike, provided that they had the requisite strength and stamina to wield it³. Its heavy size militated against its popularity. Only the strongest could use it to purpose and advantage. The *Ādiparva* of the *Mahābhārata*⁴ describes four modes of fighting with a club or mace:

- A. *Prakṣhépa* or hurling at the enemy from a distance.
- B. *Vikṣhépa* or close fight at the weapon's point⁵.
- C. *Parikṣhépa* or brandishing it around in the midst of foes.
- D. *Abhikṣhépa* or hitting the opponent in front.

The *mandalas* or circling manoeuvres associated with club-fighting are repeatedly mentioned⁶.

When the armour was introduced mace was considered an anti-armour and specially helmet-breaking weapon. It is more often found among the Muslim warriors who habitually used large amount of armour.

CLASSIFICATION:

1. *Gadā*

It had a single globular head attached to a short metal rod. The head was plain or ridged. *Bhīma's* ponderous *gadā* was plaited with gold⁷.

2. *Shashpar*

It was a mace with six flanges on it (*shash* = six; *par* = sides). It was a short handled club with a single globular head on the top of which was mounted a knob or pinnacle. It was called *shashparī* during *Jahāngīr's* time. In one miniature painting a Mughal soldier has been carrying a *shashpar* with five feet long handle.

3. *Piyāzī*

It was so called because the end was large and spherical like an onion (*piyāz*). It was a straight mace with foliated surfaces. *Beveridge* describes it as a rugged mace, having many craggy, uneven projections⁸.

4. *Kistin*

It had a longer handle, to the end of which the sphere was attached by a chain or a string like the athlete's throwing hammer. The sphere was similar to that of *shashpar*. It could be plain or with flanges or transverse bands around it. The head, trifoliated or cusped like an arch, with eight sides, was used. The *kistin* resembled the mace called 'flail' represented in the *Āin-i-Akbarī*, the latter has a hexagonal ball attached to a handle with a chain⁹. The flail could be furnished with two balls attached separately by the chains to a handle.

5. *Gurz*

It had the steel spikes fitted on the globular head. The steel handle was three to four feet long with head three inches in diameter. Sometimes a spike (usually leaf-shaped and pointed) was affixed on the top. Two or even three-headed, one over the other, *gurzs* are available. When fitted with a small battle-axe on one side, it was called *tabar-gurz*. The *gurzs* used by the Marāthās were fitted with a basked hilt at the lower end of the handle.

6. *Khār-i-Māhī*

It consisted of several steel spikes projecting on both sides of a straight handle. It has been mentioned in the *Āin-i-Akbarī*¹⁰ and was used only rarely.

The club was sometimes hurled at the enemy like any other missile. There are a few weapons which fall into the category of clubs or bludgeons of one kind and another. The *sthūna*¹¹ of black iron and the *laguda*¹² of stone belong to this category in general. *Bhusundī*¹³, shaped like the trunk (*suṇḍa*) of an elephant, was a heavy club. The *mudgar*¹⁴, a pestle, was used for physical exercise.

The handle (or shaft) of the mace was usually ornamented with embossed rings, spheres, bands, etc. The shafts of metal were round, four-sided, hexagonal or octagonal with a button or knob at the end. The mace-bearers, marching in between the king and the artillery, were called *chobdārs*, *tawachiyān* or *yasawulān* (literally 'bearer of mace'). The horsemen wielded the mace in hand to hand fighting to break the helmet or fortified doors.

Club, like any other weapon, was an excellent item of gift. Shāh Jahān (1627-1658 A.D.) had bestowed one made of pure gold on Hājī Bég, his general. Tavernier, the European traveller, presented to Aurangzéb (1658-1707 A.D.) one battle-mace of rock crystal, of which the sides were covered with rubies and emeralds and inlaid with gold.

The handle of some maces concealed a dagger which could be used in times of need. Favourite maces had specific names like *Modakī* and *Shikharī*, the two clubs given by Vis-hvāmītra to Rāma.

BATTLE-AXE

The axe was known to the Harappans and also the Rigvedic Aryans¹⁵. It was still not a very popular weapon of war. In the *Mahābhārata* the battle-axe was designated as *parashu*¹⁶, *parāshvavadha*¹⁷, *kulisha* or *kuthāra*¹⁸. It is not infrequently described as a missile used by the nobility. The *kuthāra* was a favourite weapon of Lord Parashurāma. Kautilya¹⁹ classifies it under the category of razor-like weapons and mentions its three types *i.e.*, *parashu* (a scymitar, semi-circular and 24 inches long), *kuthāra* (an axe) and *pattisā* (same as *parashu* but shaped like a trident at both ends). In another place *pattisā* is described to be of man's height, with

two sharp edges and a sharp top. It had a handle. It has been referred to as the uterine brother of the sword²⁰. Its qualities were felling and splitting. It could be manipulated in six ways *i.e.*, raising high threateningly, striking with it slowly or quickly, raising it rapidly, making it fixed and making as if one had nothing in hand²¹. The battle-axe has been illustrated in several sculptures²², in paintings, and on coins²³.

War-axes were of all sizes from light weapons intended solely for thrusting, to heavy pole axes requiring the use of both arms. The blade is generally balanced by a hammer-head or point on the opposite side of the handle, and the latter is frequently terminated by a spike. Most have a single cutting edge though double axes were also used²⁴. Occasionally they had a dagger concealed in the handle, and, sometimes a sharp-edged hook projected from one side.

Some important types are:

TABAR

It was a single battle-axe consisting of a curved blade with a broad cutting edge²⁵. The wooden shaft was inserted into the socket of the blade. The sharp-edged blade was semi-circular²⁶. It had many sub-types²⁷. The size of the blade varied from 7 inches to 15 inches.

TARANGĀLA

Its cutting edge is similar to that of a *tabar* but the pinnacle is shaped like a spear-head. It could thus have been used both for cutting and piercing²⁸.

JAGHNOL

It contained a steel handle and the head was thick and shaped like the beak of a bird²⁹. It had cutting edges on both the sides and a thickened point which was very useful in piercing a helmet or a coat of mail.

TABAR-JAGHNOL

It was the combination of *tabar* and *jaghnol* hence the name. On one side it had the blade like that of the *jaghnol* and opposite to it, one similar to that of a *tabar*.

TABAR-ZIN

It is also called *chamkhag*, *chakhmag* or *chakmagh*—a battle-axe fastened to the saddle³⁰. It had a sharp-edged hook on one side and was intended for cutting the bridle reins of the opponent.

The shafts of the battle-axes were simple, occasionally mounted with metallic caps or knobs or pinnacles on both ends. The blades were sometimes ornamented. The axes of gold and silver were displayed by the attendants in the court. The shafts of these axes measured generally 3 to 4 feet, head of the axe 3 to 4 inches horizontally and 5 to 6 inches vertically. In certain cases a dagger (*gupti*) was concealed inside the hollow handle.

The personal battle-axe of Nādīr Shāh who invaded India in 1739 A.D., bearing his name and title in Arabic in gold is displayed in the Arms Gallery of the National Museum, New Delhi³¹.

SPEAR

Spear³² had its first appearance in the Late Stone Age when leaf-shaped small stone

pieces were hafted in wooden handles³³. The longest and the earliest actual spear-head of bronze has been unearthed from SD area in Mohen-jodâro (c. 2500 B.C.). It is 15 inches long, 5 inches broad and 0.15 inch thick. Two small holes at the bottom of the blade were intended to secure it in a split wooden shaft to strengthen it. Many other spears and javelins, made of copper and bronze, of Harappan Culture, have been discovered³⁴. All these are invariably tanged and were strengthened by setting in the split end of shafts. No barbed blade has been found although there is a clear illustration of a barbed spear on a Mohen-jodâro seal³⁵. The lance-heads (similar to the spear-heads but smaller in size) are triangular, double-edged, pointed and made of copper. Their overall length is 3 to 4 inches.

Spears and javelins were specially favoured by the horsemen. On many of the Indo-Greek, Indo-Parthian and Indo-Bactrian coins (2nd-1st centuries B.C.) kings and deities are depicted in the act of thrusting the spears and javelins³⁶. Kaniška (1st century A.D.)³⁷ and many Gupta monarchs (4th-5th centuries A.D.)³⁸ are holding spears on their coins. Similar representation can be seen in several sculptures³⁹, wall paintings at Ajantâ and miniature paintings of Mughal school.

Besides the cavaliers and foot-soldiers, the attendants, guards and those employed in the court carried the spears as a part of royal paraphernalia. It could be made of reed or solid wood, and might also be held in one or both hands or was couched under the arm⁴⁰. The longest spears were of bamboo, reed or cane since these provided the longest available shafts⁴¹.

During the 14th and 15th centuries heavy spears were considered characteristics of Muslim horsemen while smaller, barbed and occasionally poisoned varieties were typical of the Hindu warriors.

CLASSIFICATION

1. *Bhālā*

It consisted of a long wooden or bamboo shaft with a long and pointed iron blade. The blade, generally leaf-shaped, was with or without a medial-rib and had a hollow shank into which the shaft was inserted. It was a thrusting weapon and was seldom hurled. It was generally used by the foot-soldiers and was operated with both hands.

2. *Nézā*

It comprised a small arrow-head-shaped blade of steel fixed to a long bamboo shaft. It was a cavalry lance⁴². It was 8 to 10 inches long, held in the middle, raised above the head at full length of arm and hurled.

3. *Barachhā*

It was a lance with the triangular, quadrangular, pentagonal, hexagonal or even octagonal blade⁴³. The shaft, completely of iron, was small with a long tapering but thin and pointed blade. Sometimes there was a grip in the centre to hold it and occasionally there was a knuckle-guard at the grip. Though fully of metal, this was slender and light and could easily be thrown.

4. *Tschehoutā*

It was a lance with blades on both ends. The blades were of different patterns.

5. *Sāk*

It had a small, leaf-shaped, pointed blade with two globular balls immediately below it. In between the two balls a flag was tied. The handle of wood had a metallic pointed cap at the lower end.

6. *Sāng*

It is also called *sāng* (from Sanskrit *shakti*). It was completely of iron. Its average length was seven feet with the head as long as two feet. The blade was round, two-sided, three-sided or even more. In the centre was the grip which was covered with velvet. It also contained a metal chain to fix it to the saddle. It was used by the horsemen. Its another variant was *saintī* which had a shorter shaft.

7. *Selārā*

It was like a *barachhā* with a grip in the centre from where it was held. It had blades on both sides. The upper blade was slightly broader and the lower blade thinner—both generally triangular.

8. *Ballam*

It was a short spear with a broad head ornamented with brass. It was used mainly by the infantry. The blade is shaped like a large leaf fixed to a steel or wooden shaft⁴⁴.

9. *Javelin*

It was a throwing spear, light and handy, and was generally preferred by the horsemen.

The cavalrymen held the spear in their right hand; while attacking the spears were held at arm's length above their heads. For a stronger grip the cavalry lances were fastened with knobs or rings at the centre of the shaft. The metallic caps, knobs, pinnacles, etc., were fitted at the lower end of the shaft to make it firm.

CONCLUSION

Many varieties of clubs, battle-axes, spears, javelins, *nézās*, etc., are preserved in the museums of India, some of them are meticulously carved or damascened in gold and silver or embellished in many other ways. The handle of one spear, displayed in the National Museum, New Delhi (Rajput, 17th century), is made completely of ivory: It was more a ceremonial specimen than the one used in actual fighting.

REFERENCES

1. H.D. Sankalia, *Stone Age Tools* (Poona, 1964), p. 88, fig. 106. Examples of such mace-heads are available from many chalcolithic sites in India. These were made of alabaster, sandstone, cherty limestone and green coloured stone.
2. A bronze mace-head has been discovered at Chanhudāro which belongs to the late Harappan age.
3. S.D. Singh, *Ancient Indian Warfare with Special Reference to Vedic Period* (Leiden, 1965), p.111.

The 'mace fight' was a highly developed art with royal exponents like Balarāma, Shalya, Duryodhana and Bhīma.

4. *Mahābhārata*, 1.62.12; *Ādi Parva*, ed. by V.S. Sukthankar and Others (Poona, 1933), p. 283, n. 12. The words commonly used to denote a club or mace are *gadā* (*Mahābhārata*, 1.26.44; 1.63.2; 1.123.8), *mūsala* (*Ibid.*, 3.22.2; 1.63.2), and *parigha* (*ibid.*, 1.17.16; 1.26.43; 1.28.12. *Rāmāyana*, *Aranya Kānda*, 26.10.11, speaks of a *parigha* with iron prickles. The *Āranyaka Parva* (3.22.2) of the *Mahābhārata* speaks of *mahāgadās* or large maces. All these three varieties were made of iron. A wooden club is also mentioned in the *Mahābhārata*, 1.167.19.
5. *Mahābhārata*, 1.1.152. Bhīma's favourite pattern of behaviour in the battle-field was to rush away from his chariot with his mace in his hand.
6. The Pāṇdavas had won the Mahābhārata War. The fate of the kingdom was again staked by Yudhiṣṭhira on a single duel with a mace between Bhīma and Duryodhana. Bhīma finally won.
7. *Mahābhārata*, 3.152.15, *mahāgadām kānchanapaṭṭanāddham*; cf., 3.255.4, where his *gadā* is described as made of *shaihya* iron and embossed with gold. Shalya, in the same epic, speaks of his mighty *gadā* decked with gold (8.23.27). In one place *gadān* is said to be hexagonal in shape and four cubits in length (*ibid.*, 5.50.28, *chatuskiskum shadaśrimamitānjasam*).
8. A.S. Beveridge (tr.), *Bābur-nāmā*, reprinted (New Delhi, 1979), p.160.
9. H. Blochman, (tr.), *Āin-i-Akbarī*, reprinted (New Delhi, 1965), *Āin* 35, No.27.
10. *Āin-i-Akbarī*, I, pl XIII, fig. 37; S.P. Verma, *Art and Material Culture in the Paintings of Akbar's Court* (New Delhi, 1978), p.88, pl. LXIII, figs, 25. It does not seem to be a regular weapon of the Mughal soldiers.
11. *Mahābhārata*, 7.154.37.
12. *Ibid.*, *ashmalagudā*.
13. *Ibid.*, 3.21.32; 3.166.15.
14. *Ibid.*, 3.268.5; 5.19.3. It was a heavy tapering club, a pair of which is used even now by wrestlers for daily exercise.
15. A.C. Das, *Rigvedic India*, second edition, (Calcutta, 1927), p. 335.
16. *Mahābhārata*, 5.19.3.
17. *Ibid.*, 3.21.32; 1.26.43.
18. *Ibid.*, 5.152.7.
19. *Arthashastra*, Book II, Chapter XVIII.
20. Gustav Oppert, *On the Weapons, Army Organisation and Political Maxims of the Ancient Hindus* (Ahmedabad, 1967), pp.21-22.
21. V.R.R. Dikshitar, *Warfare in Ancient India* (Madras, 1948), p.111.
22. F.C. Maisey, *Sanchi and Its Remains* (London, 1892), pl. XXXV, fig. 37; *Annual Report of Archaeological Survey of India 1911-12*, p.91.
23. John Allan, *A Catalogue of Indian Coins in the British Museum, London*, reprinted (New Delhi, 1975), pp.123, 167, etc.; R. Rodgers, *Catalogue of Coins in the Government Museum, Lahore* (Calcutta, 1881), p.16.
24. G.C. Stone, *op. cit.*, p.79.
25. It was the commonest form of axe and had been popular in India from a very early period. It is portrayed in the sculptures of Bharhut, Sanchi and Udaigiri and in the wall paintings of Bāgh and Ajantā.
26. Sometimes the two ends of the blade were sharply curved inside, almost touching the shaft while in some cases there was a big distance between the edge and the shaft. The socket again was round, square or rectangular; cf., G.N. Pant, *Studies in Indian Weapons and Warfare* (New Delhi, 1970), p. 157, figs. 16-17.
27. W. Egerton, *Indian and Oriental Armour*, reprinted (London, 1968), has illustrated nine diffe-

rent kinds of *tabars*, *vide*, pp. 82, 83, 108, 137, 144; figs. 17, pls. X, XI V.

28. S.P. Verma, *op.cit.*, pl. LXI, fig. 18.

29. G.N. Pant, *op.cit.*, (1970), pp. 156, 180, pl. XLIII.

30. Bābur has incidentally mentioned a *tabar-zin*, *vide*, *Bābur-nāmā*, folio 103, tr. p. 160.

31. It is 20.4 inches long and the blade is 5.4 inches horizontally and 3.6 inches vertically. It is profusely embellished with gold all over.

32. Under the heading of 'spears' come all those cavalry and infantry hafted weapons that were primarily designed for thrusting rather than lateral cutting, and which were not normally thrown as javelins.

33. H.D. Sankalia, *op.cit.*, pp. 69-74; G.N. Pant, *Studies in Indian Weapons and Warfare* (New Delhi, 1970), p. 16.

34. E.J.H. Mackay, *Further Excavations at Mohen-jo-daro* (Delhi, 1938), vol.II, pl. CXVII, No.9.

35. *Ibid.*, vol. II, pl. LXXXVIII, Seal No. 279; Mortimer Wheeler, *The Cambridge History of India*, supplementary volume, third edition (London, 1968), p.74.

36. These Indo-Greek and Indo-Bactrian monarchs preferred mounted warfare as they were excellent horsemen. Spears, lances and javelins were their favourite weapons against the short weapons like swords, daggers, etc.

37. J. Rodgers, *Catalogue of the Coins in the Government Museum, Lahore* (Calcutta, 1881), p.18; on the obverse and reverse of many coins of the successive rulers of this dynasty, the spears have been represented. Huviṣka carries spear on many of his coins.

38. On the 'Peacock Type' coin of Kumāragupta I (4th century A.D.) spear is illustrated. Five varieties can be distinguished on the Gupta coins. Mostly they have leaf-shaped blade, medial-rib, blunt point and a ring at the junction of the blade with the shaft. Some spears have pennons tied in the middle of the shaft.

39. It is invariably shown with Lord Kārttikeya who has adopted it as his attribute.

40. There are many technical names describing the various parts of the spear.

41. G.C. Stone, *A Glossary of the Construction, Decoration and Use of Arms and Armor*, reprinted (New York, 1961), pp. 572-7, figs. 738-746.

42. The price of a *nézā* in Akbar's time (1556-1605 A.D.), according to the *Āin-i-Akbarī*, was 1½ rupees to six *muhars*.

43. The price of a *barachhā* in Akbar's time ranged between ½ rupee and 2 *muhars*.

44. *Pindī ballam*, another variant, was a long spear with leaf-shaped blade and bamboo shaft. Its length was about 8 feet and blade 2 to 2½ feet.

MACE

520. 22/LIV *Gadā*—The globular head has various ribs and is fitted with a long, pointed, grooved, double-edged, sliding bayonet which could be slid inside when not in use. The rod is octagonal up to three-fourth and round at the lower end. The base is broad and is fitted with additional cap and a buckle probably for dangling it by the saddle. The entire weapon is damascened in gold in floral and creeper design.
- | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------|
| Provenance | Deccan |
| Date | Early 18th century |
| Total length | 109.0 cm |
| Handle | 65.0 cm |
| Circumference of head | 26.0 cm |
521. 28/LIII *Mace*—Similar to No.316/LIV-A but the hilt is a plain rod. The entire weapon is covered with silver plate.
- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| Provenance | Maharashtra, Deccan |
| Date | Late 17th century |
| Total length | 73.6 cm |
| Handle | 52.0 cm |
| Circumference of head | 23.0 cm |
522. 214/LVI *Piyāzī*—Club with a dome-shaped, ribbed head surmounted with a globular knob. The handle is octagonal up to three-fourth and then tubular at the lower end. The mace of steel bears gold damascened bands at places. It is hollow from within and contains some balls inside which make jingling sound when wielded.
- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| Provenance | Maharashtra, Deccan |
| Date | c 1775 A.D. |
| Total length | 63.0 cm |
| Handle | 48.8 cm |
| Circumference of head | 22.0 cm |
523. 215/LVI *Mace*—Mace shaped like a lotus bud; the hexagonal head of Damascus steel has gold damascening on its top and bottom; the handle of steel is fixed with a knob at the end.
- | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------|
| Provenance | North India |
| School | Mughal |
| Date | Late 18th century |
| Total length | 63.0 cm |
| Handle | 51.0 cm |
| Circumference of head | 28.0 cm |
524. 316/LIV-A *Mace*— solid curved octagonal rod for breaking the head. The basket hilt consists of a bud-shaped tang, saucer pommel, tubular grip and flat plates in the place of quillons. A broad knuckle-guard is attached. The weapon is damascened in gold *koftgārī* all over in floral and creeper design.

- | | | |
|----------------|--|---------------------|
| | Provenance | Maharashtra, Deccan |
| | Date | Late 17th century |
| | Total length | 67.8 cm |
| | Handle | 21.3 cm |
| | Circumference of head | 28.0 cm |
| 525. 21/LVI | <i>Gurz</i> —The head consists of six steel plates inserted into a steel rod. The handle of steel is octagonal upto the three-fourth and cylindrical at the lower side. The tops of the steel plates and the bands of the handle are damascened in geometrical and floral design in gold <i>kofigāri</i> . | |
| | Provenance | Maharashtra, Deccan |
| | School | Marāṭhā |
| | Date | 17th century |
| | Total length | 63.3 cm |
| | Handle | 50.0 cm |
| | Circumference of head | 26.0 cm |
| 526. 82/LIII | <i>Gurz</i> —Globular head is studded with several small pointed quadrangular spikes. The spike surmounting the head is also quadrangular. The hilt of steel bears traces of silver damascening. The grip is supported by globular bells. | |
| | Provenance | Maharashtra, Deccan |
| | School | Marāṭhā |
| | Date | Mid. 18th century |
| | Total length | 83.3 cm |
| | Handle | 61.0 cm |
| | Circumference of head | 40.0 cm |
| 527. 138/LIV | <i>Gurz</i> —Head consisting of eight petals of steel with a quadrangular spike. Cylindrical handle is riveted to a <i>khāndā</i> hilt having perforated design. | |
| | Provenance | Maharashtra, Deccan |
| | School | Marāṭhā |
| | Date | 18th century |
| | Total length | 84.7 cm |
| | Handle | 31.6 cm |
| | Circumference of head | 41.1 cm |
| 528. 153/LIV | <i>Gurz</i> —The mace-head consists of eight-petalled flower surmounted with a leaf-shaped spike bearing a mid-rib. The handle of steel has two knobs at the lower end. | |
| | Provenance | Maharashtra, Deccan |
| | School | Marāṭhā |
| | Date | 17th century |
| | Total length | 85.3 cm |
| | Handle | 58.0 cm |
| | Circumference of head | 41.0 cm |
| 529. 201/LIV-A | <i>Gurz</i> —Octagonal handle with a head fitted with eight plates. The basket hilt has perforated design at places. | |

Provenance	Maharashtra, Deccan
School	Marāṭhā
Date	18th century
Total length	70.6 cm
Handle	23.5 cm
Circumference of head	17.6 cm

530. 215/LIV-A *Gurz*—Mace-head consisting of seven-petalled flower with a bud-shaped knob on the top, plain steel handle; usual *khāndā* hilt with a knob instead of a spike.

Provenance	Maharashtra, Deccan
School	Marāṭhā
Date	17th century
Total length	68.7 cm
Handle	17.0 cm
Circumference of head	17.0 cm

531. 216/LVI *Gurz*—Miniature mace meant for young princes for giving them training. Eight-petalled mace is surmounted with a triangular spike handle and the hilt is similar to No.341/LIV-A.

Provenance	Maharashtra, Deccan
School	Marāṭhā
Date	Late 17th century
Total length	56.0 cm
Handle	22.9 cm
Circumference of head	17.6 cm

532. 341/LIV-A *Gurz*—Eight-petalled mace surmounted with a leaf-shaped spike. Cylindrical handle is of metal. The hilt has a curved spike, saucer pommel, cylindrical grip, broad guard, knuckle-guard and 4½ inches long langets.

Provenance	Maharashtra, Deccan
School	Marāṭhā
Date	Late 17th century
Total length	97.0 cm
Handle	31.0 cm
Circumference of head	29.0 cm

533. 355/LIV-A *Gurz*—The head consists of seven plates, each bearing four holes and surmounted with a bud-shaped knob. The cylindrical handle has curvilinear ribs. The basket hilt is that of a *firaṅgī* sword with a long, curved, tang, saucer pommel, tubular grip, knuckle-guard and long langets.

Provenance	Maharashtra, Deccan
School	Marāṭhā
Date	18th century
Total length	87.8 cm
Handle	31.0 cm
Circumference of head	26.0 cm

BATTLE-AXE

534. LVI/24 *Tabar*—The blade of Damascus steel is semi-circular with its border damascened in gold and silver. On the opposite side of the blade a stud like a bud is attached and the *tabar* is surmounted with a small pointed spike of Damascus steel. The handle is plain at the lower end and is damascened in gold and silver while the remaining part is plain.
- | | |
|------------------|--------------|
| Provenance | Deccan |
| Date | 17th century |
| Total length | 65.5 cm |
| Blade horizontal | 16.0 cm |
| Blade vertical | 18.4 cm |
535. 66/LVI *Tabar*—Slanting and curved steel blade damascened in geometrical design in gold. The wooden handle has loose silver bands at places and a silver cap below.
- | | |
|------------------|--------------------|
| Provenance | Hyderabad |
| School | Deccani |
| Date | Early 17th century |
| Total length | 53.6 cm |
| Blade horizontal | 6.8 cm |
| Blade vertical | 13.5 cm |
536. 70-71 *Tabar*—Blade is three-pronged and is shaped like a *trishul*; wooden handle has a brass cap at the lower end and is wrapped by metal wire. The top cap is missing.
- | | |
|------------------|---------------------|
| Provenance | North-eastern India |
| Date | 19th century |
| Total length | 90.0 cm |
| Blade horizontal | 17.4 cm |
| Blade vertical | 12.6 cm |
537. 70/12 *Tabar*—Battle-axe; blade is bifurcated. Wooden handle is wrapped by metal wires and has a steel cap at the lower end.
- | | |
|------------------|---------------------|
| Provenance | North-eastern India |
| Date | 19th century |
| Total length | 91.1 cm |
| Blade horizontal | 16.5 cm |
| Blade vertical | 21.3 cm |
538. 380/LIV-A *Tabar*—Battle-axe, smooth, wooden handle with a steel rest having a tang which is inserted into the handle. Massive curved blade is blunt on both sides and is bifurcated and serrated. The blade is moulded into a brass mythical creature which also forms the socket for the handle.
- | | |
|------------------|--------------------|
| Provenance | Tanjore, Tamilnadu |
| Date | 19th century |
| Total length | 195.0 cm |
| Blade horizontal | 17.3 cm |

- | | | |
|--|----------------|---------|
| | Blade vertical | 53.5 cm |
|--|----------------|---------|
539. LVI/144 *Tabar*—The blade of Damascus steel has its borders decorated in floral design in gold with its edges engraved with birds and flowers on three sides. The steel handle is damascened in gold floral and creeper design on the upper and lower part while the middle part is engraved with floral design.
- | | |
|------------------|-------------------|
| Provenance | Delhi |
| Date | Mid. 17th century |
| Total length | 60.2 cm |
| Blade horizontal | 10.2 cm |
| Blade vertical | 15.2 cm |
540. LVI/171 *Tabar*—The blade of Damascus steel is damascened in gold in floral and creeper design on the borders. It bears two inscriptions in gold; couplets in Persian meaning “as a peacock is engrossed in his own feathers similarly this *tabar* penetrates into the elephants”. The handle is covered with gold-plated copper and is engraved all over with floral and creeper designs.
- | | |
|------------------|--------------|
| Provenance | Deccan |
| Date | 17th century |
| Total length | 58.7 cm |
| Blade horizontal | 9.4 cm |
| Blade vertical | 18.0 cm |
541. LVI/173 *Tabar*—Same as LVI/171; both (Nos. LVI/171 and LVI/173) form a pair. The only difference is that No.173 has an additional inscription *Yā Allāh, Yā fateh*. The other two inscriptions are same. Both record the name *tabar*.
- | | |
|------------------|--------------|
| Provenance | Deccan |
| Date | 17th century |
| Total length | 58.8 cm |
| Blade horizontal | 8.7 cm |
| Blade vertical | 13.7 cm |
542. LVI/172 *Tabar*—The blade of Damascus steel is plain on one side and is inscribed on the other. The inscription records: *Hast Sultān-i-Salātīn-i-Jahān Shāh Shahābuddīn Sāhib-i-Kirān-i-Sānī* in Naskh Script in Persian language. On one side of the blade it records *Najrum-min Allāh-i-wa fathun karīb* and on the other *Bismillāh-i-Rehmān-i-Rahīm* in Naskh script in Arabic language. The inscription on the blade is engraved in high relief and is gold-plated which is obliterated at places. Two animals, one lion and the other jackal, are damascened in gold, one on each side. One stud, like a bird, is on the opposite side.
- | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Provenance | Delhi |
| Date | Shāh Jahān period (1627-1658 A.D.) |
| Total length | 52.7 cm |
| Blade horizont ² | 9.4 cm |

- Blade vertical 18.0 cm
543. 213/LVI *Tabar*—Axe, the blade is like inverted 'L'. The wooden handle is variously curved into cylindrical, square and octagonal design and is fitted with *muhñāl* and *tehnāl*, both damascened in gold.
- Provenance Hyderabad
 Date Early 19th century
 Total length 59.4 cm
 Blade horizontal 12.0 cm
 Blade vertical 9.0 cm
544. 215/LIV *Tabar*—Blade of Damascus steel inscribed in high relief on both the sides. On one side it is plated with gold and bears the similar inscription which is found on No.239/LIV. On the other side the inscription in high relief without gold-plating contains verses from the holy *Qurān*. The octagonal handle and its grip supported by two knobs are of steel and are damascened all over in floral and creeper design in gold.
- Provenance Delhi
 Date Shāh Jahān period (1627-1658 A.D.)
 Total length 49.2 cm
 Blade horizontal 9.6 cm
 Blade vertical 13.1 cm
545. 239/LIV *Tabar*—The blade is inscribed in high relief all over the surface on one side. The inscription reads *Bismillāh-i-Rehmān-i-Rahīm Bahest Sul-tān-i-Salātīn-i-Jahān Shāh-i-Shahan Nāje Sāhib Kirān 871 A.H.* The side of the blade is engraved with hunting scenes in high relief in gold. The octagonal handle of steel with its grip, protected by two knobs, is damascened all over in floral and creeper design in gold.
- Provenance Delhi
 Date Shāh Jahān period (1627-1658 A.D.)
 Total length 51.8 cm
 Blade horizontal 10.8 cm
 Blade vertical 14.3 cm
546. 336/LIV *Tabar*—Battle-axe with a broad semi-circular blade engraved with floral and creeper design. The steel blade, on the opposite direction, is shaped like a mythical creature. Plain cylindrical handle of steel has a knob at the bottom.
- Provenance Deccan
 Date Early 19th century
 Total length 68.2 cm
 Blade horizontal 27.0 cm
 Blade vertical 21.4 cm
547. 338/LIV *Tabar* — Battle-axe, semi-circular plain blade of steel; a small triangular blade fitted on the opposite direction. Handle plain.

Provenance	Deccan
Date	Early 19th century
Total length	63.7 cm
Blade horizontal	15.2 cm
Blade vertical	25.2 cm

548. 134/LIV *Tabar*—The semi-circular blade, profusely inscribed all over on both the sides, has a socket which is engraved with *shikārgāh* (hunting) scenes. The octagonal handle of plain solid steel is surmounted with a double-edged small knife with prominent mid-rib on both sides.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	c 1800 A.D.
Total length	51.8 cm
Blade horizontal	10.8 cm
Blade vertical	14.3 cm

549. 299/LIV *Nīmchā tabar-jaghnoī*. —Combination of *tabar* and *jaghnoī*. Long handle fitted with a crescent-shaped blade on one side and a leaf-shaped blade on the other. Used for practice only.

Provenance	Rajasthan
School	Rājput
Date	Early 19th century
Total length	43.8 cm
Blade horizontal	4.3 cm
Blade vertical	10.3 cm

550. 14/LIII *Chugā*—Also called *jaghnoī*. Slightly curved, leaf-shaped, double-edged blade of Damascus steel has a medial-rib. Steel handle is ornamented with gold damascening all over along with the figure of lion on one side and deer on the other. The hilt has two buckles with which is tied an iron chain for hanging this weapon round the back. Wooden sheath is covered with green velvet and has a perforated *muhnāl*. The steel *tehnāl* (chape), now detached, has been tied with a string separately.

Provenance	Rajasthan
School	Rājput
Date	17th century
Total length	50.5 cm
Blade horizontal	5.1 cm
Blade vertical	18.5 cm

551. 23/LVI *Chugā*—Also called *Jaghnoī*; triangular blade of Damascus steel with a thickened point and a medial-rib. The quillons are shaped like two lions. On the opposite side of the blade is an inscription in perforation recording the name of Allāh in Arabic (Naskh script). On the top is a double-edged spike fitted on a perforated steel which records the name of Muhammad in Arabic. Octagonal handle of steel and the circular grip within two

globular steel balls is profusely damascened in gold all over. A double-edged, straight, plain *gupti* is fitted inside it.

Provenance	Rajasthan
School	Rājput
Date	c 1675 A.D.
Total length	69.7 cm
Blade horizontal	8.1 cm
Blade vertical	29.5 cm

552. 370/LIV-A *Spear*—Plain wooden handle, leaf-shaped triangular blade with a socket.

Provenance	Deccan
Date	19th century
Total length	216.7 cm
Handle	185.1 cm
Blade	31.6 cm

553. 377/LIV-A *Spear*—Smooth wooden shaft with a socketed globular spike serving as its rest. Long triangular blade with many grooves and ridges has its small socket damascened in gold with floral and creeper design. Modern sheath has original mounting damascened in the style of the blade.

Provenance	Deccan
Date	18th century
Total length	189.7 cm
Handle	152.5 cm
Blade	37.2 cm

554. 378/LIV-A *Tabar*—Long bamboo shaft with a steel cap and a knob at the lower bottom; quadrangular blade is serrated in the form of leaves and has a long socket.

Provenance	Deccan
Date	19th century
Total length	188.7 cm
Handle	164.0 cm
Blade	24.7 cm

555. 382/LIV-A *Spear*—Small bamboo shaft. The blade is two-pronged and twisted with a socket having globular end. The central part of the blade bears inscription which reads *Mohammad Munawwar Khān Zanozi Mohammad Ali Madad Hazarat Shāh* on both sides.

Provenance	Deccan
Date	19th century
Total length	170.0 cm
Handle	139.0 cm
Blade	31.4 cm

556. 85/LIV-A *Lance*—The upper part of a lance. The Damascus blade is shaped like a leaf and has a medial-rib. The octagonal socket is decorated with floral design in gold damascening.

Provenance	Rajasthan
School	Rajput
Date	Late 17th century
Total length	43.0 cm
Handle	16.0 cm
Blade	27.0 cm

557. 384/LIV-A *Lance*—Wooden shaft covered with small ivory chips forming geometrical design all over. A socketed spike with eight-petalled flower is attached at the lower end. Small quadrangular blade has an ornamented socket. The upper and lower sockets are damascened in floral and creeper design in gold.

Provenance	Rajasthan
School	Rajput
Date	Late 18th century
Total length	232.5 cm
Handle	218.8 cm
Blade	13.7 cm

558. 53/LII *Barachhā*—The steel hilt is beautifully damascened in gold in floral and creeper design at five places. Long leaf-shaped blade of fine Damascus steel has a medial-rib on both sides. The damaged wooden sheath, covered with faded green velvet, has a metallic chape.

Provenance	Jaipur
School	Rajput
Date	Early 18th century
Total length	68.9 cm
Handle	62.8 cm
Blade	26.1 cm

559. 123/LVI *Barachhā*—Completely of steel with grip in the middle, shaft decorated with curvilinear design all over. Long pointed triangular blade.

Provenance	Rajasthan
School	Rajput
Date	Late 18th century
Total length	242.8 cm
Handle	171.3 cm
Blade	71.5 cm

560. 136/LIV *Barachhā*—Small leaf-shaped blade with a thickened point and mid-rib on both sides. The entire handle of steel is engraved (except the grip) with floral and creeper design in relief. The grip, in the centre, is plain and has a semi-circular knuckle-guard of steel engraved in the style of the handle.

Provenance	Rajasthan
School	Rajput
Date	Early 18th century

Total length	84.8 cm
Handle	69.8 cm
Blade	15.0 cm

561. 383/LIV-A *Barachhā*—Cavalry lance completely of steel, long pointed quadrangular blade; grip is in the middle. The entire weapon is divided into panels and is engraved with various floral, creeper and geometrical designs.

Provenance	Rajasthan
School	Rajput
Date	Late 18th century
Total length	207.4 cm
Handle	143.8 cm
Blade	63.6 cm

562. 53/LIII *Sāng*—Cavalry lance, leaf-shaped blade of Damascus steel with a medial-rib and a thickened end. The blade is a part of the handle which is of same metal and is damascened in gold at intervals. Wooden sheath is covered with faded green velvet and has a steel cap which shows traces of gold damascening.

Provenance	Rajasthan
School	Rajput
Date	17th century
Total length	88.9 cm
Handle	62.8 cm
Blade	26.1 cm

563. LIV/217 *Sāng*—Long blade, single-edged and curved inside. The handle consists of two long pieces of ivory riveted to the steel plate and engraved all over with floral and creeper design. Some traces of gold damascening are found. It was mainly a sacrificial weapon. The wooden sheath, covered with red faded velvet, has an opening on one side to facilitate inserting of the blade.

Provenance	Rajasthan
School	Rajput
Date	Late 18th century
Total length	56.7 cm
Handle	31.4 cm
Blade	25.3 cm.

CHAPTER V

OTHER WEAPONS

INTRODUCTION

Innumerable varieties of arms and armour were produced and used in India since time immemorial. It is well nigh impossible to describe all of them. Many are mythical weapons, divine in nature, said to have been wielded only by the gods and goddesses, which cannot easily be corroborated with actual specimens. These are the *divyāstras*, *Brahmāstras*, *Vāyavyāstras*, producing rain, creating thunders and doing many incredible deeds. These are supernatural and have been completely omitted. Then there are the weapons used in the rituals and the ceremonies which include *Rām dāos* and *khadgas*. The ones used in dance, in games, in tournaments, in mock fights, in dramas, etc., are a class within themselves. These include the *Nāgā* dancing shield, the jingling swords from Kerala, the blunt spears used in *nézābāzī*, the pointless swords employed in *shamshīrbāzī* and so on and so forth.

The weapons that adorned the king, the princesses and the important nobles were forged out of best quality of Damascus steel with their hilts made of ivory, jade, agate, gold, silver and many other precious or semi-precious materials. These were damascened, engraved, chiselled, inscribed or at times jewelled. Such weapons are the works of fine art, the items of jewellery, the parts of living history and the embodiments of beauty in bravery. Some of these weapons are:

I. *Elephant-goad*

Strictly speaking it was not a weapon of war but has very closely been associated with elephant corps as a useful aid to goad the elephant. It was called *āṅkusha* (literally "to control"). It consists of a short shaft with a leaf-shaped pointed blade on one side and a curved prong on the other, both of metal. In the *Mahābhārata* the driver (*mahāut*) has been termed *hastisādinah*.¹ Megasthenese records that during his time (3rd century B.C.) three fighting men rode on an elephant. "There is also a fourth man, who carries in his hand the goad wherewith he guides the animal, much in the same way as the pilot and captain of a ship directs its course with the helm".²

In the sculptures of Bharhut and Sānchi³ we find different types of goads, the shorter portion of which are abruptly curved. There are beautiful representations of the elephant goads in the frescoes of Ajantā⁴. The *Mānasollāsa*⁵ also refers to the driver carrying elephant goad. The *Agni Purāna*⁶ suggests that every war-elephant should carry two hook-bearers together with two archers and two swordsmen. There the driver is called *āṅkushadhara*⁷ because he always carried an *āṅkusha* or hook. *Māgha*⁸ describes that the *āṅkusha* had peacock feathers attached to it. According to *Shukrāchārya*⁹ the hook had one point for driving and another for drawing back.

*Kautilya*¹⁰ describes *āṅkusha* and *toltra* as instruments to direct the elephant. These are mentioned by *Bāṇa*¹¹ and *Hieun Tsiang*¹² also.

These have been depicted on the coins as well. On the reverse of the coin of Gomitra II (c.200 B.C.) of Mathura, three elephant-goats have been portrayed¹³. Similar illustrations have been found on the coins of Brahmamitra, Sūryamitra, Vishnumitra, Puruṣhadatta, Balabhūti and Rāmadatta of the same dynasty¹⁴. It has also been found on the elephant-rider type coin of Kumārgupta I. The king himself is driving the elephant with the goad in his right hand¹⁵. The goad resembles the modern one.

The elephant-goad has not undergone any significant change during these hundreds of years. In the later varieties it has been profusely decorated. Ivory was also used for its shaft.

II. *Zafar Takiā*

It was a pillow sword, kept under the pillow of the warrior, ready for use in case of emergency. The hilt has a crutch-shaped pommel while the quillons generally terminate in beak-like ends. It was carried by Indian princes when seated on a *masnad* (cushion) giving audience. Some of these weapons are works of art; the hilt and sheath being of gold and jade set with jewels¹⁶.

III. *Panjā*

It consisted of a short weapon with five holes through which the fingers and the thumb could pass. It was held in the fist. The edges, resting on the outer side of the fingers, were pointed. It was used in close combat¹⁷.

IV. *Faqīr's Crutch*

Indian religious mendicants (*faqīrs*) are not allowed by their regulations to carry weapons. They evade this prohibition by having short crutches, to place under their arms, when sitting¹⁸. Some of them contain concealed stiletos¹⁹.

V. *Pushtakhār*

It was a palm-shaped accoutrement used by the soldiers for scratching their backs and setting the inner garment right when fully armed with heavy tunic. It was almost like a hand and was of the same length. It has sometimes been called *panjā* owing to its shape but technically *panjā* (described above) was an altogether different weapon. This was one piece of iron, damascened or plated with gold or silver²⁰.

VI. *Mārū*

It was a typical Marāṭhā parrying and thrusting weapon consisting of a pair of horns fastened together with their points in opposite direction. The horns were usually of a buck and were tipped with pointed steel caps at each end. In the centre was fitted a small circular shield of leather or metal, 9 inches in diameter. Occasionally it was fitted with an additional blade. It was sometimes used by the swordsman for guarding and then it was held in the left hand.

VII. *Bānk*

It is a typical Marāṭhā dagger with sickle-shaped curved blade and a straight handle²¹. Its average length was five inches from the hilt to the point and nine inches around the

curve²². The hilt of steel or dark wood, continued like the curve of the blade, and together formed an exact semi-circular outline. The name *bānk* evidently comes from its curved (*bānk*)²³ shape.

VIII. *Baghanakha*²⁴

The weapon attained much importance in the Marāṭhā armoury ever since Afzal Khān was killed by Shivāji with it²⁵. In this weapon five steel curved plates (called 'claws' since they resemble the 'tiger claws') were attached to a pointed plate of steel, lining the palm of the hand to which the weapon was fastened by rings at the wrist and fingers²⁶. Sometimes five curved scythe-like blades are attached to an iron sheet flanked by two finger holes and a curved double-edged blade projecting to the side of the finger-hole²⁷.

IX. *Khukari*

It is the weapon of the Gurkhās of Nepal and Northern India and the national weapon of Nepal²⁸. It has a very heavy, curved, single-edged blade, sharp on the concave side. The hilt is usually straight and mostly without a guard. Occasionally it has a disc pommel. The weight of the blade is well towards the point and a tremendous blow can be struck with it with little muscular exertion. It is carried by the Gurkhās at all times and is used as a hunting knife as well as a weapon of war²⁹. Traditionally no warrior will return a *khukari* to its sheath before it has drawn blood. The blade, generally measuring 13 to 15 inches, is plain and devoid of watered steel³⁰. The *khukari* is carried in a belted-sheath of leather with two small knives and a leather pouch. The small knives are used as sharpeners and in the pouch are kept flint and steel for making fire while in the forest. The quality and the richness of the sheath and its trappings, often very fine, indicate the wealth of the owner³¹. The hilts are made of metal, wood, horn and ivory and are mostly ornate having around them bands of carved foliate ornament, sometimes in very deep relief and undercut. The root of the edge of a *khukari*-blade contains a semi-circular nick, about three-quarters of an inch deep, generally with a tooth at the bottom which the Gurkhās say represent the female generative organ, intended presumably to render the blade effective.

X. *Walking Sticks*

These sticks were profusely decorated all over and concealed one or more weapons. In the National Museum, New Delhi, is preserved a walking stick consisting of four weapons *viz.*, a pistol, a knife, a long pointed blade, and a powder-cap³². The stick of Bahādur Shāh II dated 1257 A.H. (1841 A.D.) is engraved with the Persian inscription which reads, "He who has the stick has the buffalo" meaning "might is right". Aurangzēb used to carry a stick made of jasper³³

XI. *Budgā*

It was a cleaver used by cooks and butchers and could have been used as a weapon in emergency. Shāh Jahān once bestowed on Abdullā a *budgā* of enamelled gold, a robe of honour and five thousand rupees.

XII. *Tala*

It was a variant of club consisting of a curved iron rod at the upper end and fitted with

a leaf-shaped head. It was intended for striking on the head. Usually it bore decoration comprising floral designs. *Gaṭakā* (stick of metal with a globular head) and *soṭā* (wooden stick fitted with brass nails all over) were different kinds of sticks used as clubs.

XIII. *Chakra*

Chakra (quoit) was the universal weapon of the Sikhs, most favoured by the Nihāṅgs and Akālīs who carried it as a part of their dress and accoutrement. It consisted of large thin circle of steel, six to eight inches in diameter, the outer edge being very sharp. It was thrown by rotating by means of a finger and could be effective at a great distance, about sixty yards³⁴. Two varieties are generally noticed; *chakkar* (or *chakra*) *sādā* which was plain having sharp and smooth edges and *chakkar kaṭāvudār* comprising serrated edge. The whirling of this weapon required a great skill and accuracy. The Sikh warriors had mastered its techniques and very successfully used it in some of their battles.

CONCLUSION

There are regional variations in the style of production and more than that in the technique of ornamentation which help us in determining the place and date of origin of a weapon. Technological changes have been very slow in India and some of the weapons have come down to us exactly in the same form as they were used centuries ago. Thus the fundamental shape of an elephant-goad, a *mārū*, a *pushtakhār*, still remains the same. Many of the weapons bear dents and the shields reveal cuts which are the evidences to prove that these had undergone the fury of the war and tested it themselves before they were preserved in the arsenals and museums for posterity.

REFERENCES

1. In the *Dronaparva*, 148.46, the hook is described as gilded. In the *Bhīshmaparva*, 20.7, Duryōdhana entered the field riding on an elephant. See also *Virāṭaparva*, 65.6; *Dronaparva*, 26.19 ff and *Bhīshmaparva*, 95.33 ff. Another word *toltra* mentioned in the *Mahābhārata* appears to be the same instrument.
2. Aelian, *History of Animals*, XIII.10.
3. Maisay, *Sanchi and Its Remains*, pl. VI, fig I; pls. XVI, XX, XXVII; A. Cunningham, pls. XI, XII and XXXIV.
4. Lady Herringham, *Ajanta Frescoes*, pl. XLII.
5. *Mānasollāsa*, p. 135, *shloka*, 1182.
6. *Agni Purāṇa*, 252.31.
7. *Ibid.*
8. Māgha, *Shishupālavadhā*, XVIII, 9.24.39.
9. Shukrāchārya, *Nītisāra*, ch. IV, sec. VII, 11.339.40.
10. Kauṭilya, *Arthashāstra*, Book II, chapter 32.
11. *Harṣacharita*, translated by Cowell and Thomas, pp 202-3.
12. Walters, I, 171.
13. John Allan, *A Catalogue of the Indian Coins in the British Museum* (1936), p. 170.
14. *Ibid.*, pp.173-4.
15. *B.H.C.*, p. XXXI, 1-3, *Brihatsamhitā*, 72.4 and Vidya Prakash, *op.cit.*, p.291.
16. G.N. Pant, *Indian Arms and Armour*, vol. II (New Delhi, 1980), p.85.
17. Its another variant was *mauṣṭhika* (fist-dagger) which was one span long and was wielded in various ways *cf.*, *Nītiprakāśhikā*, verses 40-44.

18. It is also called 'bairāgi crutch'. It was mostly a sword or a dagger either shaped like a walking stick (sword cane) or had a crescent-shaped pommel for keeping the weapon under the arm-pit when seated. It invariably concealed a pointed weapon inside the handle.
19. G.C. Stone, *op. cit.*, p.224, fig. 274.
20. In the National Museum, New Delhi, is a *pushtakhār* (17th century, Hyderabad) which is decorated all over with Bidrī technique. Inscribed back-scratchers are also available.
21. W. Egerton, *An Illustrated Handbook of Indian Arms*, reprinted (London, 1945), p.124, Note to No. 581; p.115, No.480.
22. G.C. Stone, *A Glossary of Construction, Decoration and Use of Arms and Armor*, reprinted (New York, 1961), p.93, fig. 120.
23. G.N. Pant, *Indian Arms and Armour*, vol. II (New Delhi, 1980), p.151, figs. 384-385.
24. *Baghanakha* is a typical Indian weapon, found nowhere else, which comprises two to five curved blades fixed to a cross-bar or a glove. It was carried concealed in the palm of the hand. On the opposite side of the cross-bar were two rings, one for the thumb and the other for the smallest finger.
25. It was never considered an important weapon till Shivājī, the founder of the Marāṭhā empire, used one when he killed Afzal Khān, the General of the army of Bijāpur. The original *baghanakha* of Shivājī is not traceable, however, a number of *baghanakhas* are available in the museums of this country.
26. Sometimes the *baghanakha* was made of two plates hinged together instead of a cross-bar and a straight pointed rod was projected from the side of the thumb-ring.
27. The *baghanakha* was occasionally combined with *bichhawā* (a curved, small dagger) when the claws were fastened to the handle of the dagger. It was then called *baghanakha-bichhawā*.
28. The Gurkhās with *khukarīs* in hand made a determined resistance to British arms in many a war and are even now a warlike race and form some of the best of Indian Infantry.
29. G.N. Pant, *op. cit.*, vol. II, pp. 51-54, figs. 74-81.
30. Sometimes the figure of a Hindu deity is inlaid in gold on the blade.
31. P.S. Rawson, *The Indian Sword* (Copenhagen, 1967), p.107.
32. Arms Collection, National Museum, New Delhi.
33. G.N. Pant, *Studies in Indian Weapons and Warfare* (New Delhi, 1970), p. 164.
34. F.S. Bajwa, *Military System of the Sikhs 1799-1849* (Patna, 1964), p.234.

ELEPHANT-GOAD

564. 98/LVI *Elephant-goad*—The straight blade and the curved blade have perforated design. The handle of steel is covered with pieces of ivory showing curvilinear design.
- | | |
|----------------|--------------|
| Provenance | Karnataka |
| Date | 18th century |
| Total length | 61.5 cm |
| Handle | 45.2 cm |
| Straight blade | 16.3 cm |
565. 102/LVI *Elephant-goad*—The straight spike has a thickened point, the curved blade is similarly thickened. The entire handle is made of ivory and at places is decorated with red and black dot designs.
- | | |
|----------------|-------------------|
| Provenance | North India |
| Date | Late 18th century |
| Total length | 39.7 cm |
| Handle | 25.3 cm |
| Straight blade | 14.4 cm |
566. 106/LVI *Elephant-goad (Ankusha)*—one spike is leaf-shaped and the other is curved; handle is perforated and is divided into sections, each having a bell which makes jingling sound; the lower part is globular. The whole goad is made of metal and is damascened in floral design in gold.
- | | |
|----------------|--------------|
| Provenance | North India |
| Date | 18th century |
| Total length | 56.8 cm |
| Handle | 36.3 cm |
| Straight blade | 20.5 cm |
567. 107/LVI *Elephant-goad*—It consists of a long handle with a pointed end and a curved spike, terminating into the head of a lion. One side of the spike is inscribed with *Assam shuda ghulam-e-Alī Faujdār Khān* (Faujdār Khān became the whole-hearted slave of Alī). The whole *ankusha* is damascened in silver and gold in floral, creeper and geometrical design.
- | | |
|----------------|--------------------|
| Provenance | North India |
| Date | Early 18th century |
| Total length | 58.2 cm |
| Handle | 39.7 cm |
| Straight blade | 18.5 cm |

ZAFAR-TAKIYĀ

568. 301/LIV-A *Zafar-takiyā*—In the shape of a *guptī* consisting of three pieces. The lowermost piece is a small knife of damascened steel and the uppermost is a longer knife. The middle hollow steel handle conceals both these knives. The handle is twisted like a twig and terminates into a bud.
- | | |
|------------|--------|
| Provenance | Deccan |
|------------|--------|

Date	Early 19th century
Total length	60.5 cm
Blade	23.1 cm
Handle	49.0 cm

569. 302/LIV-A *Zafar-takiyā*—Plain steel handle with a steel knob. The handle is recurved, serving the purpose of the arm-rest. The sides of the handle are engraved with floral design.

Provenance	Deccan
Date	18th century
Total length	60.8 cm
Blade	30.1 cm
Handle	41.0 cm

570. 303/LIV-A *Zafar-takiyā*—Crutch-shaped hilt surmounted with two parrots and is fitted with a double-edged straight *guptī*. Screwed with the handle. Hollow handle of steel is engraved all over in relief with floral, creeper and geometrical design.

Provenance	South India
Date	18th century
Total length	65.2 cm
Blade	43.4 cm
Handle	11.0 cm

571. 306/LIV-A *Zafar-takiyā*—One piece of steel; an inscription in Urdu reads *Muhammad Ahmad urf Shāhji Bābā Majoob Sālik*. The whole weapon is so curiously shaped that it forms the name of Alī.

Provenance	Hyderabad
Date	Late 19th century
Total length	68.6 cm (in one piece)

572. 363/XLIX *Zafar-takiyā*—Blade shaped like *sosun-pattā*; single-edged with a long false edge. Small grooves are seen on both sides of the blade. On the back edge is a long inscription damascened in gold which reads: *Zafar-takiyā ke ba fathe hai batast kabje Aurangzēbast* "This *zafar-takiyā* is the sign of victory and terror and an object of adornment in the hand of Aurangzēb." Usual *talwār* hilt with its knuckle-guard has a curved hilt like that of a *faqīr's* crutch. Sheath modern.

Provenance	Deccan
Date	c 1700 A.D. (Aurangzēb's period)
Total length	50.8 cm
Blade	16.1 cm

FAQIR'S CRUTCH

573. 203/LIV• *Faqīr's Crutch*—*Faqīr's* crutch with a *guptī* inside; the blade is double-edged and pointed. The cylindrical handle of steel is engraved all over with

floral, geometrical and creeper design. The sides of the arm-rest are shaped like parrots.

Provenance	Deccan
Date	Early 18th century
Total length	54.8 cm
Blade	44.3 cm
Handle	10.5 cm

574. 300/LIV-A *Faqīr's Crutch*—*Faqīr's* crutch consisting of a long rod; the upper side is curved like a crescent. It was kept under the arm.

Provenance	Hyderabad
Date	18th century
Total length	57.9 cm (one piece)
Blade	44.0 cm
Handle	10.0 cm

575. 366/LIV-A *Faqīr's Crutch*—*Faqīr's* crutch-long, narrow, double-edged blade of flexible steel. It has a small groove on both sides which bears some invisible inscription in English. The hilt, completely of ivory, is like a crescent terminating on one side into a parrot. The other side is missing. The hilt served as an arm-rest. The circular wooden sheath is covered with red velvet.

Provenance	Deccan, (blade European)
Date	Early 19th century
Total length	115.0 cm
Blade	100.0 cm
Handle	17.5 cm

PUSHTAKHĀR

576. 18/LIII *Pushtakhār*—Instrument used as back-scratcher. Octagonal handle of steel is damascened all over with gold. It is shaped like sun-flower with two long leaves supporting it. The flower and the leaves are gold-plated.

Provenance	Deccan
Date	18th century
Total length	63.4 cm
Handle	55.0 cm

577. 298/LIV-A *Pushtakhār*—Back-scratcher, handle of wood fitted with a steel cap. The upper part, shaped in the form of semi-closed palm, is of solid ivory.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	18th century
Total length	50.0 cm
Handle	40.0 cm

578. 308/LIV-A *Pushtakhār*—Back-scratcher moulded into one piece of steel in the form of human hand. The lower part has a bud-shaped knob and the upper side looks like an open palm.

Provenance	Deccan
Date	18th century
Total length	55.4 cm
Handle	44.0 cm

MĀRŪ

579. 74/LIV-A *Mārū*—Central steel grip fitted with two pieces of ivory and its borders damascened in gold in floral design. Two double-edged recurved *jambiā* type blade fitted, one on each side.
- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| Provenance. | Deccan |
| Date | 18th century |
| Total length | 52.1 cm |
580. 98/LIV-A *Mārū*—Small central steel grip fitted with two recurved serrated steel blades, one on each side. The blades are bifurcated at the end.
- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| Provenance | Deccan |
| Date | 18th century |
| Total length | 62.0 cm |
581. 263/LIV-A *Mārū*—A small, semi-circular, convex steel shield serves as a knuckle-guard which is damascened all over in gold bearing inscriptions in Naskh script in Arabic recording the five names of Allāh. It is surmounted with a triangular-shaped double-edged spike. It is supported on a rod serving as the grip; two recurved blades, one on each side, are projecting out of it.
- | | |
|-------------------------|--------------|
| Provenance | Deccan |
| Date | 17th century |
| Total length | 48.8 cm |
| Circumference of shield | 26.0 cm |
582. 264/LVI-A *Mārū*—Same as No.263/LIV-A. However, the five names of Allāh inscribed here are different.
- | | |
|-------------------------|--------------|
| Provenance | Deccan |
| Date | 17th century |
| Total length | 48.2 cm |
| Circumference of shield | 26.0 cm |
583. 311/LIV-A *Mārū*—Two straight steel rods joined with two long screw overlapping one another. One of the rods has a globular steel ball fitted to it, the other similar ball is missing. A crescent-shaped steel hilt, engraved with floral design, is fitted on the top.
- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| Provenance | Deccan |
| Date | 18th century |
| Total length | 56.5 cm |
584. 312/LIV-A *Mārū*—Two horns of a black buck are fitted together, each in the reverse direction. Each horn has a pointed copper cap on the front and a brass cap on the back. Badly damaged.

Provenance	Maharashtra
Date	Early 17th century
Total length	29.0 cm

BĀNK

585. 140/LIV-A *Bānk*—Curved blade like that of a sickle with edge on concave side; steel hilt is fitted with two pieces of horn and has four tiny spikes like the claws of a tiger. The wooden sheath is covered with black leather and has a slit to facilitate insertion of the weapon.

Provenance	Deccan
Date	17th century
Total length	31.0 cm
Handle	13.3 cm
Blade	17.7 cm

586. 141/LIV-A *Bānk*—Same as No.140/LIV-A, except the hilt which is fitted with walrus ivory.

Provenance	Deccan
Date	17th century
Total length	30.1 cm
Handle	11.0 cm
Blade	19.1 cm

BAGHANAKH

587. 379/LIV *Baghanakh*—It is fitted with a recurved steel blade and has two rings and four curved steel claws.

Provenance	Maharashtra
Date	Late 17th century
Total length	24.4 cm
Width	3.0 cm

KHUKARI

588. 63/LV *Khukari*—Plain blade. Hilt of octagonal ivory is capped with brass at the lower end and has a small buckle at the top. Damaged wooden sheath is covered with faded red velvet and has a slit.

Provenance	Uttar Pradesh
School	Gurkhā
Date	Early 19th century
Total length	46.9 cm
Blade	34.1 cm
Hilt	12.8 cm

589. 64/LV *Khukari*—Blade with one ridge on the upper side. Hilt of horn. Sheath modern.

Provenance	Uttar Pradesh
------------	---------------

- | | | |
|------------|--|--------------------|
| | School | Gurkhā |
| | Date | Early 19th century |
| | Total length | 39.0 cm |
| | Blade | 28.6 cm |
| | Hilt | 10.4 cm |
| 590. 65/LV | <i>Khukari</i> —Same as No.66/LV. | |
| | Provenance | Nepal |
| | School | Gurkhā |
| | Date | Late 19th century |
| | Total length | 43.3 cm |
| | Blade | 31.6 cm |
| | Hilt | 11.7 cm |
| 591. 66/LV | <i>Khukari</i> —Flamboyant blade with one groove. Wooden hilt has a steel cap. A nick and a tooth are seen on the blade. | |
| | Provenance | Nepal |
| | School | Gurkhā |
| | Date | Late 19th century |
| | Total length | 43.5 cm |
| | Blade | 31.8 cm |
| | Hilt | 11.7 cm |
| 592. 69/LV | <i>Khukari</i> —Slightly recurved blade with one ridge on the upper side, handle of bone. Damaged wooden sheath is covered with brown leather. | |
| | Provenance | Uttar Pradesh |
| | School | Gurkhā |
| | Date | 19th century |
| | Total length | 44.5 cm |
| | Blade | 32.5 cm |
| | Hilt | 12.0 cm |
| 593. 70/LV | <i>Khukari</i> —Fitted with a <i>Delhishahī</i> hilt having saucer pommel, ridged oval grip, small guard with two short quillons and knuckle-guard. Sheath modern. | |
| | Provenance | North India |
| | School | Gurkhā |
| | Date | Early 19th century |
| | Total length | 56.0 cm |
| | Blade | 38.3 cm |
| | Hilt | 17.7 cm |
| 594. 71/LV | <i>Khukari</i> —The upper side of the blade is engraved with floral and creeper design. The steel hilt is fitted with horn. | |
| | Provenance | Nepal |
| | School | Gurkhā |
| | Date | Late 19th century |

- | | | |
|------------|---|------------------------------------|
| | Total length | 42.7 cm |
| | Blade | 32.0 cm |
| | Hilt | 10.7 cm |
| 595. 75/LV | <i>Khukari</i> —Plain blade, back edge slightly raised in the middle. Wooden hilt has a steel cap. Sheath modern. | |
| | Provenance | Uttar Pradesh |
| | School | Gurkhā |
| | Date | Early 19th century |
| | Total length | 43.1 cm |
| | Blade | 31.6 cm |
| | Hilt | 11.5 cm |
| 596. 76/LV | <i>Khukari</i> —Probably used as a bayonet, single-edged on the concave side with a false edge. Hilt of solid horn. | |
| | Provenance | European weapon produced in Deccan |
| | School | British |
| | Date | 19th century |
| | Total length | 41.7 cm |
| | Blade | 28.5 cm |
| | Hilt | 13.2 cm |

MISCELLANEOUS

- | | | |
|----------------|--|--|
| 597. 304/LIV-A | <i>Steel Rod</i> —Steel rod fitted with two globular steel knobs at the end. A triangular solid knob is attached to the rod with the help of a chain. | |
| | Provenance | Deccan |
| | Date | Late 19th century |
| | length | 45.5 cm |
| 598. 316/LIV-A | <i>Rod</i> —A curved rod with a thickened end. The hilt is of <i>khāndā</i> type. The entire weapon is damascened in floral design in gold. | |
| | Provenance | Deccan |
| | Date | 18th century |
| | length | 67.8 cm |
| 599. 361/LIV-A | <i>Lock</i> —The lock for the armoury shaped like a scorpion. The two upper hands and the side legs of the scorpion are loose. There is a locking device inside. | |
| | Provenance | Deccan |
| | Date | Late 19th century |
| | length | 13.0 cm |
| 600. 233/LVI | <i>European Dagger</i> —Single-edged on one side and double-edged at the lower end. The upper part of the plain blade is damascened in gold and it bears a date 1144 A.H. The ivory hilt portrays the figure of a European knight in high relief. Sheath modern. | |
| | Provenance | European dagger manufactured for a Deccan king |

Date 1144 A.H.
length 43.3 cm

601. 70.21 *Panjā*—It has four rings for four fingers and an additional hole for the thumb and is fitted with a recurved blade having mid-rib.

Provenance Maharashtra
Date Late 17th century
length 23.0 cm
Width 6.0 cm

CHAPTER VI

SHIELD

ORIGIN

From the archaeological and literary evidences of the bygone days it becomes absolutely clear that the shield in India yielded excellent results in its heyday and during many centuries it was eagerly sought after by the warriors of all classes: foot-soldiers, cavaliers, charioteers, elephant-riders and even musketeers¹. The knights wore the discomfort of wearing a shield even during the excessive heat of the Indian summer. Right from the first recorded "Battle of the Ten Kings" (*Dāsrājna Yudha*) fought during the Rigvedic period (c.1500 B.C.)² till the first 'War of Independence' (1857 A.D.) shields have appeared in large numbers in every battle fought. These were used by the ladies and children too. No well made shield, properly worn, ever failed to protect its wearer not merely from the thrusts of arrows, swords, daggers, lances and spears but also from the blows of maces, *gurjās* and also from the fire-arms of the day. There are a number of shields displayed in the museums of India which have sustained injuries to which the dents or holes bear testimony.

USES

Shield has been put to various uses. The Nāgās of the Nāgāland use a special variety of shield during their dance performance. This shield of buffalo hide or of bamboo work, covered with tiger or other skin, is large enough to cover the whole person.³ Among the aboriginal tribes, specially the Angāmī Nāgās, the mode of taking oath is singular. While making any promise, they place a spear between their teeth and hold a shield⁴ in both the hands, signifying by this ceremony that if they do not act up to their agreement (denoted by the shield) they are prepared to fall by either of the two weapons. When a respectable man among the Nāgās dies, his body is buried and over the grave are placed dead man's spear and shield.

For a long time and till recently the shields were used as a scale for weighing grains in the villages. Two hide shields, deeply convex, of almost equal size, were tied to a wooden or metallic bar with three strings on each. The concave side faced upwards. Thus the two shields served as the two plates of a balancing scale.

In 1533 A.D. Humāyūn, the second Mughal emperor, captured the fort of Māndū in Mālwa (Central India) and discovered a great hidden treasure there. He divided a part of the treasure among his soldiers by fillin^o the shield of each person with silver, gold or jewel in proportion to his rank and service.

On the 18th November, 1677 A.D., Aurangzēb, the last great Mughal ruler, ordered to abandon the practice of bringing presents for the emperor in the court on the silver trays, instead shields were ordered to be used for that purpose.⁵ Till recently the shield has been employed by the Rājput as 'dowry tray' in Rajasthan. The jewels and other valuable items were presented in a shield by the father of the bride to the bridegroom, as a part of the

dowry. Such shields were beautifully decorated on both the sides, in and out.

A special kind of shield called *tilwā*, made of cane, was used by the gladiators of Akbar's (reigned 1556-1605 A.D.) court for tournament. Shield was a regal symbol. The personal shield of the Mughal emperors, while in the court or in the harem, was carried by the lady attendant⁶. When Shāh Jahān (reigned 1627-1656 A.D.) sat in the *Dīwān-i-Ām* of the Red Fort, Delhi, his weapons were hung on the four pillars of throne, to one his shield, to another his sword, to the third his quiver and to the fourth his arrows.

During the Dussehrā festival the Rājput; on certain auspicious days (*Guruparvas*) the Sikhs and at the time of Muharram the Shiā Muslims demonstrate the wielding of sword and shield. In the martial dance performed in Kerala today shield is used along with sword. Thus shield was not merely a piece of armour but was put to many uses.

HISTORY

When did the first shield reach the hands of the Indian warrior we know not but it certainly finds representation in some of the prehistoric paintings drawn on the walls of the caves in the Kaimūr Range, Central India. The earliest datable paintings in the Jogīmārā caves (*circa* 10000 B.C.) show round and convex shields. No shield has been unearthed from the Indus Valley sites (*circa* 2300 B.C.) although certain pictographs in the Harappan seals may represent men holding shields.⁷ The Vedic terms (2nd millennium B.C) for the shield are *varūtha*⁸ (made of wood) and *charma*⁹ (made of leather or hide), Rāma-Rāvaṇa war as mentioned in the epic *Rāmāyaṇa* (*circa* 1500 B.C.) and the Pāṇḍava – Kuru war as illustrated in the *Mahābhārata* (*circa* 1000 B.C.) witnessed innumerable varieties of shields amidst other offensive weapons and defensive armour. The shield-bearers were then called *charminah* and the ones who made it were designated *charmakāra*.

All the Greek warriors who accompanied Alexander, the Great, to India in 326 B.C. carried shields which were tied on their backs. About the Indian foot-soldiers Arrian says, "In the left hand they carry bucklers made of undressed ox-hide, which are not so broad as those who carry them, but are as long. The horsemen are equipped with two lances and with a shorter buckler"¹⁰ This is the earliest reference of a shield used by the cavaliers in India, prior to which its use was confined to the foot-soldiers and charioteers only.

Muhammad Ghorī invaded India in 1191 A.D. and introduced *karwā*¹¹ shields. It was made of raw bullock hide, stuffed on both sides with wool or cotton. This defence covering protected the infantry like a wall and no weapon could pierce it. Bābur, the founder of Mughal rule, had, similarly, placed seven hundred gun carriages (*arābā*) in the battle-field of Pānīpat in 1526 A.D., which were joined together by the ropes of raw hide and between every two carts five *tūra*¹² (mantlets) shields were fixed, behind which the matchlockmen stood and fired.

Abul Fazl in his *Āin-i-Akbarī*, mentions *sipar*, *dhāl*, *khērā* and *paharī* and gives their prices as five rupees, four *muhars*, four *muhars* and one *muhar* respectively.¹³ The personal shield of Akbar, inscribed with his name and damascened with zodiac signs (each zodiac is inscribed in a small oval-shaped panel which makes it easier to identify it) is exhibited in the Prince of Wales Museum, Bombay.

On the 12th Sept. 1665 A.D., Tavernier, a European traveller, visited Aurangzēb and presented him a shield with jewelled fittings. Manucci gives the names of the four favourite shields of Aurangzēb which were named *Āstāb-i-Ālam* (Sun of the world), *Mahtāb-i-Ālam*

(Moon of the world), *Sāyā-i-Ālam* (Shadow of the world) and *Roshanī-i-Ālam* (Light of the world).¹⁴ All these were made of rhinoceros hide and could resist a musket ball.

ART REPRESENTATIONS

The earliest historical art representations of shield are found in the sculptures of Bharhut¹⁵ (2nd century B.C.) and Sānchi¹⁶ (1st century B.C.) where they are shown as rectangular with a rounded top, like those found in ancient Egypt. The Gāndhāra sculptures of 1st-2nd centuries A.D. show round shields and suggest a convex surface. Some of the Hindu gods and goddesses are generally depicted carrying shields. Thus Shiva in his *Mṛgadhar* form holds a 'shield of antelope skin' and the shield which goddess Durgā wields is of metal and was presented to her by Kāla, the God of Death. Numerous representations of circular, rectangular and oval shields are found in the Chandēlla sculptures of Khajurāhō (12th century A.D.).¹⁷

The convex shield on the walls of the Ajantā¹⁸ caves (5th century A.D.) was probably of leather. Its outer surfaces is shaped like the face of a man whose moustaches and eyes are painted. Another unusual shield noticed here is a curved oblong one whose upper part is roundish while the lower part is very broad.

WEARING AND MAKING OF A SHIELD

The shield was generally held in the left hand and was made of the material which was quite strong and at the same time not very heavy. Many materials were employed in its making e.g., wood, bamboo, cane or reed; metal – gold, silver, copper, brass or steel; hide, leather or skin. The undressed ox-hide was commonly used. The hide of buffalo, cow, blue bull, deer, stag, *sāmbhur*, etc., were also employed. Those made of tiger or lion skin were very rare, and the ones of elephant skin were not durable. The rhinoceros (*gāindā*) hide was the most coveted material for shield. Such shields were light, handy, durable and extremely fine. In middle ages the rhinoceros flooded India, specially Assam, and they were mercilessly hunted that is how we have hundreds of *gāindā* shields in museums. In the coastal regions shields were made of tortoise, turtle and crocodile skin. Cloth, lacquer, ivory and bone were used in their embellishments.

The metallic shields, as a rule, were shorter than those of the hide, while those made of bamboo, cane or wood were long enough to cover the entire body of the warrior. The convex surface was of special significance since the arrow, lance or even bullet slipped as soon as they hit it. The two loops and a long strap, fixed inside, gave a good support so that the shield did not fall down at the heat of the battle. When playing only defence, the shield could be held in the right or in both the hands. War-shields, like any other arms and armour, was not to be put to any domestic use at the time of peace. It was then covered in a cloth bag and kept safe.

Lining of shield was of velvet or cotton which was sometimes embroidered. On the outer surface were fitted four bosses, beautifully ornamented, which also acted as the washers for the riveting of the hand-loop rings on the inside. The average Indian *dhāl* was from two to four feet in diameter. When not in use it was hung on the back with the help of the arm strap or a sling.¹⁹

DECORATION

The outer surface, being comparatively flat, provided a good ground for the artists to show their skill. The metallic shields were chiselled, engraved and embossed; they were enamelled, gilded and damascened; they were inscribed and studded with precious and semi-precious stones. The ones made of leather or hide were first lacquered and then painted in the style of the miniature paintings. Hunting and war scenes, figures of god and goddesses, verses from the holy scriptures, etc., are available on these shields which reveal the devotion of the *dhābdār* (shield maker) who produced them and the valour of the warriors who wielded them.

TYPES

The earliest shields were long enough to cover the body of the warrior but it must have been a most inconvenient adjunct to his accoutrement. As the development of defensive armour proceeded, the shield became smaller. The surface of the shield was bowed so that it embraced the body of the wearer.²⁰ Its outer broad flat surface has, from the earliest times, been used by the painter to display his art²¹. Some known types are:

1. *Buckler*

It is a round shield, generally very small. It had one or two handles, close together, in the centre and was held in the hand²².

2. *Dhāl*

Indian *dhāl*²³ is nearly round, convex, having edges rolled and is held by two handles fastened to ring bolts which are riveted to the bosses on the outside.

3. *Junāh*

It was made of plane, laminated wood and covered with leather²⁴. It had a big central boss, unlike others which had four smaller bosses²⁵.

4. *Kalkan*

It was circular and was formed from a tightly wound spiral of cane wound with silk threads²⁶.

5. *Mārū*

It is a typical Marāthā parrying and thrusting weapon consisting of a pair of horns fastened together with their points in opposite direction. In the centre is fitted a small circular shield of leather or metal²⁷.

6. *Pahrī*

It was a small shield of cane or bamboo. This was light, reasonably strong and bound with cotton or silk threads to make beautiful patterns²⁸.

7. *Sipar*

It was of steel or hide, generally from 17 to 24 inches in diameter. If of steel, it was

highly ornamented with patterns in gold damascening; if of hide, it had on its silver or gold bosses, crescents or stars²⁹.

8. *Tūra*

It was made of laminated wood, reinforced with cotton threads. It was long enough to cover a man completely. Its lower end rested on the ground and the upper was supported by a prop or an attendant³⁰.

CONCLUSION

The aboriginal tribes of Eastern India use shields of bamboo with interlaced cane strips. These are rectangular in shape, concave inside, and convex on the outside. A horizontal handle of cane is attached on the inner side. The Nāgās of Nāgāland use shields covered with *mithun* hide. These are three and a half feet long and thus cover the wearer from the neck to the knee. A number of inscribed, embellished and ornamented shields are displayed in the museums. Some are so delicately painted that they seem to be the miniature paintings on hide while a few so profusely studded that they are more specimens of jewellery than of an armour.

REFERENCES

1. Indian shield is nearly always round and varies in diameter from about eight inches to about thirty-six. Some are nearly flat while others are strongly convex. The edges may be flat or rolled back in the reverse direction to that of the curvature of the shield. It is held by two handles or straps fastened to ring bolts that pass through the shield and are riveted to bosses on the outside. Inside, between the handles, there is a square cushion for the knuckle to rest against.
2. A.C. Das, *Rigvedic Culture* (Calcutta, Madras, 1925), p.336.
3. John Butler, "Rough Notes on the Angāmī Nāgās", *The Anthropological Institute* (1875), vol. XLIV, No.4.
4. A.J. Moffatt Mills, *Report on the Province of Assam* (1854), pp. CXXI-V. Sometimes the Nāgā shield was covered with the hair of the foe the owner of the shield had killed.
5. Sāqī Mustāq Khān, *Māāsir-i-Ālamgīrī*, tr. by Jadu Nath Sarkar (Calcutta, 1947), p.100. On the 21st year of his reign the emperor announced, "the clerks should use inkpots of Chinaware and giltstone, instead of silver ones. the amounts of *inām* (presents) which were brought in the Court on silver trays, should henceforth be brought on shields".
6. During marches there were male shield-bearers who carried the shields of their masters. A number of miniature paintings depict the shield-bearers.
7. John Marshall, *Mohenjo-daro and the Indus Valley Civilization*, vol. II (London, 1931), p.533.
8. *Rigvéda*, VI. 46.9.
9. *Rāmāyaṇa*, *Ayodhyā Kāṇḍa*, canto XC VII, verse 2. The word *charma* or *charman* literally means 'leather' or 'skin' or 'hide' and sometimes it has been used in the sense of 'leather armour' as well; cf., *Mahābhārata*, *Shāntiparva*, XII. 166.51 ff.
10. J.W. McCrindle, *The Invasion of India by Alexander, the Great* (1896), p.108; Rajendra Lal Mitra, *Indo-Aryans*, vol.I (Calcutta, 1881), p.323.
11. *Futuh-us-Salātīn* (Madras edition), pp. 77-78; M. Habib and K.A. Nizami (ed.), *A Comprehensive History of India: Delhi Sultanat*, vol. V (Delhi, 1970), p.104.
12. *Bābūr-nāmā*, tr. from the original Turki text into English by A.S. Beveridge, reprinted (Delhi, 1970), p.469.

13. Abul Fazl, *Āin-i-Akbarī*, tr. into English by H. Blockmann (Calcutta, 1873), reprinted (Delhi, 1965), p.117. All these were different kinds of shields.
14. G.N. Pant, *Indian Shield* (Delhi, 1982), p.43.
15. Alexander Cunningham, *The Stupas of Bharhut* (London, 1879), p.XXXII.
16. H. Russel Robinson, *Oriental Armour* (London, 1967), pp.112-113.
17. Vidya Prakash, *Khajuraho – A Study in the Cultural Condition of Chandella Society* (Bombay, 1967), pp.102-3, pl. XIX, 1-17.
18. Y. Yazdani, *Ajantā*, part IV (plates), pl. LV.
19. The horse-rider hung his shield by his waist with the help of a waist-band (*hamar-band*) generally of cotton. He held both the reins in his mouth to enable the left hand a free movement. Sometimes it was held on the back.
20. C.F. Foulkes, *Armour and Weapons* (England, 1973), pp. 28-29.
21. For decoration and embellishment see the chapter 'Decoration' in G.N. Pant, *Indian Shield* (New Delhi, 1982).
22. It is different from 'target'. The 'buckler' is held in the left hand while the 'target' has two widely separated loops through which the arm is passed.
23. The word literally means 'protection' and is used for all kinds of shields, bucklers, targets, etc. The Brāhmins had an objection to wearing any kind of leather, they, therefore, used a shield made of forty or fifty folds of silk, painted red and ornamented. Such shields were called *dhāl bastā* cf., W.Egerton, *An Illustrated Book of Indian Arms* (London, 1860), p.111, note to No. 434, which informs that one Indian *dhāl bastā* is displayed in the Codrington Collection, U.K., which was made at the time of Tīpū Sultān in the 18th century A.D.
24. It is spelt as *junān*, *mijann*, *majinn* and *junnāh*. The leather covering was a protection against weather and it also provided space for decoration.
25. These were probably hung from a guige by a Muslim cavalry.
26. These were the cane shields known under the earlier Seljuk Turks, but their popularity in India increased after the Mongol invasions during the 13th century A.D. Later it came to be known in India, Persia and Turkey as *khalkha* or *kalkan*.
27. Literally 'to kill', the weapon is also called *mādu*, *māroō* or *singautā*. The horns generally used are that of bucks and these are tipped at the end with pointed steel caps. When used as a shield it was held in the left hand, when as a weapon, in the right. Its average total length is 3 to 5 feet, with the shield of 10 inches in diameter.
28. It is described and illustrated in the *Āin-i-Akbarī*.
29. This was very popular during the Mughal period. It appears in the *Āin-i-Akbarī*. These were of 17 to 24 inches in diameter. The ones exclusively made of rhinoceros hide were called *sipar-i-karg*. The ones used by the foot-soldiers during siege were known as *sipar-i-chakh* and *sipar-i-farakh*. The kite-shaped shields were termed as *sipar-i-shushak*.
30. These were large, wooden, round shields having a large central boss. Bābur in his autobiography (*Bābur-nāmā*) (tr.), pp. 108, 113, 369, etc.) has mentioned its use very often. In the battle of Pāñīpat (1526 A.D.) seven hundred carts (*arābā*) were placed in the front. Between every two carts, 5 or 6 mantlets (*tūra*) were fixed behind which the matchlockmen were to stand and fire.

SHIELD

602. 3/LIII *Shield*—Shield of rhinoceros hide; four steel knobs damascened in gold have four steel inside rings, two straps and a square padding. Shape hemispherical with upturned rim. Entire shield is lacquered in black and decorated with floral and creeper design and inscriptions in relief. The inscriptions are in four medallions in Naskh script in Arabic language and read *Alī an hubbahu junnāh* (The name of Alī is like a *junnāh* shield. He is the divider of Heaven and Hell. He is the successor of Prophet. He is the Imām of all human and celestial beings).
- Provenance North India
 School Mughal
 Date Early 17th century
 Diameter 47.7 cm
603. 25/LVI *Shield*—Shield of Damascus steel, hemispherical in shape with its rim upturned. The borders strengthened with additional metal carrying inscription all over in open steel cut work. The four steel knobs and a central medallion carry the inscription in similar style. The inscription is in Arabic. The inside padding of velvet is stuffed all over with gilt nails. The padded square has two straps attached to four steel rings and an additional strap with two steel rings for slinging the shield on the back.
- Provenance Delhi
 School Mughal
 Date Mid. 17th century (Shāh Jahān period)
 Circumference 40.8 cm
604. 67/LIII *Shield*—Small shield of Damascus steel. The borders of another steel, welded to it, are engraved with floral and creeper design in high relief in gold. The four steel knobs, damascened in gold, are supported by four steel loops from inside which carry two straps of *zarī*. The stuffed square padding and the inside lining are embroidered with *zarī*.
- Provenance Delhi
 School Mughal
 Date Mid. 17th century (Shāh Jahān period)
 Diameter 31.3 cm
605. 99/LIV-A *Shield*—Shield of rhinoceros hide, four steel knobs attached to steel rings; padding missing. Shape hemispherical and edges upturned. Outer surface is engraved in relief in Naskh script, Tughrā style in Arabic language with *Ayātul Qursī*, *Nād-i-Alī*, verses from the holy *Qurān*, etc.
- Provenance Delhi
 School Sultānate period
 Date 15th century
 Diameter 44.4 cm
606. 106/LIII *Dhāl*—Convex shield of metal. The borders are engraved in Kūfic script in Arabic language. The entire outer surface is engraved with floral and

creeper design, hunting and battle-scenes, etc. The central medallion is engraved with a king flanked by two courtiers. No inside padding, four knobs.

Provenance Delhi
 School Sultānate period
 Date 15th century
 Diameter 59.5 cm

607. 125/LVI *Shield*—Shield of Damascus steel profusely damascened all over in gold in *zarbuland* style. Four steel knobs are supported by four inside steel rings. The padding consists of stuffed velvet; straps for carrying the shield are attached inside.

Provenance Delhi
 School Mughal
 Date Mid. 17th century (Shāh Jahān period)
 Diameter 50.3 cm

608. 143/LVI *Shield*—Shield of Damascus steel, the outer surface is damascened in gold all over except in the centre. Four knobs are also of Damascus steel which are supported by four steel rings inside; two straps and inside lining are of damaged green velvet.

Provenance Delhi
 School Mughal
 Date Mid. 17th century
 Diameter 39.0 cm

609. 151/LIV *Shield*—A miniature shield of rhinoceros hide meant for providing military training to young princes. A small square-shaped cushion of yellow velvet, stuffed with cotton, is fixed inside.

Provenance Hyderabad
 School Deccanī
 Date Late 18th-early 19th century
 Diameter 15.9 cm

610. 175/LVI *Shield*—Shield of steel, borders damascened in gold. Four steel knobs are attached to it. On the other surface is a design of a serpent twisted all over. Badly damaged lining.

Provenance Tamilnadu
 School South Indian
 Date 18th century
 Diameter 37.9 cm

611. 199/LIV-A *Shield*—Shield of Damascus steel, conical, surmounted with a triangular spike on a knob. The borders, engraved with floral design of some other metal, are welded in the edge. Two small crescents and four small stones are studded on the outer surface. Four circular knobs are supported by four steel rings. Inside lining, padded cushion and two straps are of

damaged velvet.

Provenance Hyderabad
 School Deccanī
 Date Early 18th century
 Diameter 43.7 cm

612. 202/LIV *Shield*—Small shield for the young princes made of Damascus steel. The borders of some other steel, welded to it, are damascened in gold all over. Four small knobs are supported by four steel rings on the inner side; lining is of *zari*.

Provenance Hyderabad
 School Deccanī
 Date 18th century
 Diameter 19.1 cm

613. 214/LIV-A *Shield*—Small shield, convex, additional gold-plated sheet of copper with beaded border and upturned rim in perforated design is welded to the sheath. The outer surface bears five inscriptions in medallion, all recording *Nād-i-Ālī* in Arabic in Naskh style. Four steel knobs, with their perforated borders, are supported by three steel rings (one broken). The inside padding is of damaged velvet.

Provenance Hyderabad
 School Deccanī
 Date Late 18th century
 Diameter 33.8 cm

614. 217/LVI *Shield*—Shield of Damascus steel, hemispherical in shape, edges slightly upturned and beaded. The borders of a separate metal, showing cut steel work, are profusely ornamented with inscription. The four steel knobs and the central medallion are also inscribed in perforated work. The inside padding is of embroidered velvet. The four outer knobs are affixed with four steel rings which have a square stuffed padded cushion of velvet and two straps for holding it in the left hand. Two long straps are attached with two additional rings for slinging the shield on the back. On the outer surface a crescent and the swan on one side and two stars on the lower side are studded.

Provenance North India
 School Mughal
 Date Early 18th century
 Diameter 41.0 cm

615. 291/LVI *Shield*—Shield of Damascus steel with four steel knobs damascened in gold supported by four steel rings from inside. The lining consists of a square cushion, two straps and the inside padding are all of maroon velvet. An additional steel plate is welded on the border which is profusely damascened all over in gold in floral design.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Mughal
Date	Mid. 17th century
Diameter	31.5 cm

616. 308/LVI *Shield*—Small hemispherical shield of rhinoceros hide with its edges turned upward; the outer surface is embossed with floral and creeper design all over then lacquered and painted. Four steel knobs, damascened in gold, are supported by four steel rings from inside. The leather straps and a padded cushion inside.

Provenance	Delhi
School	Mughal
Date	c 1700 A.D.
Diameter	33.8 cm

617. 381/LIV *Shield*—Shield of rhinoceros hide, lacquered and painted; the borders and the central medallion depict colourful flowers. Four steel knobs are supported by four steel rings from inside. The padding is of stuffed leather. The inner side is painted with borders all around and small *būti* design. The inner side bears an inscription in Devanāgarī बाल कर्मगयज गरबटी दुकान तरी यीगसर सुदा 1889

The shield was specially used for carrying the dowry for the bride.

Provenance	Udaipur
School	Mewārī, Rājput
Date	1889 V.S. = c 1820 A.D.
Diameter	67.5 cm

CHAPTER VII

ARMOUR

ORIGIN

The evolution of armour was governed by two factors. First, there was incessant struggle between the forces of offence and defence in which new armour had to be devised for every new weapon¹. Secondly, there was the contest between the need for mobility and the desire for safety². No well-made armour could have failed to protect its wearer from the thrust of arrows, swords, spears or the fire-arms of the day.

Soft armour, a protective coat of quilted fabric, is the most ancient and was used in 2500 B.C. In the days of the *Rigvéda* (2nd millennium B.C.), the equipment of the soldier consisted of a coat of mail, helmet and arm guards³. Another favourite material for defensive purposes was leather or hide⁴. Chain mail⁵ had the greatest advantage of flexibility but the weight of it was considerable and price beyond the reach of many. The heat of India did not permit its wearing for long. Moreover, a violent thrust of a spear, lance or other pointed weapon would break and drive the rings into the body⁶. Armourers, therefore, introduced plate armour which, apart from being comparatively lighter and less costlier, also offered a rigid and glancing surface to a blow.

The finest specimens in India were produced by the combination of two or more types of armour. Thus we have plates attached to the mail of coats, trousers and arm guards—all combined with lamellar and mail⁷. The armour, whether for men or for animals, were constructed in such a manner that bodily movements, for walking, running or fighting, were allowed without hindrance and without compromising with the protection of the limb.

HELMET⁸

PARTS

The most vital part of a helmet is the skull which protects the head. It is generally hemispherical and is made of one piece of metal⁹. A crest, mostly of heron feather, surmounted the helmet¹⁰. Sometimes instead of a crest, a triangular and pointed spike of metal was used. Inside of the skull was padded. A nasal (or nose-guard) depended from the front of the helmet and protected the nose of the wearer¹¹. The camail was the guard of mail for the sides, neck and the shoulders. It consisted of tiny rings interlinked and attached to the rim of the helmet which bore holes. Metallic pieces were hung from the sides of the helmet to protect the ears and cheeks and were called 'cheek-pieces'.

TYPES

Some famous types of the helmets are:

1. *Baydah*

It was egg-shaped and large enough to be worn over a coif. It was held in place by straps or laces¹².

2. *Chichak*

It was a tall, peaked helmet with a neck-guard. It had a nasal and large cheek-pieces¹³. These were made of metal or of raw hide covered with velvet and mounted with copper gilt. It was introduced by the Turks in India in the 13th century A.D.

3. *Coif*

It was mail hood and covered the top, sides and back of the head and neck. It was worn by the ordinary soldiers as the sole defence of the head, and by the knights under the helmet¹⁴.

4. *Khud*

It was of metal moulded into one piece¹⁵. It was the typical Indo-Persian bowl-shaped helmet with a movable nasal, two plume-holders and a mail neck-guard¹⁶.

5. *Turban-shaped*

The Sikhs are enjoined by religious law to have their long hair which compel them to wear a *pagari* (turban) hence they used a turban-shaped helmet. It had no padding since it was worn over the turban itself¹⁷.

The use of helmet is very common among the aboriginal tribes living in India today. All the tribal chiefs use the war-helmets as a sign of prestige. The commonest Indian helmet is hemispherical in form, surmounted with an elongated pyramidal spike. In front is attached a sliding nose-guard, on its either side is one plume-holder with the plumes of heron. The surface of the helmet is engraved with floral design and the border is damascened in gold. The inside is padded.

ARMOUR FOR BREAST AND BACK

The basic types of Indian armour can be classified into the following seven heads: (i) fabric armour¹⁸, (ii) armour of leather, hide or skin, (iii) scale armour, (iv) lamellar armour¹⁹, (v) mail armour²⁰, (vi) plate armour²¹, and (vii) combined plate-and-mail²² and mail-and-lamellar, etc. Among the noted specimens of Indian body armour are:

1. *Aṅgarakhā*

It was a surcoat, a long coat worn over armour. It was like a long wadded coat, opening in the front, and reached below the knee²³

2. *Breastplate*

It was either one single plate or a set of plates covering the front of the body from the neck up to the waist or little below the waist²⁴. When the plate for the back is added it is called 'breast and back'²⁵.

3. *Brigandine*

It was made of the plates of iron or steel overlapping upwards and riveted to a canvas garment usually covered with silk or velvet²⁶. It was generally a sleeveless vest and shoulder guards, trousers, sleeves, etc., of same quality, were added separately²⁷.

4. *Chār-āinā*

Literally 'four mirrors' since it consisted of four plates—a breastplate, a back plate and two small pieces for the sides²⁸. All the four plates were connected together with leather straps. The average size of the front and back plate was 15 inches and that of the sides was 10 inches²⁹. These plates were used on any kind of quilted garment or leather fabric.

5. *Coat of Thousand Nails*

The *chiltā hazār māshā* ('coat of thousand nails') is a peculiar Rājput armour. It was of fabric and consisted of a hoodlike cap with long, rounded ear-and-cheek-flaps, a long full coat with scalloped flaps over the shoulders and upper armour³⁰. The high riding boots were of the same type. The entire surface was decorated with nails in scale or diamond pattern³¹.

6. *Jibā*

It was a wadded under-coat³² to which were attached the four plates of *chār-āinā* or other breastplates.

7. *Waist-coat Armour*

It was a cuirass made of three to five plates hinged together at the sides and opening down the breast³³. Those having five plates were thus distributed—one for the back, two for the sides and two meeting in the middle of the front. All these were hinged together.

8. *Zirah Bukhtar*

It was a coat of mail of various sizes and shapes. Some had short sleeves while others had long ones. Coats made of double mails or of each mail ring inscribed are also found. Mail of this kind is generally of unriveted links³⁴.

ARMOUR FOR OTHER PARTS OF THE BODY

Every limb of an important knight or the one who could afford it, was protected by some kind of armour.

1. *Shoulder-guard*

Normally the shoulder was covered by hauberk, coat of mail or any shirt³⁵. In the case of 'coat of thousand nails' separate detachable shoulder-guards were used. It was made of leather lined with *kimkhāb*. These were long enough to cover the shoulders.

2. *Neck Protector*

The camail of the helmet did give some protection to the neck still sometimes gorget was also used. It was worn over the breastplate and it covered the neck and a part of the

chest³⁶. Sometimes a long cloak of mail, called *gulūband*, was also worn for the neck.

3. *Armour for the Waist*

Many varieties of girdles were worn both as an ornament and also as a part of the costume³⁷. Then there were waist-belts (*kamarband*) protecting the abdomen, groin and waist. It was sometimes made of lamellar but generally of leather or embroidered cotton fitted with metal plates³⁸.

4. *Armour for the Arms*

Archer's ring³⁹, shooting gloves and armlets⁴⁰ were worn. *Bājūband* gave full protection to both the arms. It was a pair, and each consisted of a curved plate which covered the outer side of the hand from the knuckle to the elbow. A short curved plate (covering the wrist and hand up to four inches) was attached to the outer side by mail or by hinges. The gauntlets (for the portion protecting the knuckle and the fingers) were generally of interlinked mail and heavily padded. A number of *bājūbands*, preserved in the museums of India, have been classified as North Indian, South Indian, Rājput, Sindhī or Mughal *bājūbands* on the basis of the regional or stylistic features⁴¹. The *bājūbands* were made of mail, mail combined with plate, scale or lamellar, fabric or leather. The inside was padded with coloured velvet, fastening was generally by straps and buckles. Usually they were worn on both the hands but sometimes only one piece was worn, on the bridle hand if riding on a horse and on the sword hand if on foot and wielding a sword and carrying a shield. The average length was 20 inches with gauntlet and the width was 4 inches. Some of the *bājūbands* were studded with jewels or were damascened in gold and silver.

A. *Bracer*

It is also known as 'archer's guard'. It is a covering for the left arm to protect it from the recoil of the bowstring. It was worn a little above the elbow⁴². It was a common practice with kings and generals, as per their depiction in stone sculptures and miniature paintings, to wear gold or silver *bhujabandhas* (armlets), above the elbows, on both the arms. It was an ornament but it also served the purpose of a bracer to some extent.

In medieval India bracers were made of leather, horn, silver or ivory. They were generally quite plain but were sometimes highly ornamented. The bracer should fit as close to the arm as possible, so that no strap or edges can get in the way of the bowstring.

B. *Dastānā*

*Dastānā*⁴³ (or hand guard) was shorter in length covering the knuckle wrist and the upper arms, seldom reaching above the elbow. *Dastānās* as a separate piece of armour were used in the Epic age. At that time these were made of leather. Later the hands were covered by the long sleeves of the *zirih* or *āngarakhā* or hauberk and separate arm-guards were not needed, but in case of half-sleeve or sleeveless armour, the *bājūband* and *dastānā* were used. During medieval period these were made completely of leather or leather covered with metal or only of metal. The most popular form was the 'Mughal *dastānā*⁴⁴ in which the portion covering the knuckle and the wrist was made of mail and the lower portion (covering the hand from the wrist to the elbow) was fitted with several plates⁴⁵. Those made completely of mail or of small plates joined together with mail were also used. Some *dastānās*

were made in the manner of brigandine armour, studded all over with gilt nails⁴⁶.

5. *Armour for the Legs*

Many varieties of leather sandals, shoes and boots were used both by the warriors and civilians alike⁴⁷. These shoes were further protected by soleret or other covering of mail. 'Chausses', worn only by the nobles, were of butted brass and iron links worked to a diaper pattern. The armour for the upper part of the leg was called 'chausson' which covered the portion above the knee to the thigh. It was made either of leather or of mail. Then there were 'cuisses'—the defences for the thighs. The 'knee-caps' of leather or metal were circular or dome-shaped and protected the knee⁴⁸. The long iron sock covering the foreleg or the foot was called *mozah-i-ahanī*⁴⁹ and the one that covered the leg up to the knee was called *rāk*⁵⁰. The greaves, called *rānak*, were sometimes used⁵¹.

CONCLUSION

The Western scholars have commonly believed that the Indians did not discover adequate armour, except the shield, to protect themselves and that was one of the reasons of their defeat. The foregoing details not only refute the Western claim but also establish that there were armour for practically every limb though its use was mainly confined to the nobles and important knights. A number of armour pieces displayed in the museums of India bear testimony to it.

REFERENCES

1. That tug of war continues even today. Once an armour is produced, still superior weapons are invented which can pierce that kind of armour and *vice versa*.
2. Too much emphasis on safety would make an armour piece heavy and its wearing tiresome. Light and handy armour provide better mobility but are not so sturdy as the heavier armour are.
3. *Rigvéda*, VI.6.75.18. In this hymn the king has been advised to provide clothes, weapons and armour to all his soldiers so that they may fight the battle with all vigour and without fear.
4. Leather was used either in its natural form or was sometimes boiled and beaten till it could be moulded and then allowed to dry hard. The shields, saddles, sheaths and a number of other articles used by a warrior were always of leather.
5. The use of mail armour was certainly known to the ancient Indian Aryans.
6. Mail's perishable nature has prevented much of the early mail armour from surviving. Complete armour of mail was in use in the 16th century Mughal India and in the 17th century it reached its greatest perfection.
7. For details see G.N. Pant, *Indian Arms and Armour*, vol. III (New Delhi, 1983), pp. 27-38, figs. 74-102.
8. Helmet has been associated with the Indian warrior right from the beginning of the history. Originally the head was covered by some leather or fabric protective padding. Later it was defended by a hood of mail and then by a helmet. The earliest helmets were pointed which were gradually rounded and finally became hemispherical.
9. In India at least seven types of skulls of the helmets are available: hemispherical or bowl-shaped, dome-shaped, flat, turban-shaped, oval-shaped, morion-shaped and cap-shaped.
10. Being completely encased in metal the knights could not always be recognised so some wore a

crest on the top of their helmets by which they could be distinguished. Later they added a symbol to their surcoat and shield. In the course of time, these symbols became very colourful and complicated and eventually developed into coats of arms.

11. In the beginning the face was entirely unprotected, then was added the nasal projecting downwards in front of the nose. With the passage of time ear-flaps (or cheek-pieces) and camail were added.

12. It corresponds to the two-piece helmets of late Roman and Parthian cap style. A few surviving helmets in India show that this form of construction, in which the constituent parts were joined fore-and-aft, persisted during the Mughal period.

13. The cheek-pieces were pierced for ease of hearing. The main distinction between a Turkish and an Indian *chichak* is that the former has a tightening bolt to hold the nasal which is in raised position while the Indian counterparts are movable.

14. It was often worn over a cotton cap or a cap of coiled rope. In the National Museum, New Delhi, is preserved a Rājput coil of the 17th century A.D. made entirely of interlinked mail.

15. It was the usual type worn during Mughal India. The bowl is usually engraved or inlaid with gold and silver wires. The mail neck-guard is cut away in front leaving the face uncovered, and at sides, to clear the shoulders, front and back, it hangs down in long points. The mail is generally of open links.

16. Its another variant was *khud chilmandār* whose distinguishing features are the nose-guard which has a very wide end and the mail curtain that covers the entire face. The curtain (literally *chilman*) has a v-shaped opening in front, closed by a triangular flap that can be lifted to give the wearer more air.

17. The surface of such helmet is decorated with floral design in gold damascening. The apex is also enriched with gold inlay in conventional floral design. Attached is a camail of small butted brass and iron links arranged in a diaper pattern with a vandyked edge.

18. Fabric armour has always been cheap and easily accessible. The Indian climate also favours its use.

19. The lamellar armour probably spread from Central Asia. Such defences might have originated in the Middle East but lamellar was far more characteristic of Central Asia and Eastern Iran. In this armour the metal strips or plates were fastened to one another or were stitched to cloth or leather. Such armour were very heavy.

20. In India the chain mail has existed from very remote antiquity, but owing to its nature of such a perishable quality, exposing the maximum of surface to atmosphere oxidation, that practically no examples have come down to us of all the vast quantity fabricated in remote past.

21. These are some of the finest specimens of armourer's skill and are generally tastefully ornamented.

22. The padded, scale, lamellar and brigandine armour gradually gave way to mail or mail-combined-with-plate armour.

23. The word has been derived from Sanskrit *aṅgarakṣhā* i.e., 'protector of body.' A few embroidered *aṅgarakhās* of Rājput origin are displayed the Sawāi Mān Singh II Museum, Jaipur, Rajasthan.

24. It is one of the oldest armour and has been used from the dawn of the Indian history. These were of various shapes: round, square, rectangular, like a flower, etc. Its another name was *joshan*.

25. Solid breastplates were very popular during the Mughal period. The personal inscribed breastplate of Humāyūn is in the Prince of Wales Museum, Bombay, while that of Aurangzēb is in the National Museum, New Delhi.

26. The 'coat of thousand nails' is also a variant of brigandine. These coats, also called *chiltā hazār māshā*, are exhibited in the Tower of London Armouries, London; Prince of Wales Museum, Bombay; National Museum, New Delhi, etc.

27. Sometimes small plates were also attached together with the nails. These plates could be circular, rectangular or square.
28. The plates are generally rectangular and the two worn on the breast and the back were considerably longer than those worn on the sides. The side plates were cut away at the top so that they could fit inside the armpit and should not hinder the free movement of the hand.
29. The plates were engraved, chiselled or embossed all over with floral and creeper motif or geometrical designs. A few made of watered steel were inscribed with verses from the holy *Qurān*.
30. The coat reached below the knees. It had broad, round collars and was opened in the front.
31. Its another variant was that in which several embellished plates were attached to it. Two such specimens are in the State Hermitage, Leningrad (USSR). Many coats are exhibited in the Tower of London Armouries, London; Wallace Collection, London; National Museum, New Delhi, and so on.
32. It was a quilted corselet. It is mentioned in the *Bābur-nāmā*, folio 161, tr. p. 252.
33. It was invariably of steel. These plates were sometimes rectangular while at other time they had squared basis with pointed tops. Sometimes these plates were hinged together and opened by pulling out one of the hinge pins. Each plate was ornamented with floral decoration in gold damascening.
34. Its another variant was a shirt completely of mail, without any attachment of plates. It was called *zirah kurtā*. The ones used by the foot-soldiers were long enough to protect a soldier up to the knee, but the *zirah kurtā* for cavaliers was shorter in length and had a slit on the back to facilitate riding.
35. These are also called 'shoulder cop' or 'shoulder piece'. The shoulders were further protected by the camails of the helmet.
36. A few larger ones, made of leather, covered a part of the shoulders. In India gorget as a separate piece of armour was not very common. The *kanṭha-shobhā* mentioned in the *Āin-i-Akbarī* was also a neck protector.
37. One type was a waist-belt of steel formed of a series of overlapping vertical strips of steel (about 6 inches in length) riveted to strips of leather. Its total length was 4 to 5 feet.
38. These plates were of many designs (circular, square, rectangular, etc.) and were damascened in gold. Its another variant was *yakbandī* which was usually a belt with slings for the sword and a hook to hang it from, when on foot. Sometimes it was a baldric.
39. An archer could shoot the arrows to a longer distance if he wore a *zihgīr* (archer's ring) but it required patience and skill.
40. The Tankuls of Assam wear heavy brass armllets with which they strike crushing blows downwards. Some ladies wear fighting bracelets which are still more dangerous. These are made of wide band of metal and are studded with several pointed spikes.
41. G.N. Pant, *op.cit.*, vol. III (1983), pp. 139-146, figs 391-428.
42. The word *hastaghna* mentioned in the ancient Sanskrit treatises (*cf.*, *Nirukta*, IX. 14; *Shrauta Sūtra*, III.10.7; *Rigvéda*, VI.75.14, etc.), was a bracer worn on left arm. The epic evidence shows that it was made of iguana skin. Some scholars (for example Rajendra Lal Mitra, *Indo-Aryans*, vol. I, p.304) assert that the metal gauntlets were used in ancient India.
43. Most of the authors have not distinguished *bājūband* and *dastānā*. G.C. Stone, *op.cit.*, pp.107-8, fig. 140, takes both of them as one and the same thing.
44. Its price during Akbar's period varied from 1½ rupees to 2 *muhars* (*Āin-i-Akbarī*, *Āin* 35, No.68).
45. A number of such *dastānās* are displayed in the museums of India. As a rule eight to ten splints, almost rectangular in shape, were attached to the mail. It was tied round the hand with the help of leather straps and buckles. Inside was padded.
46. Some Mughal paintings reveal that the plates projecting the fingers were articulated or moulded in the form of the fingers.

47. For various shoes see G.N. Pant, *op. cit.*, vol. III (1983), p.31, figs. 45 to 73.
48. For details see G.N. Pant, *Indian Arms and Armour*, vol. III (New Delhi, 1983), ch. VII.
49. Som Prakash Verma, *Art and Material Culture in the Paintings of Akbar's Court* (New Delhi, 1978), pp. 55-6. In the *Āin-i-Akbarī* (*Āin*, 35, No.71) it is spelt as *mozah-i-ahahī* and its price at that time varied from 1 rupee to 10 rupees.
50. *Āin-i-Akbarī* (*Āin*, 35, No.60) gives its price between one rupee to 10 *muhars*.
51. As many as five kinds of *rānak*s are discernible from the miniature paintings of the Mughal school such as *rānak* made of single piece; of leather or metal extending from the thigh to the shin; of two pieces joined together or made of lamellar or combined with plate etc. *Nimchā rānak* were for the young princes.

HELMET

618. 124/LIV-A *Helmet*—Hemispherical bowl surmounted with a quadrangular spike. The two plume-holders and nose-guard are damascened in floral, creeper and geometrical design in gold. Long chain mail of interlinked variety, very closely knit, are attached to the lower part of the bowl. The chain mail covers the entire neck, a part of the shoulders and has a veil for the forehead— all interwoven together. No inside padding. In a very good state of preservation.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date.	Early 18th century
Height with chain	43.0 cm
Diameter	20.4 cm

619. 173/LIV-A *Helmet*—Hemispherical bowl probably of Damascus steel surmounted with quadrangular spike. The helmet has two *kalgī*-holders and one nose-protector with screw device. Interlinked chain mail is attached to the edges for the protection of the neck and the shoulders. The borders of the spike are damascened in gold in floral and creeper design in *tehnishān* style. In addition there are six long leaves damascened in gold. The nasal protector, the *kalgī*-holder and the spike-holder are gold-plated. It has a stuffed inside padding.

Provenance	North India
School	Mughal
Date	17th century
Height with chain	38.9 cm
Diameter	18.9 cm

ARM-GUARD

620. 68/LVI *Arm-guard*—Probably of Damascus steel consisting of two curved steel plates hinged together. The upper part covers from wrist to the elbow, while the lower part is half of its size. The gauntlets of interlinked chain mail are attached to it. The borders all round are damascened in gold in floral and creeper design. It is in a good state of preservation. Inside padding is missing.

Provenance	North India
School	Late Mughal
Date	Early 18th century
Length	32.4 cm

621. 90/LVI *Arm-guard*—Same as No.68/LVI. The two (68/LVI and 90/LVI) form a pair.

622. 94/LVI *Arm-guard*—Consisting of two hemispherical plates hinged together; the upper part covers from wrist to the elbow and the lower part is half of its size. The gauntlets are made of faded velvet embroidered with *zari*. The

borders of the arm-guard are damascened all over in floral and creeper design in gold. The outer surface is embossed with floral, creeper and animal design. It is padded with velvet of maroon colour.

Provenance North India
 School Mughal
 Date 17th century
 Length 32.4 cm

623. 115/LVI *Arm-guard*—A pair of *bāzūband* or arms-guard; each consisting of a long plate covering from the knuckle to the elbow to which is hinged a smaller plate covering the wrist. The borders of both the plates are damascened in floral, creeper and geometrical design in gold. The central surface is embossed with frond design. The padding of red velvet, stuffed with cotton, is riveted to the plate. Two pieces of gauntlet, for the protection of the knuckle and the wrist, are of *zarī* stuffed with cotton and lined with green velvet.

Provenance North India
 School Late Mughal
 Date c. 1720 A.D.
 Length 32.1 cm

624. 246/LVI
 279/LVI *Arm-guard*—A pair of *bāzūband* or arm-guard; tubular in shape, of Damascus steel. The blade and some part of central surface is damascened in floral and creeper design in gold. Gauntlet and inside padding are of red velvet stuffed with cotton.

Provenance North India
 School Late Mughal
 Date c. 1720 A.D.
 Length 31.6 cm

CHĀRI-ĀINĀ

625. 91/LVI,
 to 93/LVI,
 116/LVI,
 628. 118/LVI *Chār-āinā*—*Chār-āinā* consisting of four steel pieces; one for the chest, one for the back and two for the sides. The front and the back pieces are rectangular, longer and of equal sizes. The two sides plates are shorter and have a cut in the upper side to facilitate its insertion under the arm. Front and back plates have six buckles for fastening; the side plates have only four buckles. The centre of all plates is damascened with sunflower and creeper design. The outer surface of each plate has embossed floral and creeper design. On the centre of each plate is made a square in gold damascening. The padding of velvet, badly damage, is stuffed with cotton.

Provenance North India
 School Mughal
 Date Closing years of the 17th century
 Length (maximum) 29.3 cm
 Breadth (maximum) 22.2 cm

629. 203/LIV-A to front
631. plate,
140/LIV back plate,
343/LIV-A side plate
for left,
side plate
for right
is missing.
- Chār-āinā*—A set of *chār-āinā* consistig of front, back and one side plate. Each plate, rectangular in shape, is ornamented with floral, creeper and geometrical design damascened in gold in *tehnishān* style. The central part of each plate is embossed with floral and creeper design. The side plate has four buckles while the front and back plates have six buckles each. The inside padding of each plate is of red velvet stuffed with cotton.
- Provenance Hyderabad
School Deccani
Date Early 18th century
Length (maximum) 30.0 cm
Breadth (maximum) 23.0 cm
632. 217/LIV-A to front,
635. 216-LIV-A back,
280-LVI left side,
282-LVI right side.
- Chār-āinā*—A set of *chār-āinā* consisting of front, back and side plates of Damascus steel. The borders of each plate are damascened in gold *koftgārī* in floral, creeper and geometrical design. The front and back plates have six buckles each while the side plates have four buckles each. The padding of red velvet is stuffed with cotton. One of the side plates is badly rusted.
- Provenance Hyderabad
School Deccani
Date c 1760 A.D.
Length (maximum) 29.5 cm
Breadth (maximum) 21.8 cm
636. 244/LIV to front,
639. 242/LVI back,
184/LIV left side,
153/LIV right side.
- Chār-āinā*—A set of *chār-āinā* consisting of front, back and two side plates. The border of each rectangular plate is damascened in two kinds of gold in floral, creeper and geometrical design. The front and back plates have six buckles each while the side plates have four buckles each. The padding of cotton stuffed with violet velvet is missing from one plate.
- Provenance Hyderabad
School Deccani
Date Early 18th century
Length (maximum) 30.8 cm
Breadth (maximum) 24.4 cm
640. 339/LIV to front plate,
643. 202/LIV-A back plate,
256/LIV-A left side
plate,
357/LIV-A right side
plate.
- Chār-āinā*—A set of *chār-āinā* consisting of front, back and two side plates; each plate has gold damascened floral and creeper design on its border, the central rectangular part being engraved with frond design. The front and back plates have six buckles while the side plates have four buckles each. The inside padding of red velvet is stuffed with cotton.
- Provenance North India
School Late Mughal
Date c 1700 A.D.
Length (maximum) 18.0 cm
Breadth (maximum) 14.9 cm

- 644.355/LIV
to 340/LIV
647.354/LIV
339/LIV
- A set of *Chār-āinā* consisting of four plates: one for the chest, second for the back and two for the sides. All the plates are rectangular in shape while the two for the sides have a semicircular cut on the top to facilitate insertion under the arms. The border of each plate is ornamented with floral, creeper and geometrical design in gold *tehnishān*. The side plates have four buckles each, while the front and the back plates have six buckles each. The inside padding of velvet is stuffed with cotton. Plate No. 355-LIV is for the front; 354-LIV for the back; 340-LIV for the left side and 339-LIV for the right side.
- | | |
|-------------------|-------------|
| Provenance | North India |
| School | Late Mughal |
| Date | c 1720 A.D. |
| Length (highest) | 25.4 cm |
| Breadth (biggest) | 18.4 cm |
648. 245/LVI
- Coat of mail*—A coat of chain mail of interlinked variety. Each ring is embossed with the names of Allāh, Mohammad, Fātimā, Hasan and Hussain ('Panjathan' in Arabic). The coat opens in the front and reaches up to the waist. The two sleeves reach little below the elbow. It has no collars. Slightly damaged and a few rings are missing.
- | | |
|------------------|--------------|
| Provenance | North India |
| School | Mughal |
| Date | 17th century |
| Length (highest) | 85.2 cm |

GLOSSARY

A

- Abbāsī*, A curved sword.
- Absad*, Cheek-piece of a helmet.
- Absar*, Leather shield.
- Adagā*, A shield or parrying weapon of Arabic origin. The name is derived from Arabic *el-darakāh* meaning 'a shield'.
- Afghan Knife, A dagger having a straight, heavy, single-edged blade tapering to a point.
- Āftābgīr*, A royal ensign.
- Āftāb-i-Ālam*, One of Aurangzēb's shields meaning 'Sun of the World'.
- Ahadī*, Cavalry troops in imperial establishments.
- Ailettes*, Cavalry trooper in imperial establishments.
- Aiatul Kursī*, 'Poem of Throne' from the holy *Qurān*.
- Akbar-nāmā*, Written by Abul Fazl Allāmī, Akbar's official chronicler and biographer.
- Aketon, Heavily padded garment worn under the hauberk of mail, also called 'wambais' or 'acketon'.
- Akhtāchīs*, An officer over horses.
- Ālam*, A royal standard.
- Albēgī*, Master of the horses during Mughal period.
- Amāl*, Manufacturer or artisan.
- Amud*, Winged or flanged mace.
- Anazāh*, Short infantry spear.
- Anf*, Nasal of the helmet.
- Añkusha*, Elephant-goad.
- Añkushadhara*, The holder of elephant-goad, also called *mahāut* (elephant driver).
- Arābā*, Gun-carriages or baggage-carts employed by Bābur at the battle of Pānīpat in 1526 A.D.
- Arabesque, Decoration in colour or low relief with fanciful interlinking of leaves; scroll work.
- Arad*, Blade of a spear; a pole arm.
- Archer's Ring, A ring worn on the thumb of the left hand to protect it from the pressure and friction of the string of the bow.
- Arciones, The high peaks, front and back, of the war-saddle. They were sometimes covered with steel plates which were beautifully decorated.
- Armed, Armoured knight or a soldier carrying arms.
- Armet, A kind of a closed helmet that conforms to the shape of the head and covers it completely.
- Arming Doublet, A padded garment worn under armour to protect the person from blows, strains and chafing.
- Arming Girdle, The sword belt worn over the armour.
- Arming Points, Spurs worn with armour.
- Arm Knife, A small knife carried on the left arm near the shoulder with a loop.
- Armour, Defensive covering for the body worn in fighting.
- Armourer, Manufacturer of armour.
- Armoury, Place where arms and armour are kept; arsenal.
- Artak-i-kajem*, Horse armour; a quilted trappings for a horse usually forming a foundation for one of mail.
- Assad Ullāh, The most celebrated of Persian swordsmiths.
- Aug*, The arrow for shooting the birds.
- Aventail, Movable front piece of helmet made like a transparent veil.

B

- Bābur*, The word means 'panther' in Turki language.
- Bacinet or Basinet, A light helmet.
- Back and Breast, A kind of body armour.
- Badge, A device to distinguish the followers of a king or a chieftain. It was the origin of armorial insignia and coat of arms.
- Bājūband* or *Bazūband*, A plate defence for the forearm with or without an extension for the head.
- Bakhtar-zillō*, Scale armour.
- Bālātang*, Surcingle of silk for horse.
- Baldric, Collar or shoulder-belt worn as a support for a sword or simply as an ornament.
- Bullam*, A short spear with a broad head.
- Baltū*, Battle-axe.
- Banded Mail, A variety of mail showing alternate rows of links and solid discs.
- Bandolier, A baldric or waist-belt.
- Banner, A flag hung from a horizontal pole attached to a staff.
- Barachhā*, Cavalry lance completely of metal.
- Barding, Armour for horses.
- Batkha-kalaghī*, Crest of the helmet fitted with heron feathers, also called *bagta kalagī*.
- Batman*, A Turkish weight of 13 to 15 pounds. This means the strength demanded for rounding the bow. It refers to draw-weight.
- Baydah*, Egg-shaped helmet.
- Bedough*, A mystic symbol with a square divided into four parts, each containing even numbers.
- Belt Sword, A sword with such a flexible blade that it could be worn as a belt.
- Bhanju*, A defensive coat with a gorget (throat guard) attached; also called *bhanjee*.
- Bichāq*, A dagger with a straight single-edged blade and a straight handle made of two plates of ivory riveted to the flat tang.
- Bit, A bar put inside the horse's mouth in order to control it.
- Black Armour, The armour that was blackened or painted to prevent it from rusting.
- Boss, A projection from the flat (or nearly flat) surface on the central part of a shield.
- Bracer, Archer's guard or a covering for the left wrist to protect it from the recoil of the bowstring.
- Brassard, Plate armour for the entire arm.
- Breast-strap, A broad strap crossing a horse's chest and fastened to the saddle.
- Bridle, A device to control the horse. It consists of headstall, bit and rein.
- Brigandine, Suit of fabric or leather fitted with metal plates and gilt studs.
- Buckler, A shield with a handle (or two close together) in the centre and held in the hand.
- Bukhtar*, A solid breastplate.
- Burk*, Mughal cap.
- Burnishing, In this process the miniature painting, after it was well finished, was laid face down on a hard smooth surface and then firmly rubbed with an agate or jade.
- Butted, The rings (or links) of the armour not riveted but only brought together.

C

- Calthrop or Caltrap, Spikes planted in the ground to prevent the advance of the cavalry.
- Camail, A guard of mail for the sides, neck and the shoulders.
- Cantle, The rear peak of a saddle.
- Caparisoned, Horse's trappings, equipment or outfit.
- Cavalier, Horse-soldiers; an armed horseman.

- Cavalry, Horse-soldiers; cavaliers.
 Cavalry Helmet, Helmet composed of mail and plates and preferred by the cavaliers.
Chamchāq, A battle-axe fastened to a saddle.
 Chamfron, A defence for a horse's head; frontlet.
 Chape, A metal tip that strengthens the end of the sheath or the termination of a belt or a girdle. In heraldry it is called 'crampet'.
Chaprās, Literally brooch or buckle, Another name for *goshā-gīr*.
Chār-āinā, 'Four mirrors'. The name given to the Indo-Persian (or Perso-Indian) cuirass consisting of circular or rectangular plates secured round the body with straps or hinges.
Charkha, Crossbow.
Chār-qāb, A square shawl of cloth of gold bestowed as a mark of rank and distinction.
 Chasing, Decoration work done with a tool or weapon on the front surface of the metal part; embossing; engraving.
 Chauss, Defences from knee to foot made of mail.
 Chaussons, Armour for the upper part of the legs or thighs.
 Cheek-flaps, Same as 'cheek-pieces'.
 Cheek-pieces, Metallic plates hung from the sides of the helmet to protect the ears and the side of the face.
 Chern, Decorations in black on silver or other light metal. It is much used in Caucasus where it is called *niello*.
Chickāk, A Turkish helmet.
Chihaltā, 'Forty fold coat'; a fabric coat of many layers worn by soldiers. See also *chiltāh*.
Chiltāh, A corrupt form of *chihaltā*.
Chiltā Hazār Māshā, 'Coat of thousand nails', a coat of many layers of fabric faced with velvet and studded with thousands of small gilt nails arranged in pattern.
Chirwā, A small Mughal shield.
 Chiselling, Trimming; to cut to shape with a chisel tool.
Chobdār, Mace-bearer.
Chhurā, A knife or a dagger, the smaller ones called *chhurī*.
 Coat Armour, Any military garment with the armorial ensign of the wearer embroidered on it.
 Coat of arm, Symbols of knights on their armour.
 Coat of mail, Any mail garment that covers the body, strictly one that opens down the front.
 Coif, Mail hood.
 Crest, The ornament surmounting a helmet; *kalaghī*.
 Cresting, The ornamentation of arrows.
 Crinet, Armour for the upper side of a horse's neck.
 Crupper, Armour for the hind quarters of a horse.
 Cuella, Armour for the underside of a horse's back.
 Cuirass, A defence for the body, originally of leather as the name implies but now applicable to any kind of body armour.
 Cuirassier, Horse soldiers wearing cuirass.
 Cuirbouilli, The armour made of boiled leather.
 Cuisses, Defenses for thigh.
 Curb, Bit.
 Cushion, Mass of soft material stuffed into cloth or silk covering.

D

Dagger, A general name for all kinds of knives usually worn at waist or hip.

Damascening, Decorating a metal by inlaying; an art of encrusting one metal on the other.

Damascus, The capital of Syria famous for its special steel blades hence 'Damascus steel'.

Daraka, A shield usually made of hide. See also *tur* or *tūra*.

Daraqāh, A small, convex leather buckler.

Dastānā or *Dastānāh*, Arm guard; plate defences for the fore arm with or without extension for the back of the hand.

Delhīshāhī, A variant of hilt consisting of disc pommel, oval grip, short and stubby quillons and triangular langets.

Dhābdār, Shield maker.

Dhāl, A general name for a shield, buckler, target, etc.

Dhāl-baftā, A shield made of fifty folds silk.

Dhūp, A sword having a broad, stright, long, double-edged blade and a padded basket hilt.

Dirk, A dagger or short sword.

Dīvān, A collection of poem written by Bābur and sent to Pulād Sultān in 1519.

Dodhārā, Double-edged sword or dagger.

Doublet, Close fitting body garment worn by men, with or without sleeves and short skirts.

Dubalghā burkī, Same as *dubalghā*.

Dumchī, Crupper (for horse) of leather covered with velvet and small metal bosses.

E

Ear-flaps, Ear-guards; parts of a helmet for the defences of the ears.

Elephant-goad, The instrument with which to guide, goad or drive the elephant; *ankusha*.

Embossing, A style of decoration. It is changing the relative levels of different parts of a piece. It can be done by raising some part or sinking the other.

Enamelling, Glass-like opaque or semi-transparent coating on metallic surface for ornaments; *mīnākārī*.

Enarmes, Loops on the back of shield through which the arm is passed.

Ensign, Originally it included all flags, banners, standards, guidons, pennons, pencils and banderolls. Now it signifies the national flag carried on a vessel.

Epaule de Mouton, A large curved guard worn over the regular armour to protect the right arm in tournaments, as elbow guard protects the left.

Epaulettes, Shoulder-cop also called 'epaulets', and 'pollets'.

Espallieres, Shoulder-guards.

Eye, In archery it refers to the loop spliced on the bowstring.

F

Fabric Armour, Quilted or the defensive covering made of fabric.

False Edge, In single-edged swords a few inches of the back near the point is frequently sharpened to make them more effective for thrusting. This portion is known as 'false edge'.

Filigree, Ornamental work of a fine gold or a silver or copper wire formed into delicate tracery.

Finger-guard, The portion of a sword that protects the fingers from a cross-cut. It is formed by recurving the quillons towards the pommel or by connecting the two (quillons and pommel) by a plate, a bar, etc. In its elaborate form it becomes a basket hilt.

Flag, A flag is hung directly from a vertical staff while a banner is fastened to a cross-bar hung from the staff.

Flanchard, A defense for a horse' flank generally suspended from the saddle; plate armour for horse's side.

Flight, Feathers for arrows.

Foible, The part of the blade near the point of the sword.

Foining Weapons, Thrusting weapons.

Foliage, Representation in art as leaves excluding petals and flowers, etc., foliate; foliar; leafage.

Forte, The part of the sword nearest the hilt.

Fronde, Leaf-like decoration formed by union of stem and foliage; leaves and stems but not flowers.

Frontal, Armour for a horse's head.

G

Gad, An implement used to goad an elephant.

Gajbāga, A variant of elephant-goad.

Gardani, Armour for horse's neck.

Gauntlet, Armour for the hand.

Gauntlet Sword, The Marāthā *paṭṭā* sword, the hilt of which is gauntlet.

Gerrhes, A Persian shield.

Ghagrī, Rattle of metal tied on the legs of the horse.

Gharichā, A variety of coat.

Ghāsiyā, A saddle cloth popular in Bokhārā.

Ghughwāh, A mail coat with a hood permanently attached.

Ghurcharhes, Armoured Sikh cavalry.

Gig or Gigue, A strap for a shield.

Gilding, Covering with thin layer of gold or silver laid on as gold leaf; *mulammā*.

Girth, The band or strap holding a saddle in place.

Glancing Knob, Large bosses on the poyrel of a horse to deflect lance thrusts, also called 'bossoirs' or 'pezoners'.

Godhā, A leather bracer worn by bowmen.

Goshā-gīr, An instrument used to straighten the middle portion of the bow.

Greaves, Leg armour which covered from the knee to the ankle.

Guige, A strap with which the shield was hung through the shoulder and neck.

Gulūband, Strips of velvet flowered with silk for mane.

Guptī, Concealed weapon.

Guptī-kard, It was a knife for thrusting. It was kept in a sheath and had a gauntlet.

Gurz, A mace with steel spikes fitted on the globular head; harness; working equipments of horse or other animals; defensive armour.

H

Hāshiyā, Borders. The miniatures of the *Bābur-nāmā* are without borders, though most Mughal miniature paintings have beautiful margins.

Hauberk, Skirt or coat reaching to the feet and with long sleeves, worn over the gambeson; a kind of overcoat.

Headstall, A part of bridle.

Helm, Armour for the head; same as helmet.

Helmet, Head covering or armour for the head; *shirastrāṇa*.

Hide, Animal skin, raw or dressed.

Holster, A case fastened to the belt or saddle in which to carry a pistol or other small weapons.

Horn Armour, Armour made of horn.

Horse Furniture, The equipments of a horse; harness, trappings and armour.

Howdāh or *hawdāh*, The wooden saddle placed upon the back of an elephant; an elephant housing.

Humāyūn-nāmā, A chronicle of family affairs written by Gulbadan Bégam (daughter of Bābur) in 1587 A.D.

IJ

Imbricate, Same as 'scale armour'.

Inlay or Inlaying, To glue or paste one metal on another.

Jagāwat, An implement used in goading an elephant.

Joghnoḷ, It had a steel handle with a head shaped like the beak of a bird.

Jāmā, A long shirt or coat of cotton worn usually over the armour or as a sole defence.

Jamadhar, A typical Indian thrusting dagger with H-shaped handle and a sharp, pointed, triangular blade.

Jauhar, The watering of the blade.

Jaushan, Coat of mail.

Javelin, A throwing spear.

Jazérant, Armour made of strips of horn, leather or metal fastened to colth or leather; same as *jajérānt*.

Jibā, A quilted coat worn beneath a mail shirt or as the sole body defence; also called *jibbāh*.

Joshan, A kind of Mughal breastplate.

Junāh, Shield made of laminated wood and covered with leather; also called *junān*, *mijann*, *mojinn* and *junnāh*.

K

Kajam, Horse armour of mail, see *artak-i-kujam*.

Kalaghī, Ornament surmounting a helmet; same as crest.

Kamar-band, Waist-belt.

Kamehā, A Turkish whip.

Kamr, Belt carrying flasks.

Kanṭha-shōbhā, A gorget; armour for the neck and throat.

Kanṭōp, Close-fitting helmet of one piece.

Kard, A straight-bladed dagger with a straight hilt and no guard.

Kardang, A variant of *goshā-gīr*.

Kārkhānās, Workshops, studios.

Karud, A straight-bladed *pešqabz*.

Karwā, Mantlet of raw hide stuffed on both sides with wool or cotton.

Kashkā, A chamfron or horse helmet, same as *qashqāh*

Kawnas, A tall conical helmet.

Kazaghand, A mail shirt covered and lined with fabric.

Khalkha, Cane shields used by the Seljūk Turks.

Khāndā, A sword having broad, straight blade widening toward the point.

Khanjar, A slightly curved, double-edged dagger.

Khapwāh, A dagger with a curved double-edged blade with a strong rib.

Khār-i-māhī, It consisted of several steel spikes projecting on both sides of a straight handle.

Khatt-i-Bāburī, A new style of writing introduced by Bābur.

Khawdhā, A helmet.

Khérā, A round Mughal shield.

Khogir, Saddle; red velvet.

Khud, One piece Indo-Persian (or Perso-Indian) helmet also called *khod*, *khudh*, *khuddāh Islāmiā*,

Khukarī or *Kukrī*, The Gurkhā sword.

Khyber Knife, See Afghan Knife.

Kilij, The Indo-Turkish sword.

Kimkhāb, Indian brocade, also spelt as *kincob*, *kimkob*, etc.; brocade used extensively for lining armour.

Kindjal, A straight-bladed dagger with a groove.

Kirk Narduban, The 'forty steps' in allusion to the transverse markings of fine grey or black watering.

Knee Guard, Armour generally for horse's knee.

Knife, A common weapon with many varieties.

Knob, Rounded protuberance on the surface of shield.

Kodā, Whip.

Koftgārī, The decoration of iron with patterns in gold and silver either inlaid or overlaid; commonly called 'false damascening'.

Korāzin, A Turkish cuirass of plates connected with mail.

Kulah-khud, A helmet.

Kulah-zirah, Indo-Persian helmet entirely of mail or of mail connected with small plates.

L

Lacquering, Gold coloured varnish of shellac dissolved in alcohol used as coating on shield or other objects.

Lagām, Rein

Lagseam, A Mughal bit.

Lamallac, Thin plate, scale, layer, splint or film of bone or metal.

Lamellar, Armour constructed with small rectangular plates, each pierced with a regular series of holes and laced into horizontal rows with leather thongs or cords, the rows or laminations thus created then being connected at each other with vertical laces.

Laminations, Strips of metal or other strong material connected by various means to permit freedom of movement to body or limbs.

Lazim dik, A stiff bow.

Lining, Layer of different materials inside a garment, shield, armour, etc.

Lip, The edge of the shield curved upwards.

M

Mace, A helmet-breaking weapon. It had a globular head and short handle.

Mādū, Marāthā parrying shield fastened with a pair of horns.

Mahāut, Elephant driver.

Mahtāb-i-ālam, One of Aurangzēb's shields meaning 'Moon of the world'.

Mail, A defence constructed of rings or links of wire. The most usual construction for this defence is the one made with circular rings, each one passing through four others, the joints being riveted, welded or butted, after linking up.

Mail Armour, Armour made of interlinked mail.

Malʿuzāt-i-Timūrī, Autobiography of Timūrlane (1336-1405 A.D.)

Mantlet, Large shield supported from the ground and used as defence in attacking fortified places.

Mārū, Same as *mādū*; also see *singautū*.

Matchlock, A gun with lock in which match is placed for igniting powder; also called *torédār bandūk*.

Mighfar, A segmented coil of mail.

Mihmāz, Spurs

Missiorka, A shallow Turkish skull-cap of iron with long pendent mail defence for head and neck for wear over a cap and head-cloth. Although of Turkish origin it was more popular in eastern Europe.

Moza-i-ahnī, Iron socks covering the foot and foreleg.

Muhnāl, Upper fitting of the sheath.

Munjaniqs, Instrument used in siege warfare.

Musket, Infantry soldier's hand gun.

Musketeer, Soldiers armed with musket.

Myāngār, Sheath-maker

N

Napthā or *Naft*, Fire-arrows used by Arab invaders in India.

Naqārkhānā, Kettle-drum house.

Narasing-moth, A kind of dagger referred to in the *Āin-i-Akbarī*.

Narm-dik, Easy bow.

Nasal, A nose-guard in the form of a strip or bar attached to the helmet.

Neck Guard, Upright plates on the shoulder-guard for the defence of the neck.

Nocks, In archery the notches for the string are called nocks.

Nose Guard, Same as nasal.

O,P

Ondanique, Name of the Indian steel referred to by Marco Polo. It is also called *andanicune a adaine*.

Ozan, A Persian helmet.

Padak, Ornament of metal for the neck of the horse.

Padding, The lining inside the armour.

Pahrī, A Mughal shield of cane or bamboo; also called *phārī*.

Pākhar, Elephant armour.

Parrying Shield, Shield used for thrusting; see *mārū*.

Pattā, A Marāṭhā gauntlet sword.

Perforated Shield, Shield having opening for the user to see the enemy without being exposed.

Peshqabj, A dagger having a T-sectioned straight blade, wider near the hilt and without a pommel a guard.

Phārī or *Pahrī*, A cane shield of Mughal period.

Pinnacle, Small ornamental turrets ending in a pyramid or cone; natural peak; climax.

Pistol, A hand fire-arm used with one hand.

Pistol Shield, Shield fitted with a pistol.

Piyāzī, Rugged mace; a club shaped like an onion.

Plate Armour, Armour made of steel plates as distinguished from mail, scale, brigandine or *jezerc* armour.

Plume, Feathers used to decorate a helmet.

Plume-holder, A tube fixed on the helmet to hold a plume.

Poitrel, The armour for horse's chest.

Pommel, The knob on the end of the sword or dagger or on the butt of a pistol. It was named from the resemblance of many to an apple; the front peak of a saddle.

Prick Spur, Pricking instrument with sharp point, worn on horsemen's heel.

Pulowar, A sword whose hilt has drooping quillons, a hemispherical pommel and no counter-guard

Purdāh, A ventail

Q

Qabak-i-maidān, A shooting range for archers.

Qarā Khurāssān, The watered steel, nearly black, with fine undulations proceeding like water.

Qarā Tabān, The watered steel, brilliant black or more grey in tone with larger watering.

Qashqāh, Frontlet for the horse.

Qawans, Crest of a helmet.

Qilich, Sword.

Qirbān, Bow-case exclusively for bows.

Quaddārā, A broad sword like a long *kindjal*.

Qur, The weapons for the personal use of the emperor.

Qur-khānāh, The imperial department which manufactured arms and armour for the Mughal emperors and their army.

R,S

Rāg, Leg armour made of small plates of iron and chains.

Ricasso, The squared part of a sword blade, next to the hilt, sometimes enclosed by the *pus d'ane*.

Riqāb, Iron stirrups; also called *rikāb*.

Rivet, Nail or bolt for holding together metal plates, etc., its headless end being beaten out after passing through two holes.

Roshani-i-ālam, One of Aurangzēb's shields meaning 'light of the world'.

Saddle, Rider's seat placed on the back of the horse.

Sāghdāq, Mughal quiver.

Saif, A broad-bladed sword with a peculiarly hooked pommel.

Sāk, A variant of spear. It has a small leaf-shaped pointed blade with two globular balls immediately below it.

Sāyā-i-ālam, One of Aurangzēb's shields meaning 'shadow of the world'.

Sāz, Bridle with neck and breast straps.

Scale Armour, A defence constructed with small plates of metal, hide, horn or wood, secured by one edge to a foundation of leather or fabric placed in horizontal rows overlapping each other both sideways and downwards and usually imbricated like the tiles of a roof or the scales of a fish.

Sefin, Archer's ring.

Selārā, It was like a *barachhā* with a grip in the centre from where it was held.

Shabraque, A housing or saddle cloth for a cavalry horse.

Shagreen, Leather of ass.

Shāh-nāmā, Book written by Firdausī.

Shām, Simple Damascus watering.

Shamshīr, Strongly curved sword of watered steel blade. The hilt is simple and light with a single cross-guard and a pommel projecting at one side.

Shashbur, Same as *shash-par* – a mace with six flanges on it.

Shast or *Shast-ā-wēz*, Thumb shield used on the left hand in archery.

Shield, Various shaped and sized detached pieces of armour made of leather, wood or metal and worn on left arm to receive thrust or stroke of weapons.

Shikārband, Game-strap; bunches of string covered with velvet to be fastened to the corners of saddle.

Shirmāhi, Walrus ivory.

Siklīgar, Armourer

Silēkhkhānā, An armoury.

Sipar, Persian name for a shield.

Sipar-i-chākh, Large infantry shield used during siege.

Sipar-i-karg, Shield of rhinoceros (*gāindā*) hide.

Skin, Hide of flayed animal with or without the hair.

Solret, Plate armour for the feet.

Sosun-pattā, A sword having the blade like a 'lily leaf'.

Spike, The surmounting part of a helmet.

Splinted Armour, Armour made of splints or narrow plates riveted together.

Spur, Pricking instrument with point or rowel worn on horsemen's heel. }

Stirrup, Rider's foot-rest usually consisting of iron loop with flattened base hung by a strap.

T

Tabaqāt-i-Bāburī, A Persian text written during Bābur's time by his secretary Shaikh Zain-ud-dīn of Khawāf.

Tabar-jaghnoī, A combination of *tabar* (battle-axe) with *jaghnoī* (beak-shaped head) on the opposite side.

Tabar-zin, Saddle hatchet.

Tahnishān, True damascening; also called *tehnishān*.

Tail-piece, An arched plate riveted to the crupper of horse armour; also called 'tail guard'.

Talwār, A curved sword with a typical Indian hilt which has short, heavy quillons and disc or mushroom-shaped pommel.

Tang, The part of the edged weapon that is inserted in the handle.

Tarkash-band, Quiver-bearers.

Tarkash-bīla, Quiverful.

Tawāchiyān, Mace-bearers.

Tēghā, A sword with a broad curved blade and a hilt like that of a *talwār*.

Tehnāl, Chape

Tehnishān, True damascening.

Tilwā, A cavalry shield of the Mughal period.

Tipūchāq, A variety of horse.

Top, A helmet, whether a single mail hood, one of mail and plates, or of one piece of iron.

Trapper of mail, Mail armour for a horse.

Tugh, Banner.

Tulghumā, A mode of fighting adopted by Bābur in the battle of Pānīpat and Khānwā. Literally it means 'turning parties'.

Tunic, A short linen shirt reaching to just above the knee.

U, V

Umbo, A central boss on a shield to give room for the hand.

Umbril, A movable brim projecting over the eyes from the front of a helmet.

Unarmed, A warrior without any armour. A soldier equipped with any number of weapons was not 'armed' unless wearing armour.

Ushnīsha, A turban.

Ustād Kabīr, A celebrated gunmaker and armourer of the court of Akbar.

Vambrace, An armour to protect the fore-arm. When first introduced in Europe in the 14th century A.D. they only covered the forearm from wrist to elbow.

Varnishing, Applying resinous solution to wood, metal, etc., to give hard, shiny, transparent surface.

Velvet, Closely woven fabric wholly or partly of silk with thick short pile on one side.

Visor, The piece attached to the helmet to protect the face. It originated by joining the earflaps and the nasal and was fixed. Later the name was applied to movable piece.

W, X, Y, Z

Waist-band, Band round waist from which belt or petticoats, etc., might be suspended.

Waist-coat Armour, A cuirass made of three or four pieces hinged together; a body armour.

Wākīāt-i-Bāburī, Autobiography of Zahir-ud-dīn Muhammad Bābur also called *Bābur-nāmā* (History

of Bābur).

Wootz, Damascus steel; Indian watered steel.

Yakbandī, A sword-belt with slings for the sword and a hook to hang it from, when on foot.

Yāsiqilich, Broad sword.

Yātāghan, A slightly curved Turkish sabre, also popular with the Mughals, without quillons, often elaborately decorated with silver, brass, coral, etc.

Zafar-nāmā, Book written by Sharaf-ud-dīn Yāzī.

Zafar-takiyā, A short sword with crutch-shaped pommel.

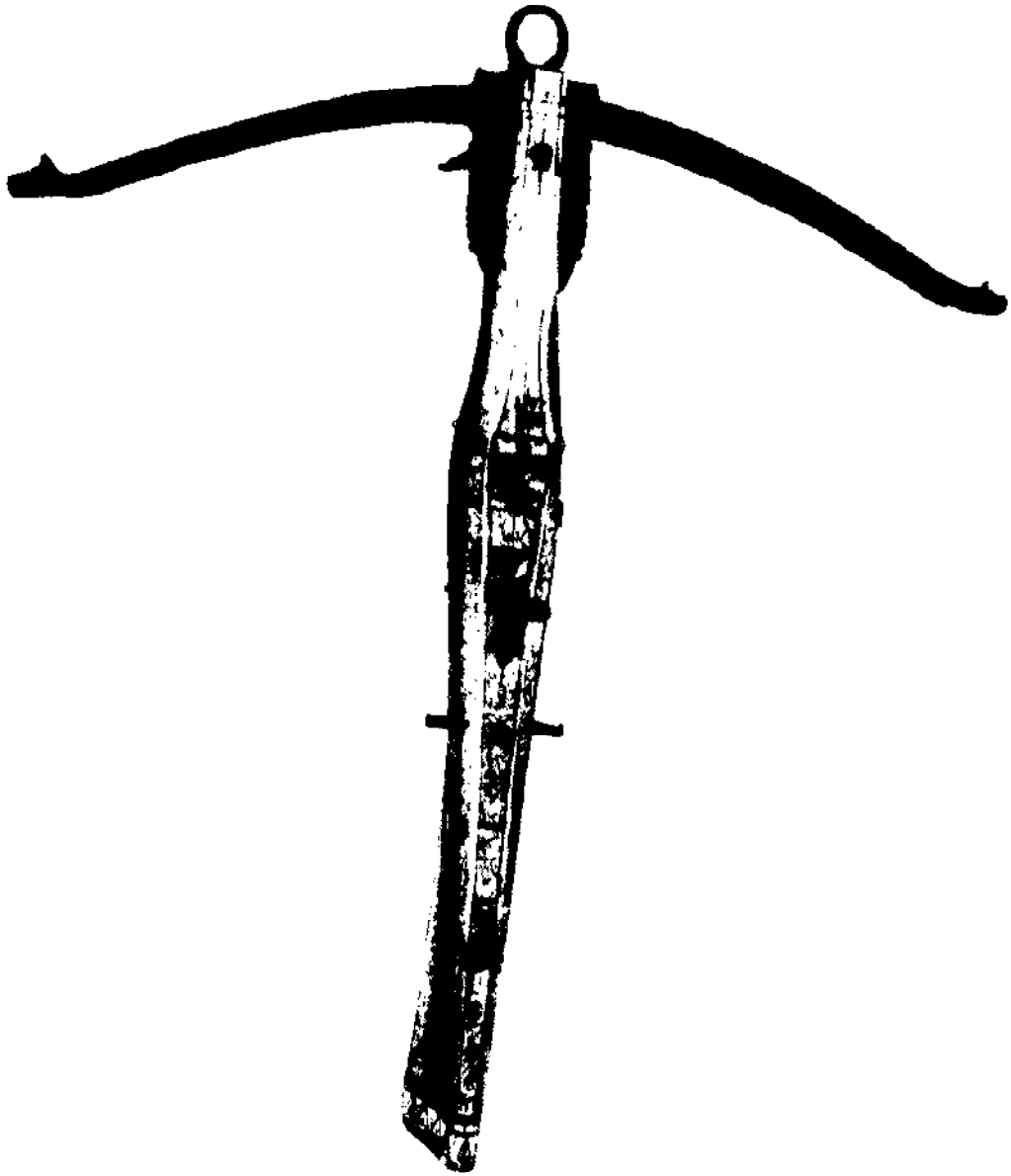
Zahirud-dīn-Muhammed, It means 'Defender or Faith' in Arabic language.

Zarnishān, True damascening.

Zerband, Martingale of red silk net.

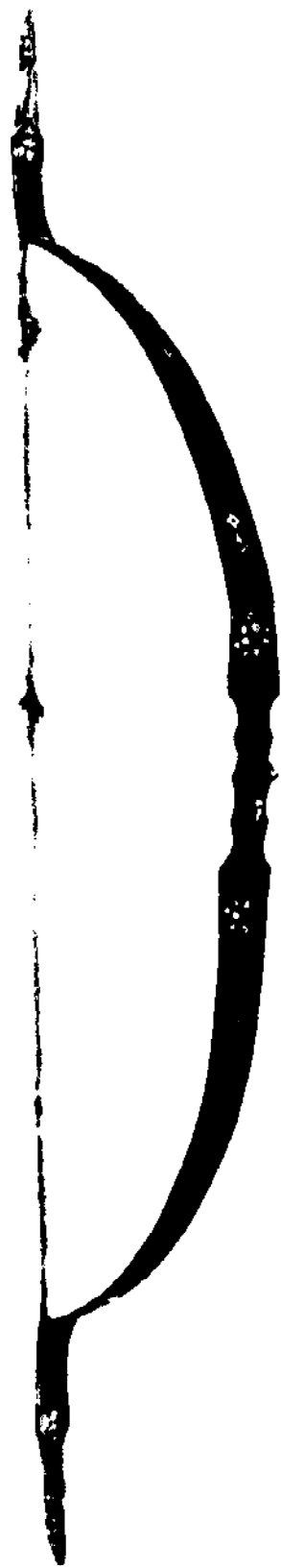
Zin, Saddle

Zirih Bakhtar, A mail coat or shirt; also called *zirih bakhtar* or *zirih bukhtar*.



137/LIV

Cross Bow



284/LIV

Steel Bow



228/LIV-A

Talwār



92/LIV-A

Sosun-pattā





157/LIV



Firangi



176/L.VI

*Pattā*

241/L.IV-A

*Pattā*



313/L.IV-A



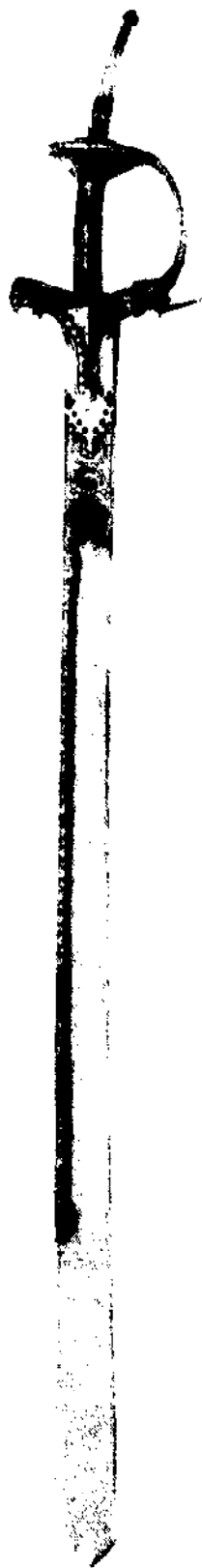
Fencing Sword



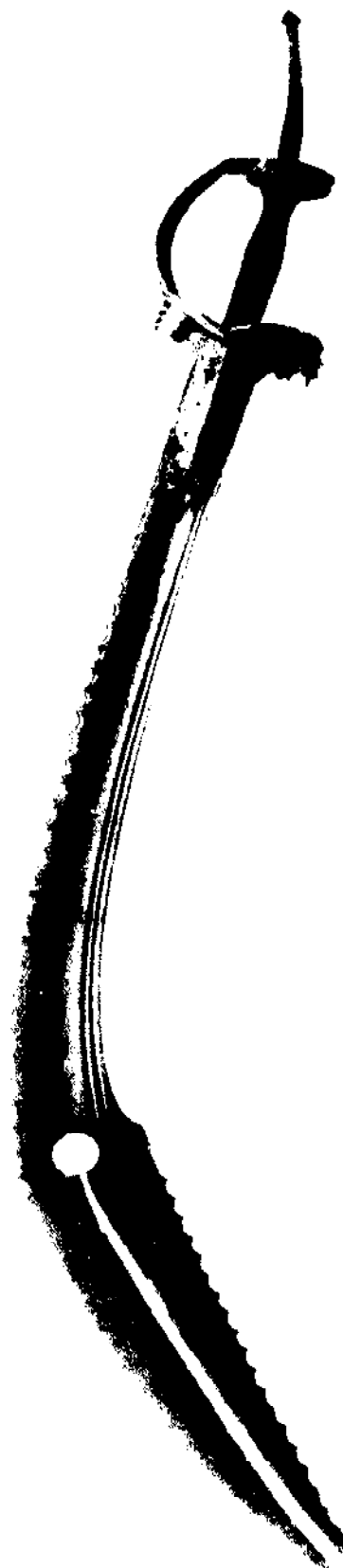
369/L.IV



Pulovar

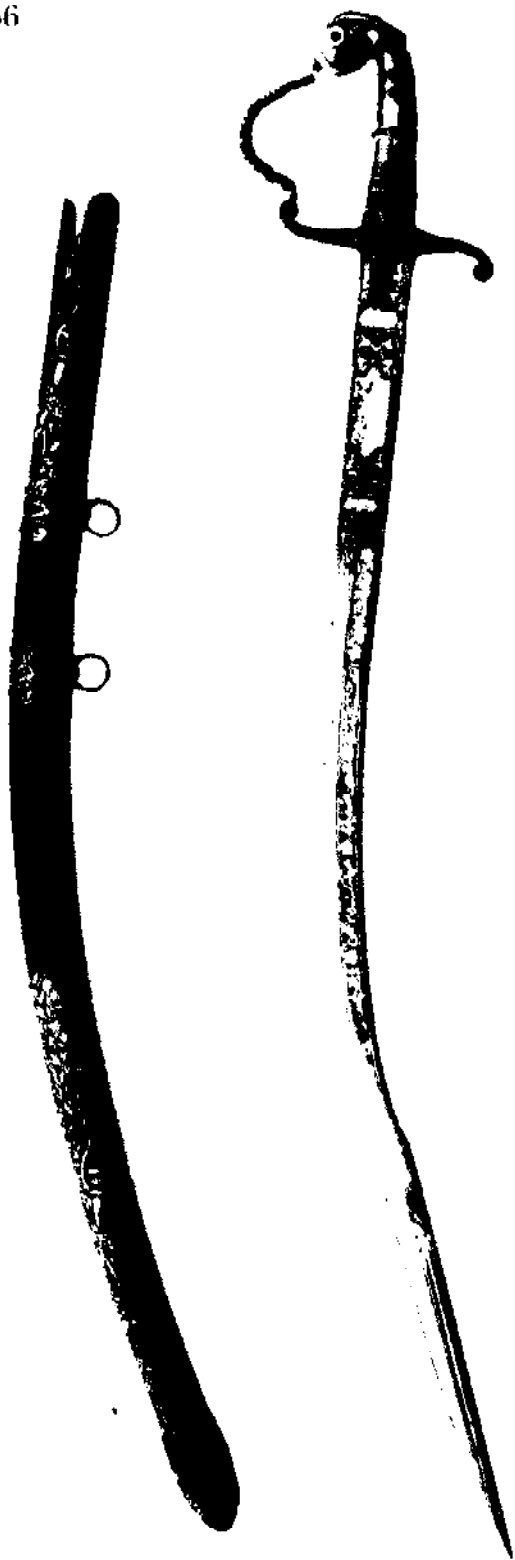


59/L111

Khândā

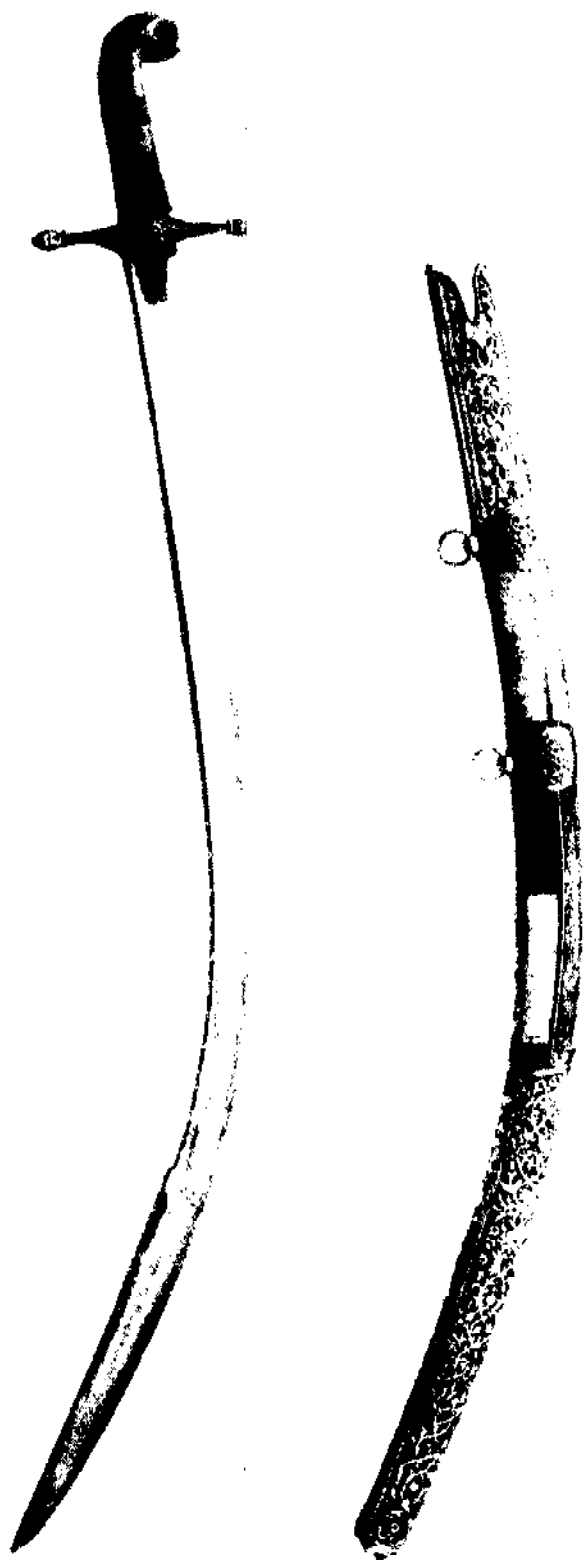
68/L111

Zulfiqār



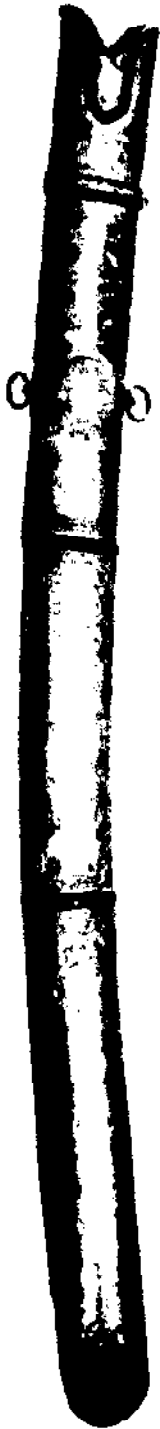
276/L.IV-A

Yātāghan

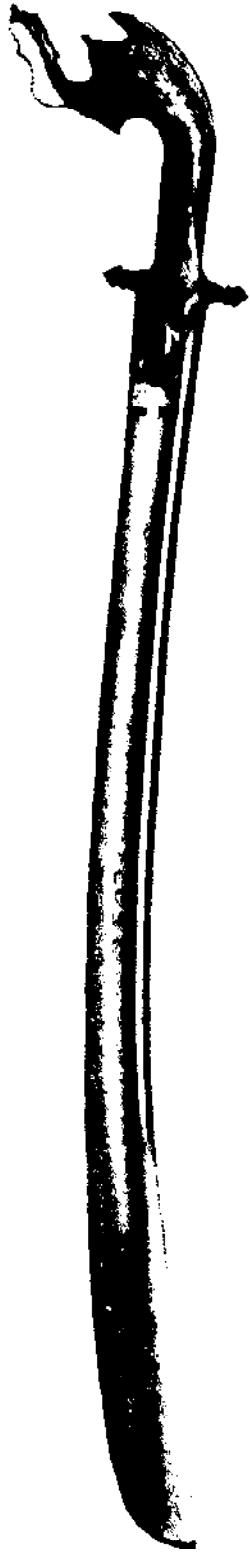


288/L.IV-A

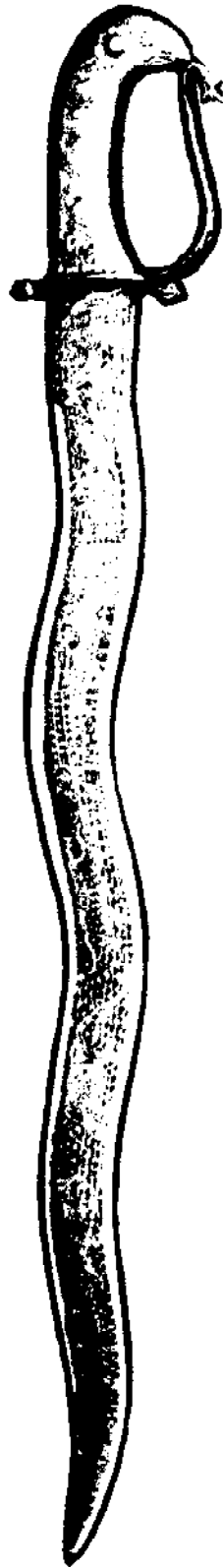
Yātāghan



318/LIV-A



Saif



367/LIV



Nāgan



171/LIV *Kard*



187/LIV



Kard



230/LIV *Kard*



110/LIV-A

Jambiä



112/LIV-A

Jambiā

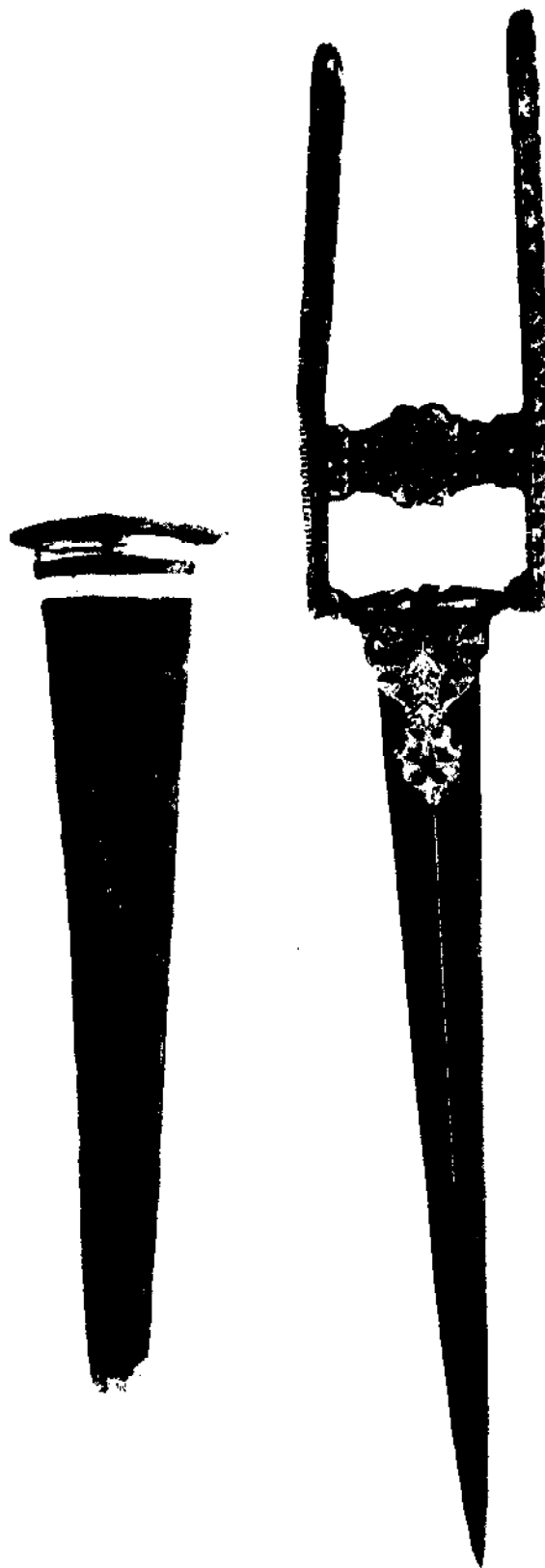


168/LIV-A *Jambiä*



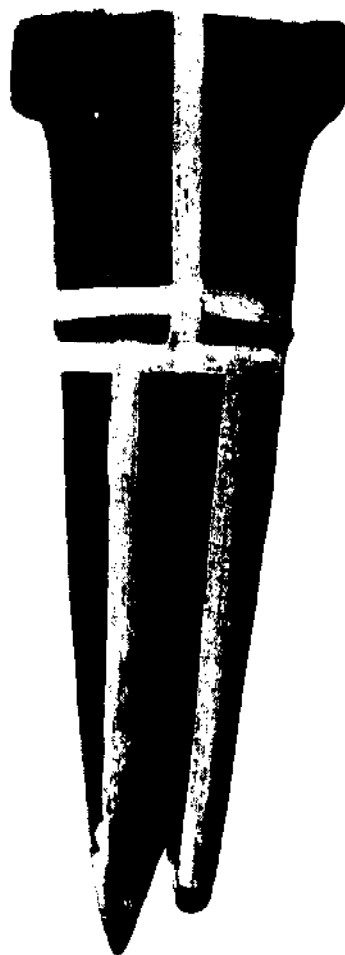
180-LIV-A *Jambiä*





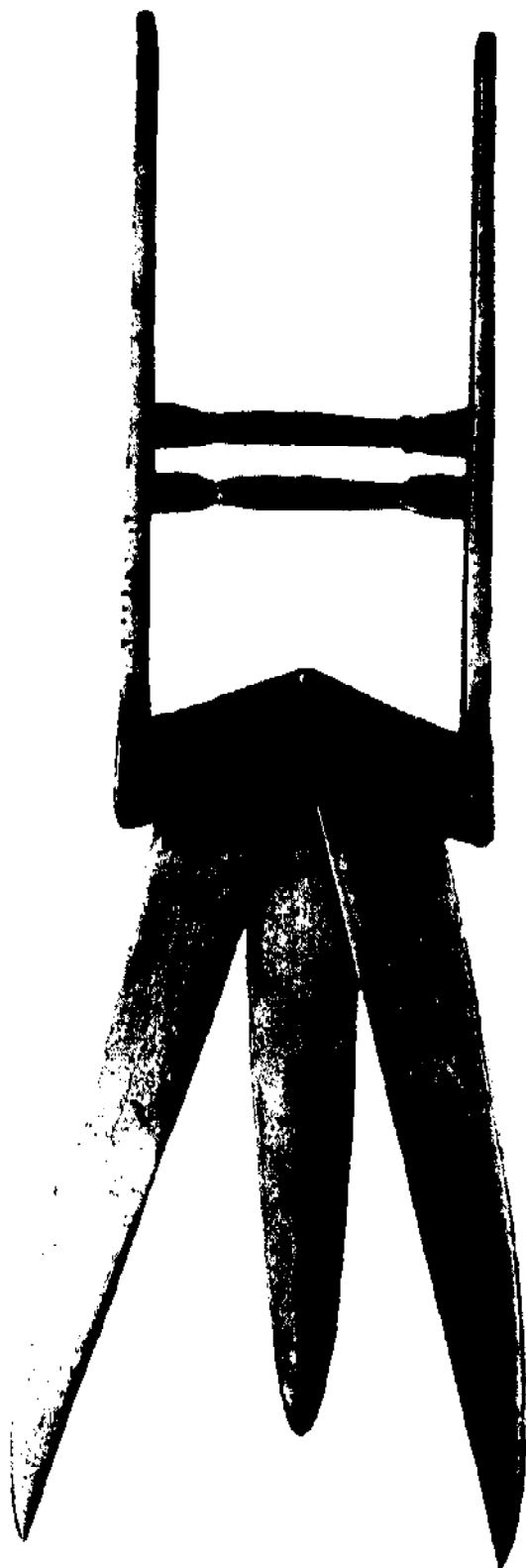
8/LV

Jamadhar



60/LV

Jamadhar



135/LIV-A

Jamadhar



97/LIV

Kindjal



377/LIV

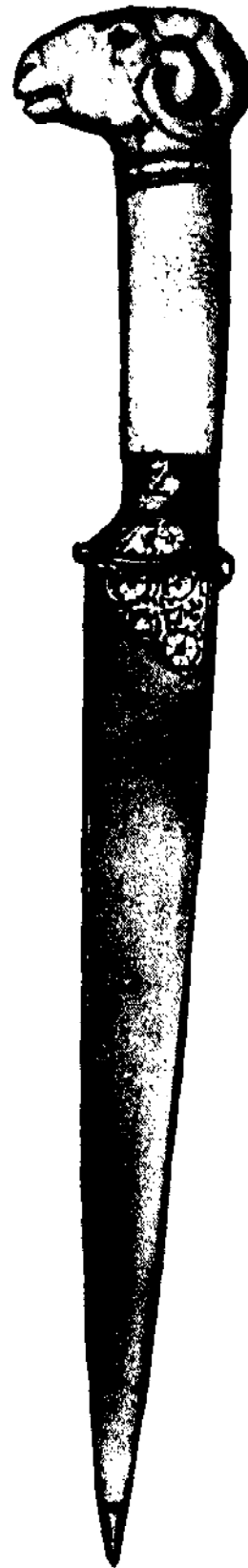
Kindjal



130/LIV-A



Peshqabz



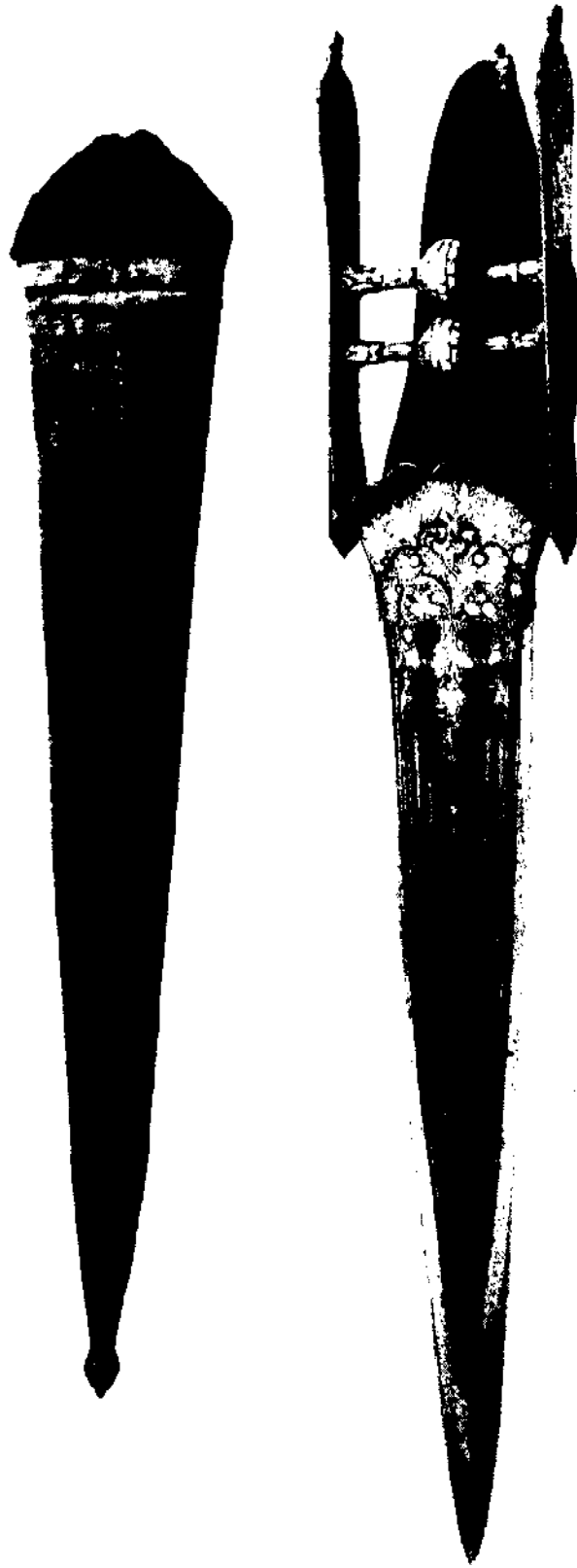
222/LIV

Peshqabz



10/LIII

Khanjarali20/LIII *Chilānum*



21/LIII

Bodā Jamadādū

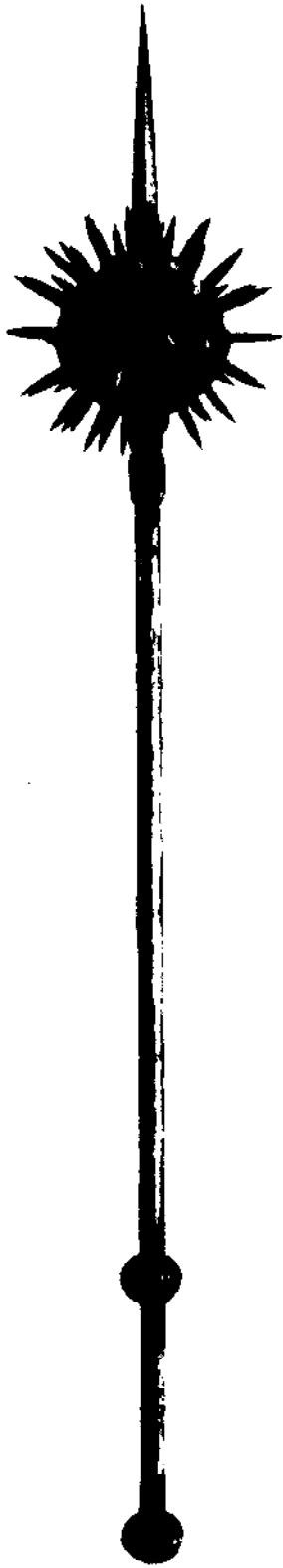


55/LIII

*Bhuj*

22/LVI

Mace



82/LIII

Gurz



215/LIV-A

Gurz



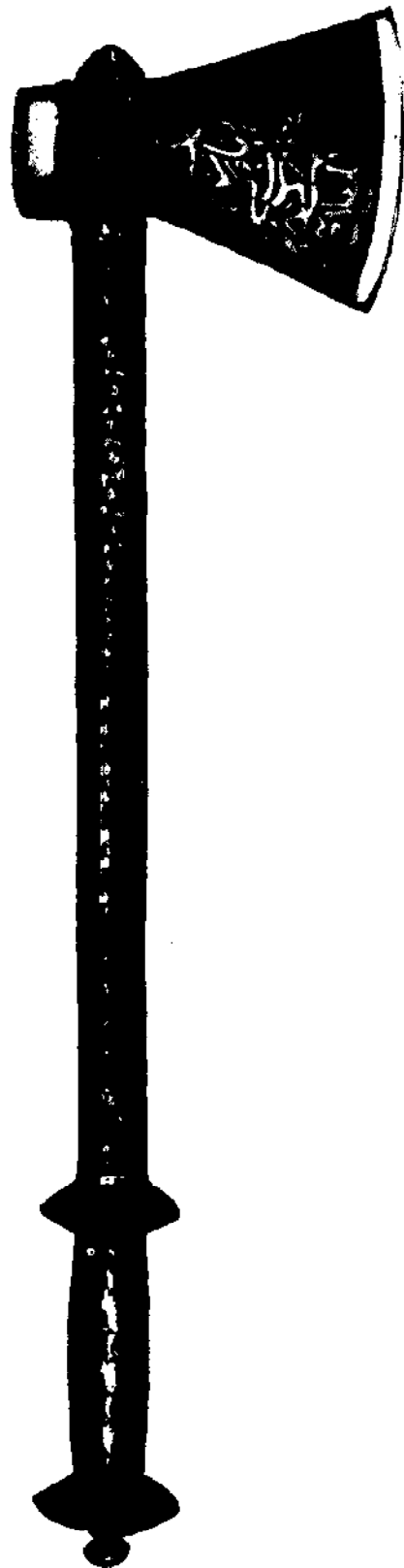
24/LVI

Tabar



172/LVI

Tabar



215/LIV

Tabar

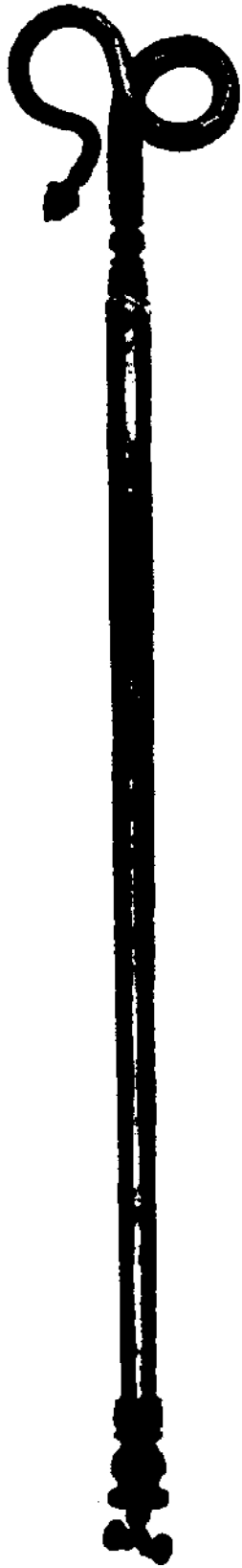


53/LIII

*Sāng*

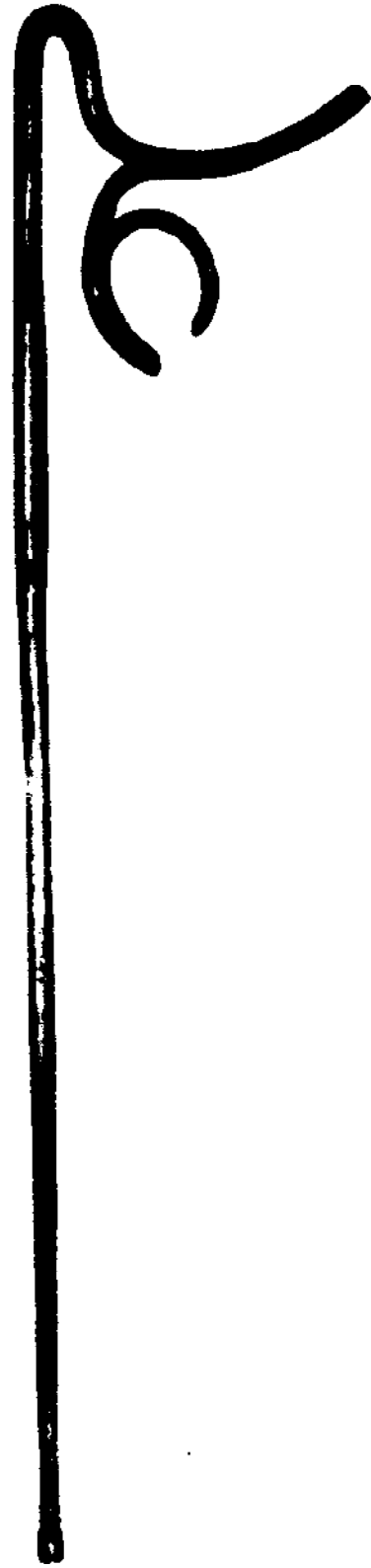
107/LVI

Elephant -goad



301/LIV-A

Zafar Takiyā

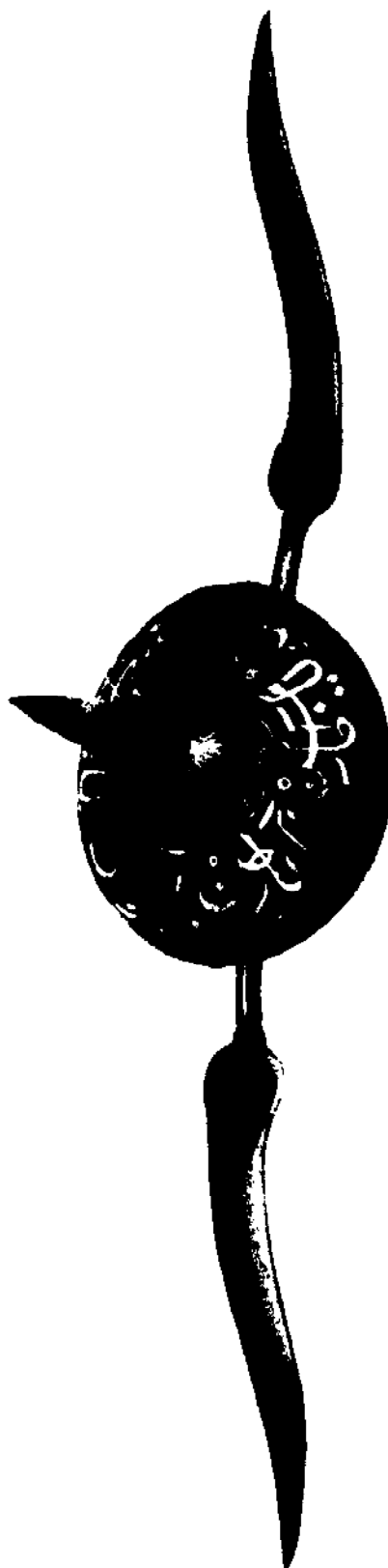


306/LIV-A

Zafar Takiyā



298/LIV-A

Pushtakhâr

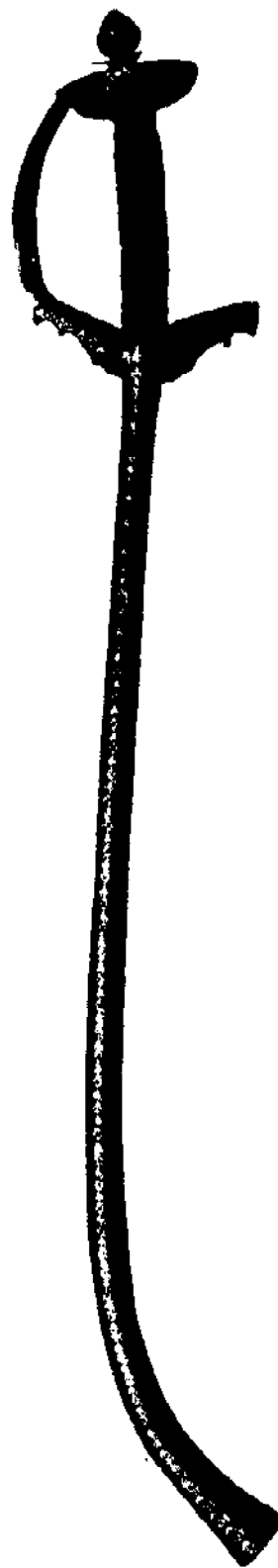
263/LIV-A

Mârû



71/LV

Khukari



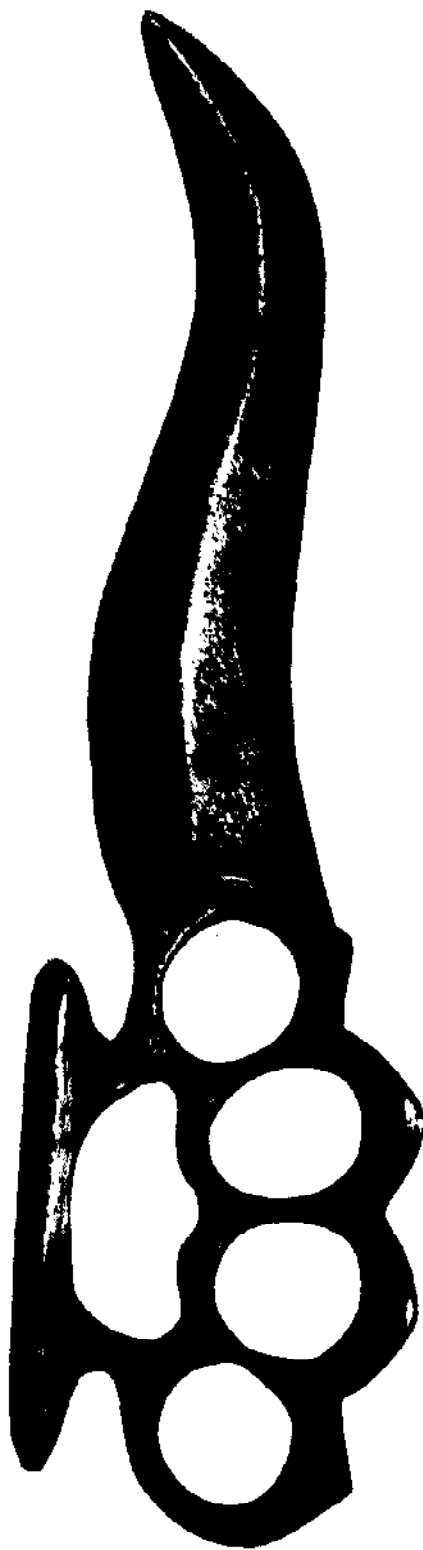
316/LIV-A

Rod



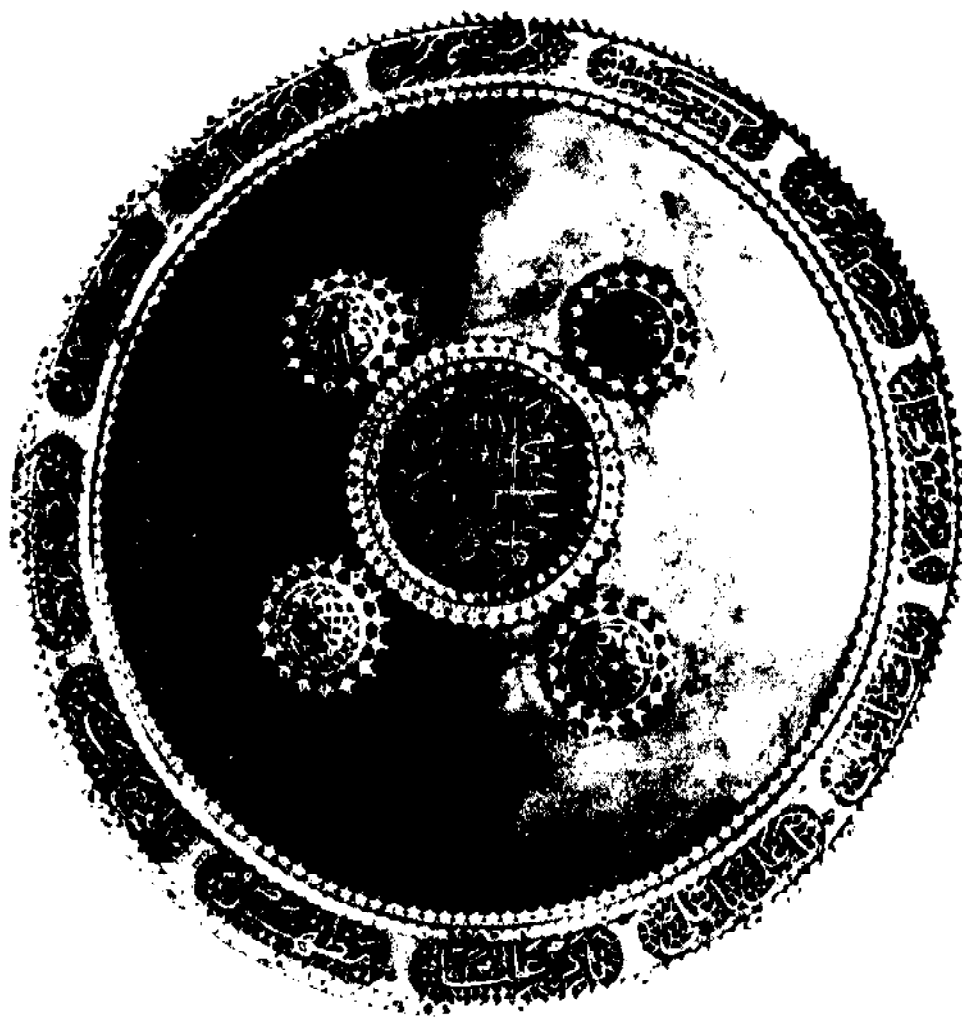
361/LIV-A

Lock (Scorpion-shaped)



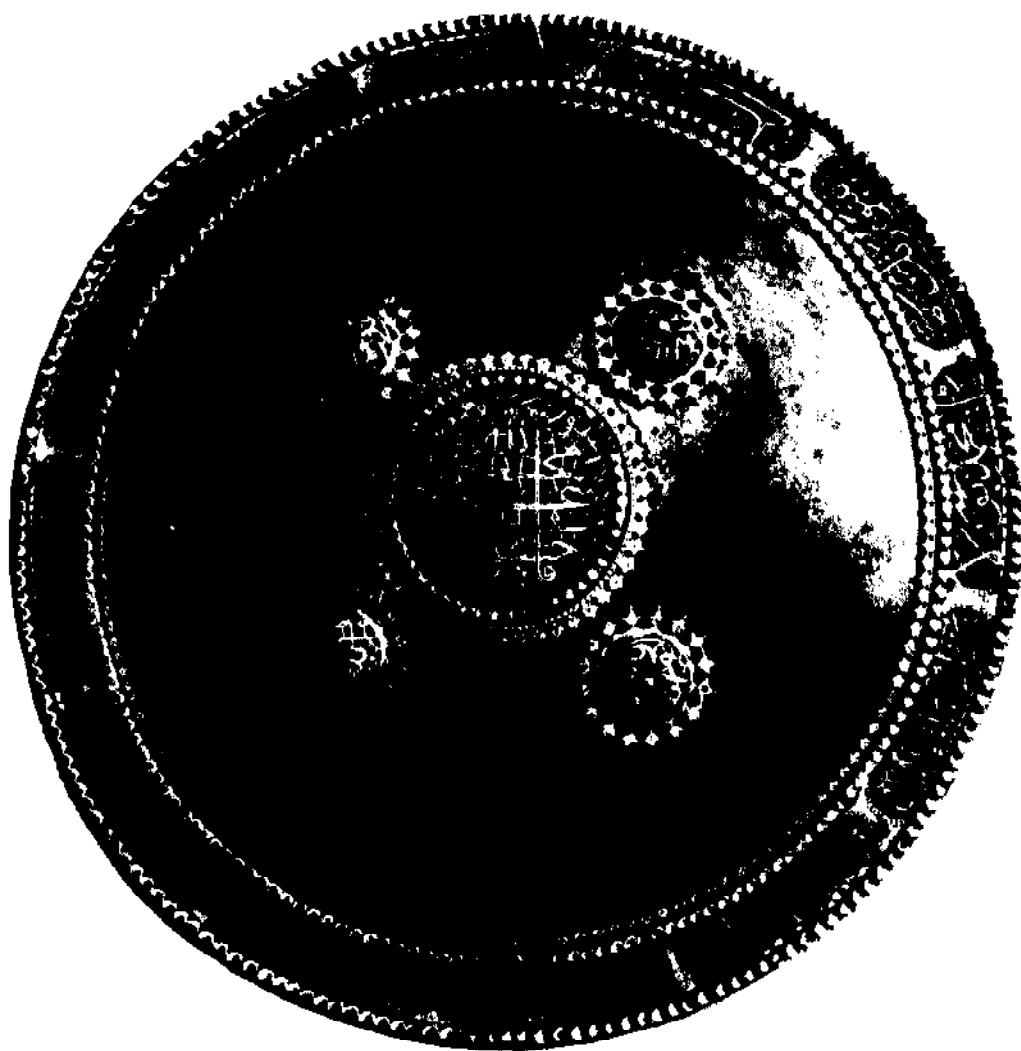
70.21

Panjā



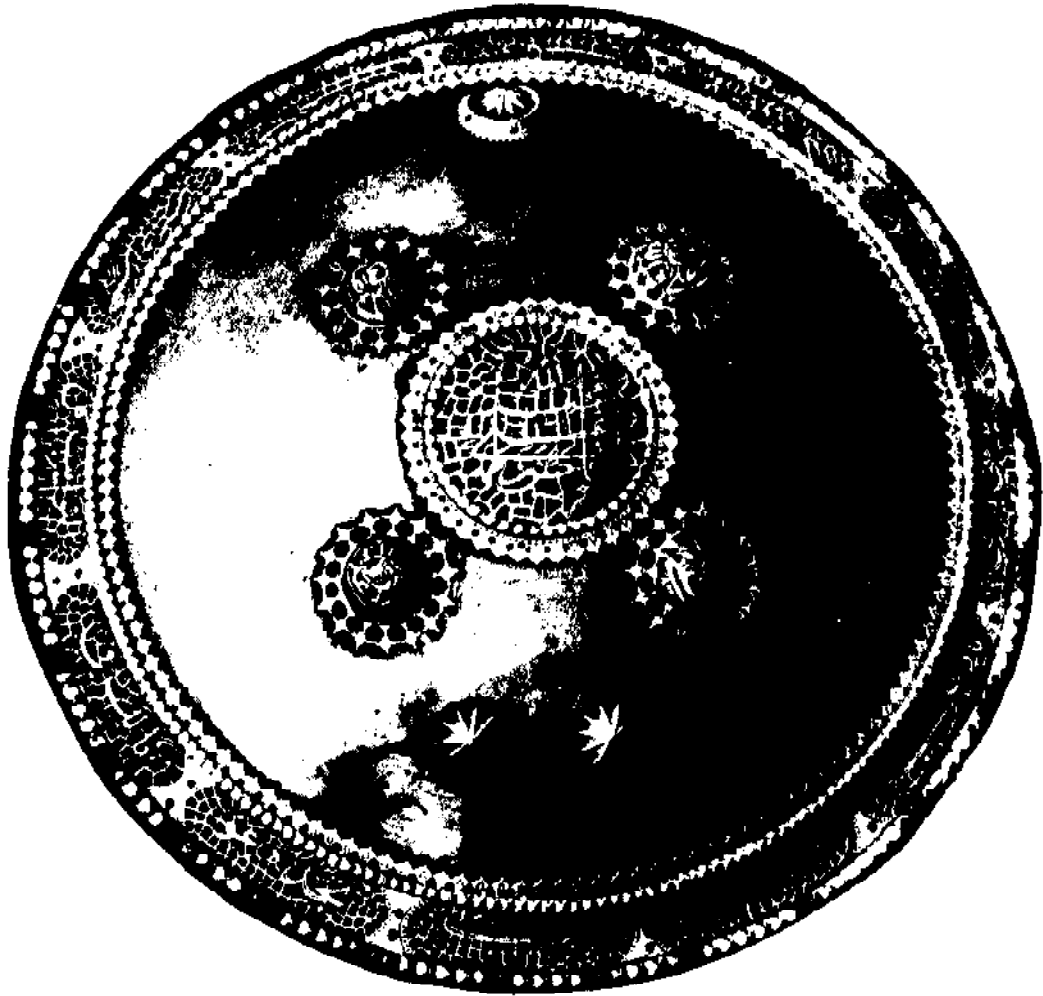
25/L.VI

Shield



125/LVI

Shield



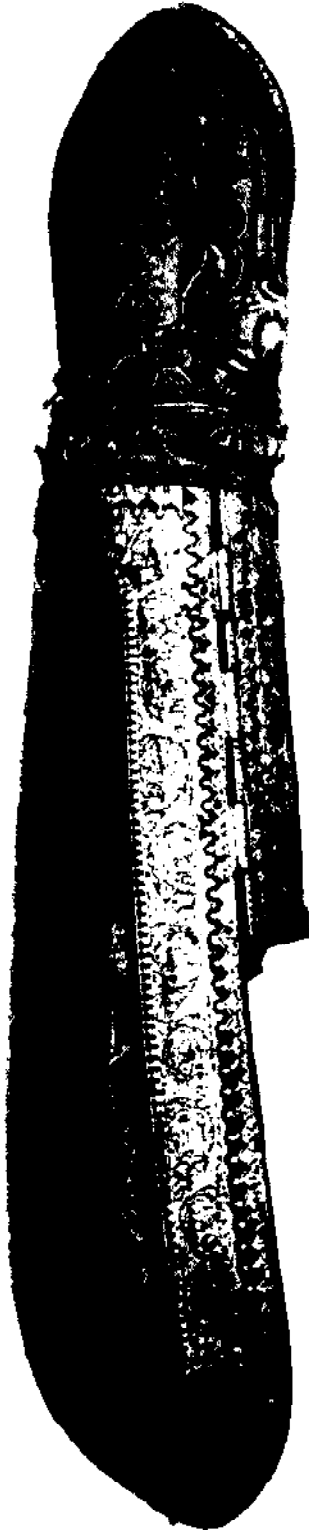
217/LVI

Shield



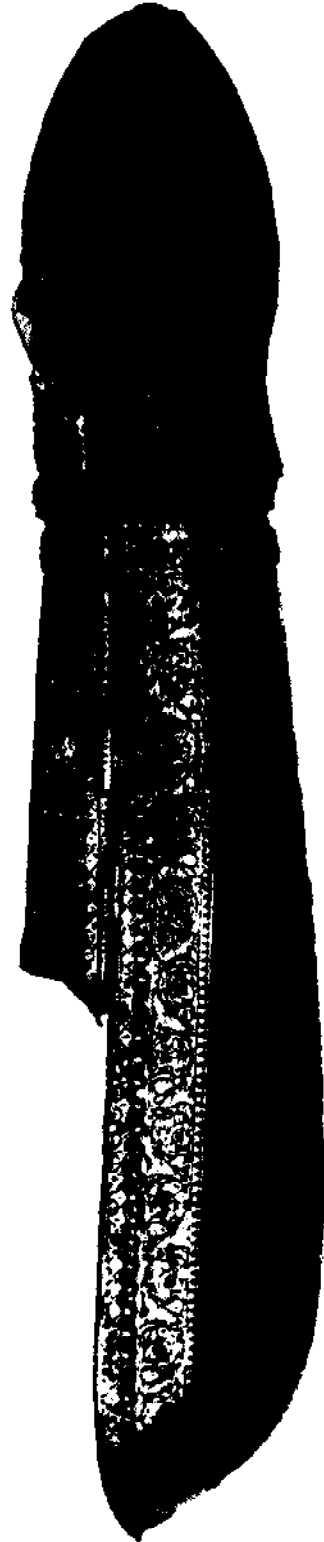
173/LIV-A

Helmet



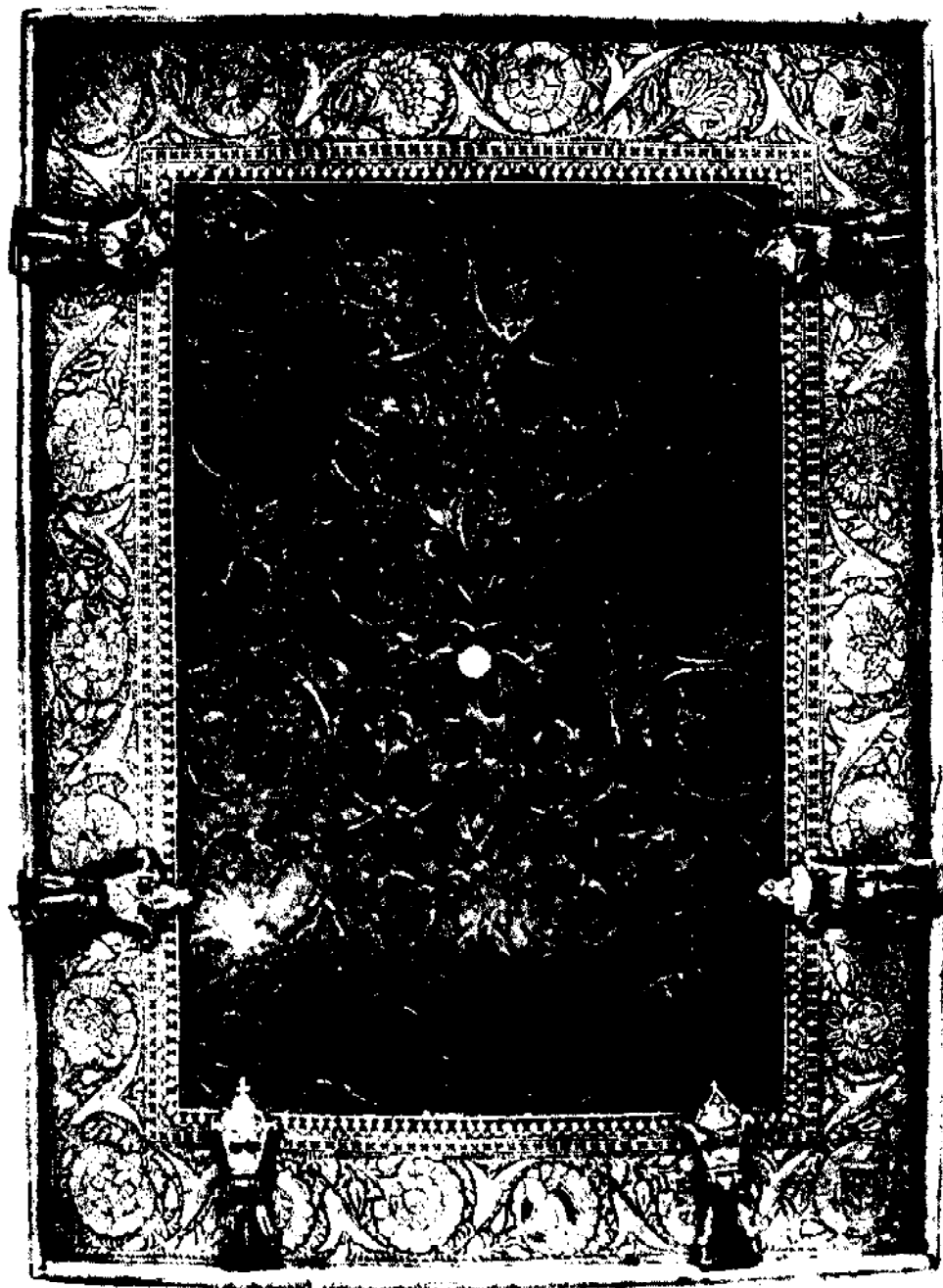
115/LVI

Arm Guard



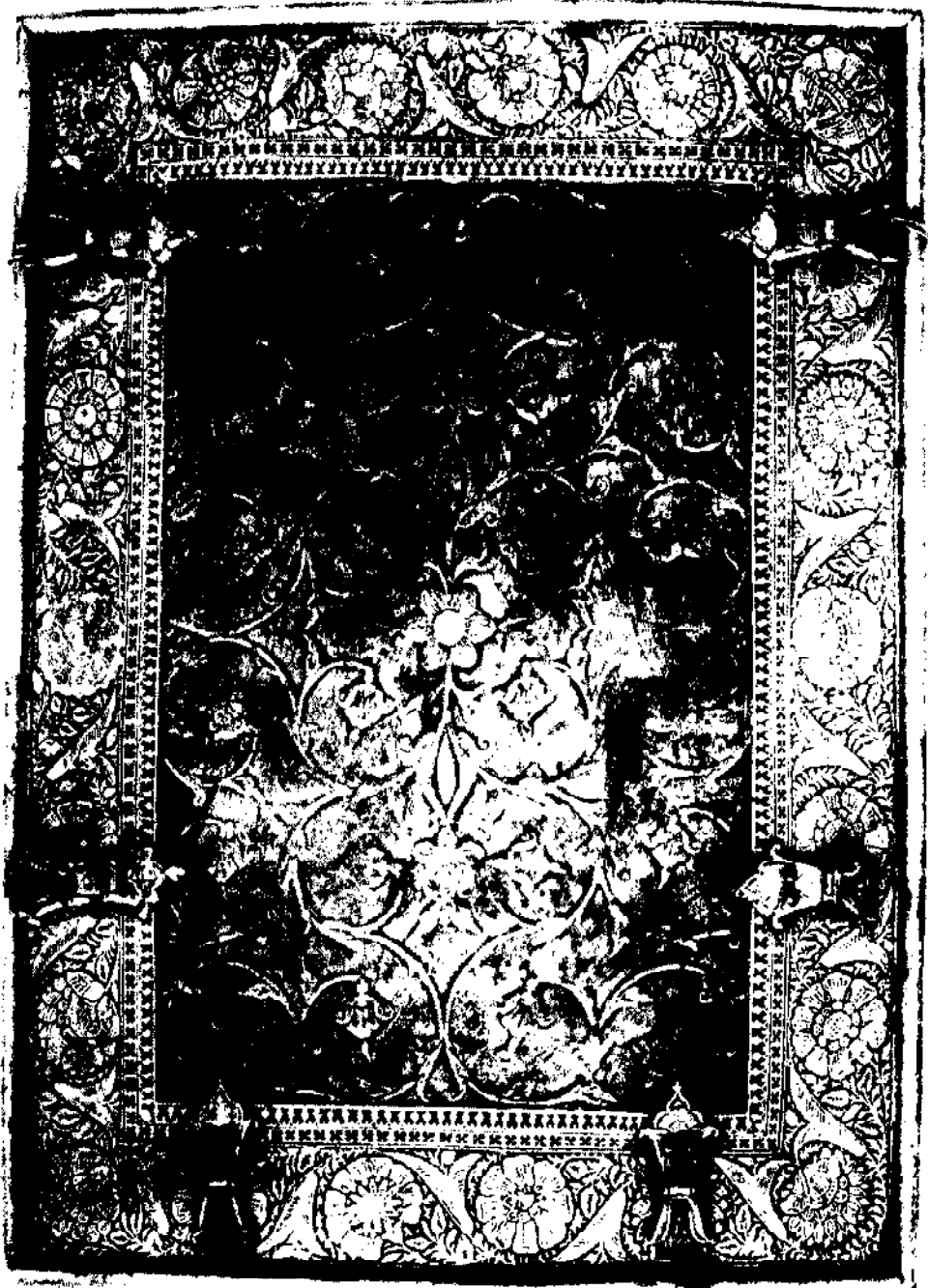
94/LVI

Arm Guard



203/LIV-A

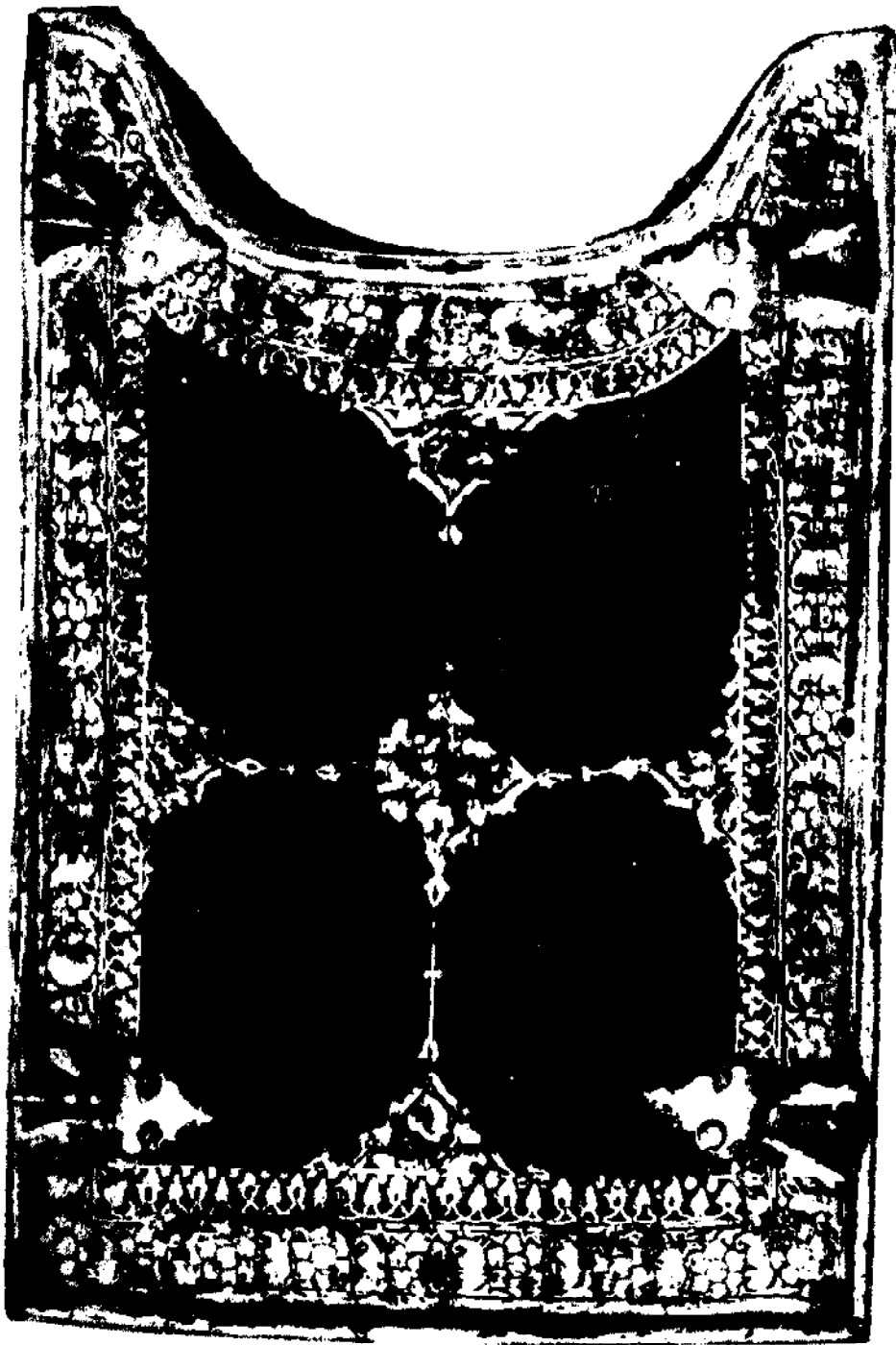
Chār-āinā





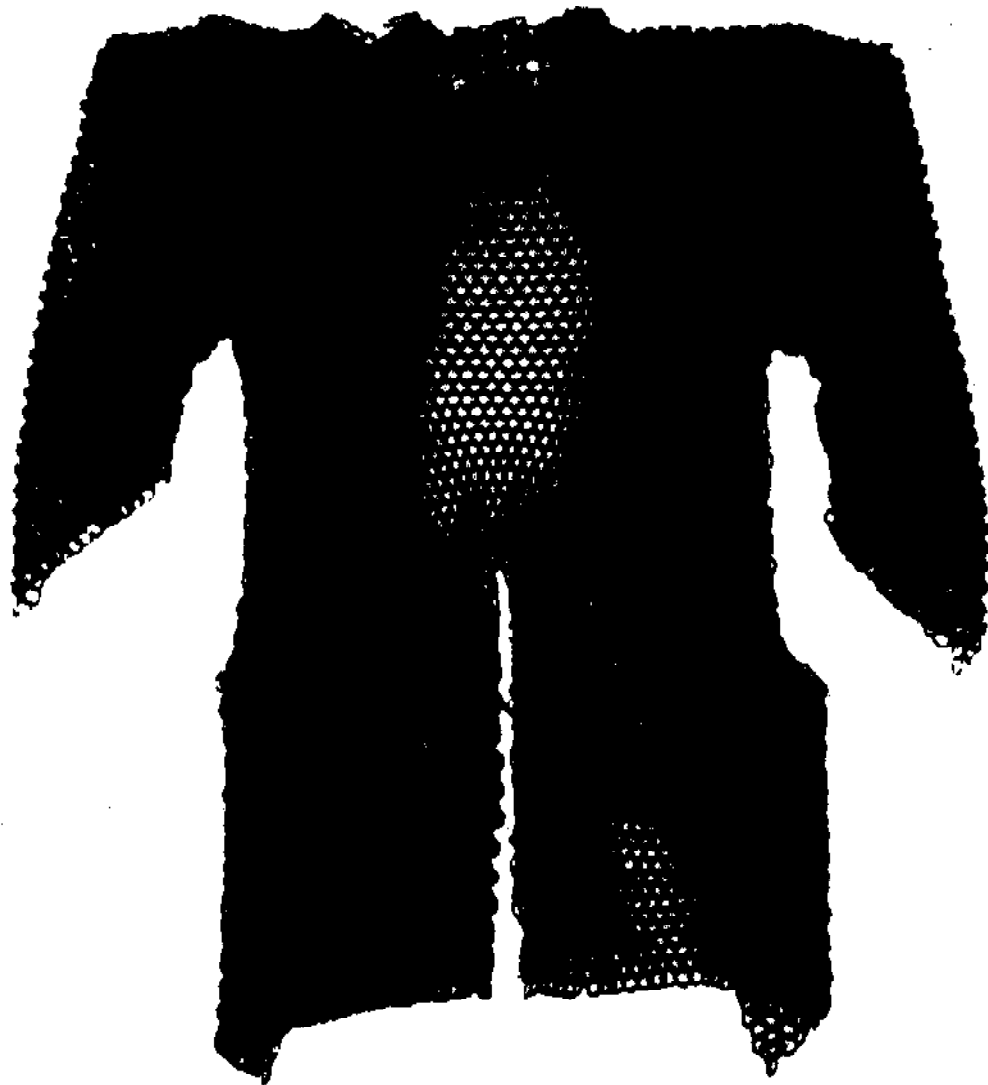
343/LIV-A

Chār-āimā



340/LIV

Châr-âinâ



245/LVI

Coat of Mail

